

MAN GUIDELINES TO FITTING BODIES

Series TGL/TGM
Edition **2018 V2.0**

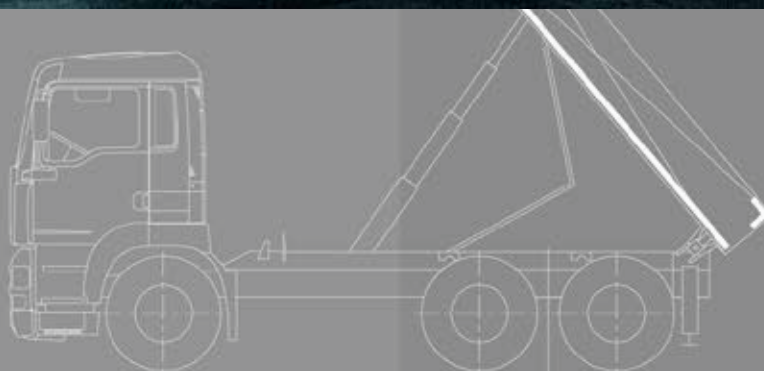


$$\frac{\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot l_g \cdot l_v}{U}$$

$$= \frac{3,14 \cdot 1850 \cdot 0,85}{3,1}$$

$$526 \text{ N} \approx 205,5 \text{ kN}$$

$$= l \cdot \sqrt{1 + \left(\frac{p}{100}\right)^2}$$





P U B L I S H E R

MAN Truck & Bus AG

(hereinafter referred to as MAN)

Engineering Vehicle Truck
Application Engineering
Dachauer Str. 667
D-80995 Munich

E-Mail: info.manted@man.eu

Fax: + 49 (0) 89 1580 4264

www.manted.de

**This English version is a translation.
In case of doubt or conflict the valid German language original will govern.**

We reserve the right to make technical modifications in the course of further development.

© 2018 MAN Truck & Bus AG

Not to be reprinted, duplicated by any means whatsoever or translated – in whole or in part – without the prior written consent of MAN Truck & Bus AG. All rights, especially those deriving from copyright law, are expressly reserved by MAN.

Trucknology® and MANTED® are registered trademarks of MAN Truck & Bus AG.

If names constitute trademarks, they are also recognised as protected by the relevant owner without use of the appropriate symbols (® TM).

Content

I.	Applicability and legal agreements	1
1.0	General	2
2.0	Legal agreements.....	2
2.1	Requirements	2
2.2	Responsibility	3
2.3	Registration of the vehicle.....	4
3.0	Liability	7
3.1	Liability for material defects	7
3.2	Product liability.....	7
3.3	Limitation of liability for accessories/spare parts.....	8
3.4	Operational and road safety.....	8
3.5	Instructions from body-building and conversion companies.....	9
4.0	Quality assurance.....	10
5.0	Approvals	11
5.1	Body approval	11
5.2	Manufacturer Confirmation	13
5.3	Trademarks.....	14

II.	Product identification	17
1.0	General	18
2.0	Terms.....	18
2.1	Model range	18
2.2	Model number	18
2.3	Tonnage class	20
2.4	Power rating	20
2.5	Type of suspension	20
2.6	Wheel configuration	21
2.7	Suffix	22
2.8	Cabs	23
3.0	Door designation.....	25
4.0	Variant descriptor	25
5.0	Base vehicle number.....	26
6.0	Vehicle identification number and vehicle production number	26



III.	Chassis.....	29
1.0	General.....	30
1.1	Obtaining technical vehicle data.....	30
1.2	Standards, guidelines, regulations, tolerances.....	30
1.3	Quality of execution.....	31
1.3.1	Corrosion protection.....	31
1.3.2	Welding work on the vehicle.....	31
1.3.3	Drill holes, riveted and bolted connections.....	35
1.4	Fire-protection measures for vehicle bodies and modifications.....	38
1.4.1	General.....	38
1.4.2	Statutory requirements.....	38
1.4.3	Measures in the vicinity of the engine and exhaust system.....	39
1.4.4	Measures on the air intake system.....	39
1.4.5	Electric wiring/fittings.....	40
2.0	Overall vehicle.....	41
2.1	General.....	41
2.2	Terms, dimensions and weights.....	41
2.2.1	Theoretical wheelbase.....	41
2.2.2	Theoretical and permitted overhang lengths.....	43
2.2.3	Permissible axle load.....	44
2.2.4	Permissible gross weight.....	44
2.2.5	Permissible gross train weight.....	45
2.2.6	Axle overload.....	46
2.2.7	Wheel-load difference.....	47
2.2.8	Minimum front-axle load.....	49
2.2.9	Calculating the axle load and weighing procedure.....	51
2.2.10	Rolling circumference and difference in rolling circumference.....	51
2.3	Modifications to the overall vehicle.....	52
2.3.1	Modifications to the wheelbase.....	52
2.3.2	Modifying the frame overhang.....	58
2.3.3	Modifying the wheel configuration.....	62
2.3.4	Changing the tyre type.....	63
2.3.5	Changing the vehicle type and interchangeable operation as semitrailer.....	63
	tractor/truck.....	63
2.3.6	Retrofitting additional units, attachments and accessories.....	64
2.4	Homologated vehicle components / vehicle components relevant to safety.....	65
3.0	Cab.....	66

3.1	General.....	66
3.2	Cabs.....	67
3.3	Spoilers, roof extensions, roofwalk.....	68
3.4	Roof sleeper cabs.....	71
3.5	Fastening of warning plates to the front flap.....	74
4.0	Chassis frame.....	75
4.1	General.....	75
4.2	Frame materials.....	75
4.3	Frame profiles.....	76
5.0	Frame attachments.....	77
5.1	General.....	77
5.2	Front underride protection.....	78
5.3	Side underride protection.....	79
5.4	Rear underride protection.....	83
5.5	Fuel tanks.....	85
5.5.1	Mounting fuel tanks.....	87
5.5.2	Modifications to fuel lines.....	88
5.6	Coupling devices.....	91
5.7	Front-mounted attachments.....	92
6.0	Engine and driveline.....	94
6.1	General.....	94
6.2	Engine versions.....	95
6.2.1	Type codes for MAN engines.....	96
6.3	Engine environment.....	97
6.3.1	Modifications to the engine.....	97
6.3.2	Modification to the air intake.....	97
6.3.3	Modifications to the engine cooling system.....	103
6.3.4	Modifications to engine encapsulation, noise insulation.....	105
6.3.5	Compressed-air supply.....	105
6.3.5.1	Basic principles.....	105
6.3.5.2	Routing lines.....	105
6.3.5.3	Connecting auxiliary consumers.....	108
6.3.5.4	Loss of compressed-air pressure.....	109
6.3.5.5	External air supply.....	110
6.4	Exhaust system.....	113
6.4.1	Modifications to the exhaust routing.....	113
6.4.2	AdBlue-System.....	121
6.4.2.1	Basic principles and structure of the AdBlue system.....	121
6.4.2.2	AdBlue line set.....	125

6.4.2.3	AdBlue tank.....	135
6.4.2.4	AdBlue supply module.....	138
6.4.2.5	AdBlue cable harness	140
6.4.2.6	Parts list	159
6.5	Gearbox and propshafts	163
6.5.1	Basic principles.....	163
6.5.2	Propshaft configurations.....	164
6.5.3	Forces in the propshaft system.....	168
6.5.4	Modifying the propshaft configuration	168
6.5.5	Fitting other manual or automatic gearboxes and transfer cases	169
6.6	PTOs	169
6.7	Brake system	170
6.7.1	Basic principles.....	170
6.7.2	Installing and fastening brake lines.....	170
6.7.3	ALB, EBS brake system.....	170
6.7.4	Retrofitting continuous brakes.....	170
7.0	Running gear.....	171
7.1	General.....	171
7.2	Modifications to the running gear.....	172
7.3	Equipment-related notes.....	172
8.0	Electrical/electronic system (on-board network).....	173
8.1	General.....	173
8.1.1	Electromagnetic compatibility.....	174
8.1.2	Static discharge	174
8.1.3	Radio equipment and aerials	174
8.1.4	Diagnostics concept and parameterisation using MAN-cats	177
8.2	Cables	178
8.2.1	Routing cables	178
8.2.2	Ground cable.....	179
8.2.3	Wiring harnesses for wheelbase extensions.....	179
8.2.4	Cable harnesses for rear position lamps, additional rear position lamps, trailer sockets, side marker lamps and supplementary ABS sockets.....	183
8.2.5	Supplementary wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings.....	188
8.2.6	Battery cable	188
8.3	Interfaces on the vehicle, preparations for the body	189
8.3.1	Tapping into the engine-on (D+) signal	190
8.3.2	Electrical interface for liftgate.....	190
8.3.3	Engine-Start-stop system	193
8.3.4	Tapping into the speed signal	193

8.3.5	Tapping into the reverse gear signal	194
8.3.6	Interfaces for intermediate speed control with VMC/PTM and CSM (ISC interfaces).....	194
8.3.7	Interface for reversing-camera preparation	197
8.4	Additional consumers	203
8.4.1	Notes on charging balance	208
8.5	Batteries	210
8.5.1	Handling and maintaining batteries	210
8.5.2	Handling and care of maintenance-free batteries	211
8.6	Lighting installations	212
8.7	Display and instrumentation concept	213
8.8	Safety and assistance systems.....	214
8.8.1	Yaw-rate sensor	214
8.8.2	Radar sensor.....	216
8.8.3	Multi-functional camera	219
8.9	Electrical Boxes on the chassis frame	222



IV.	Body.....	225
1.0	General requirements.....	226
1.1.	Requirements.....	226
1.2	Accessibility and clearance.....	226
1.3	Handling characteristics and driving resistances	228
1.4	Vibration	229
1.5	Special feature of vehicles with lifting axles.....	229
1.6	Vehicles with outriggers	230
1.6.1	Outrigger operation with the wheels in contact with the ground ..	230
1.6.2	Outrigger operation with the wheels not in contact with the ground.....	231
1.7	Tolerances	231
1.8	Assembly.....	231
1.9	Corrosion protection of bodywork	232
1.10	Standards, directives and regulations.....	233
1.10.1	Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC).....	233
1.10.2	Securing of cargo	235
1.10.3	Contour markings	235
1.10.4	Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU	236
2.0	Body and auxiliary-frame design	239
2.1	General requirements.....	239
2.2	Body with auxiliary frame.....	241
2.2.1	Permissible materials	241
2.2.2	Auxiliary-frame design	241
2.2.3	Connection to chassis frame	244
2.2.4	Equipment-specific notes and restrictions	245
2.3	Body without auxiliary frame.....	249
2.4	Attaching auxiliary frames and bodies	251
2.5	Bolt connections and riveted joints.....	252
2.6	Flexible connection	254
2.6.1	General requirements for flexible body fasteners	254
2.6.2	Implementations of flexible body fasteners	256
2.7	Rigid connection	261
3.0	Bodies	264
3.1	Semitrailer tractors.....	264
3.1.1	Chassis and equipment	264
3.1.2	Requirements for bodies.....	264
3.2	Platform and box bodies.....	266
3.3	Swap body fittings	267

3.3.1	Chassis and equipment	267
3.3.2	Requirements to be met by the body	267
3.4	Liftgates	268
3.5	Tank and container bodies	279
3.5.1	Chassis and equipment	279
3.5.2	Requirements to be met by the body	279
3.6	Refuse-collector body	282
3.6.1	Chassis and equipment	282
3.6.2	Requirements to be met by the body	282
3.7	Tipper	283
3.7.1	Chassis and equipment	283
3.7.2	Requirements to be met by the body	284
3.8	Set-down and roll-off skip loaders	286
3.9	Loading crane	287
3.9.1	Chassis and equipment	287
3.9.2	Requirements to be met by the body	289
3.9.3	Requirements to be met by auxiliary frames for loading cranes...	291
3.10	Transport mixers	298
3.10.1	Chassis and equipment	298
3.10.2	Requirements to be met by the body	299
3.11	Cable winch	300
3.12	Single-pivot body	300

V.	Calculations	303
1.0	General	304
1.1	Speed	304
1.2	Efficiency	306
1.3	Tractive force	308
1.4	Gradeability	309
1.4.1	Distance travelled on uphill or downhill gradients	309
1.4.2	Angle of uphill or downhill gradient	310
1.4.3	Calculating the gradeability	311
1.5	Torque	315
1.6	Power output	317
1.7	Rotational speeds for power take-offs on the transfer case	319
1.8	Driving resistances	320
1.9	Turning circle	323
1.10	Axle-load calculation	326
1.10.1	Performing an axle-load calculation	326
1.10.2	Calculation of weight with trailing axle lifted	333
1.11	Support length for body without auxiliary frame	335
1.12	Coupling devices	336
1.12.1	Trailer coupling for steerable drawbar trailer (D value)	336
1.12.2	Trailer coupling for rigid drawbar trailer/ center-axle trailer (D _c value, V value)	337
1.12.3	Trailer coupling for semi-trailer (D value)	339
1.13	Theoretical wheelbase and permissible overhang length	341

If not otherwise specified: all dimensions are in mm, all weights and loads are in kg.



NOTICE

These Guidelines to fitting bodies aimed at professional bodybuilder.

Therefore, in this guideline, background knowledge is assumed.

It should be noted that some work may only be carried out by suitably qualified personnel in order to avoid the risk of injury and to achieve the necessary quality for construction work.

Notational conventions

In this guideline the following notational conventions are used:

Information

This notice points out further information to you.

Important notice

This notice draws your attention to possible damage to the vehicle.

Environmental notice

An environmental notice provides you with tips for environmental protection.

Warning notice

A hazard warning notice points out possible risks of accident or injury to you and others.



NOTICE

I. Applicability and legal agreements

1.0 General

The statements in these MAN guidelines to fitting bodies are binding. Exceptions may only be approved by MAN following a written request and provided such exceptions are technically feasible (for address see "Publisher").

2.0 Legal agreements

2.1 Requirements

In addition to these guidelines to fitting bodies the executing company must observe all of the following that apply to the operation and bodywork of the vehicle:

- Legislation, rules and regulations
- Accident-prevention regulations
- Operating instructions

observed.

Standards are technical standards and thus contain minimum requirements. Failure to observe such minimum requirements is a negligent act. Standards are binding if they are part of rules and regulations.

Information received from MAN in answer to telephone enquiries is non-binding unless confirmed in writing. Enquiries must be directed to the MAN department responsible.

Information is based on conditions of use such as are typical in Europe. Dimensions, weights and other basic values deviating therefrom must consequently be taken into account for the engineering design and attachment of bodywork and the design of the auxiliary frame. The executing company must ensure that the entire vehicle is able to sustain the conditions of use to be expected.

Various manufacturers have worked out specifications for certain units, e.g. loading cranes, liftgates, cable winches and so on. These are also to be observed if they contain requirements extra to the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies.

Mentions of:

- Legal regulations
- Accident-prevention regulations
- Regulations issued by professional associations
- Standard operating procedures
- Other guidelines and sources

are by no means complete and are only for purposes of information. They are no replacement for due diligence on the part of the particular company.

2.2 Responsibility

Responsibility for professional

- Engineering Design
- Production
- fitting of bodywork,
- modifications to chassis

is always, and in full, that of the company producing or assembling the bodywork or carrying out the modification (manufacturer's liability). This also applies when MAN has expressly granted approval of the bodywork or modification. Written approval of bodywork or modifications by MAN does not release the bodywork manufacturer from their responsibility for the product.

Should the executing company detect an error in the planning stage or in the intentions of the

- customers
- user
- its own personnel
- vehicle manufacturer

they will draw the attention of the particular party to it.

The company is responsible for ensuring that the

- Operational safety
- Road safety
- serviceability,
- Driving characteristics

of the vehicle are not negatively affected in any way.

In terms of road safety the company must construe and base:

- Engineering Design
- production of bodywork,
- fitting of bodywork,
- modifications to chassis
- instructions,
- Operating instructions

by the latest state of the art and recognized rules of the discipline. More difficult operating conditions are in addition to be taken into consideration.

2.3 Registration of the vehicle

National laws and technical regulations with respect to the registration of modified vehicles are to be complied with. Modification work carried out in on the chassis must be submitted to a Technical Service for assessment. The executing company remains responsible even subsequent to the registration of the vehicle in the event of the competent authorities having issued the vehicle registration in ignorance of the operational safety of the product.

EU multi-stage type-approval procedure as per Annex XVII 2007/46/EC

Process

Within the framework of the multi-stage process pursuant to Annex XVII of Directive 2007/46/EC, each manufacturer shall bear independent responsibility for approval and conformity of production of all systems, components or independent technical units that it manufactures or adds in an earlier stage of manufacturing.

The body manufacturer is the manufacturer of the second or additional production stage pursuant to 2007/46/EC.

Responsibilities

As a basic principle, the body builder is responsible for:

- modifications it carried out on the base vehicle.
- objects granted approval at an earlier stage if, due to modifications to the base vehicle, the approvals granted are no longer applicable to this vehicle.
- ensuring that the modification carried out complies with the respective national/international statutory regulations, in particular those of the destination country.
- submitting the modifications it carried out to a technical service for assessment.
- documenting compliance with statutory regulations in appropriate form (test report and/or permit or documents meeting the legal requirements of the destination country).

As a basic principle, MAN as manufacturer of the base vehicle is responsible for:

- providing the body builder with the homologation documentation (EU/EEC approvals) available for the scope of delivery of the base vehicles in electronic form on request.

Identification of the vehicles

The respective vehicle shall receive a vehicle identification number ("VIN"), which identifies MAN as manufacturer of the incomplete base vehicle.

As a basic principle, the requirements laid down in Annex XVII to 2007/46/EU and the published associated procedural instructions apply.

Conformity of production (COP)

As a basic principle, the requirements laid down in individual EU Directives and Annex X to 2007/46/EU as well as the requirements laid down in Annex 2 to the EEC Agreement of 1958 apply.

Provision of documentation for registration/following stage

In accordance with Annex XVII to 2007/46/EU, MAN as manufacturer of the base vehicle provides the body builder or builders the available EU/EEC system approvals and the Certificate of Conformity (CoC)¹⁾ for the base vehicle in electronic form.

¹⁾ Only in cases where the vehicle is EU-compliant and a Certificate of Conformity (CoC) has been printed by the plant.

Case I: Registration in Germany

In the case of MAN acting as general contractor (“single-invoice transaction”) the body builder/s as later-stage manufacturer/s undertake/s to provide the following documentation in electronic form:

- a) The individual supplier conditions provide for an acceptance/approval and registration process by the vehicle manufacturer (MAN).
 - 1. In the case of an existing and valid whole vehicle type-approval in accordance with 2007/46/EC for the manufacturing stages, a CoC. On request, existing EC/EEC system approvals or technical reports must be submitted.
 - 2. Alternatively to 1, the test reports and approval documentation required for national individual approval procedures in accordance with Section 13 of the EC vehicle approval Directive.

The latest time for submitting the above stated documentation in printable form is the day the completed vehicle is returned to the contractually agreed place of delivery.

The documentation shall be sent to the following e-mail address documents@de.man-mn.com.

In cases where MAN receives a CoC from the bodybuilder, then original certificates may only be generated by MAN on behalf of the bodybuilder.

- b) The acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the contract partner or by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle.
 - 1. None. The registration process is the responsibility of the contract partner or the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle.

In all other cases the acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle or by the corresponding contract partner.

Case II: Registration outside Germany but inside the area of application of Directive 2007/46/EC

If MAN serves as general contractor then the bodybuilder is under an obligation, as the final stage manufacturer, to provide in electronic form, all the necessary approval/registration documentation for all modifications made during the subsequent manufacturing stages of the respective responsible sales organisation or importer which exceed the scope of the basic vehicle.

Irrespective of any general contractor status of the importers, the acceptance/approval and registration process is to be carried out by the manufacturer of the final completion stage of the vehicle or by the corresponding contract partner.

The importer in the respective country or the corresponding contract partner has the authority and responsibility for the registration process.

MAN does not supply any national data for registration purposes exceeding that for incomplete vehicles set forth in Annex IX to Directive 2007/46/EG in its current form and as amended from time to time. This also applies in particular to national model codes and encrypted basic technical data.

MAN as a manufacturer reserves the right – following corresponding feasibility studies and economic implementation – and after reaching corresponding specifically applicable agreements with national sales organisations and importers, to provide data for national registration which exceeds the scope of that set forth above (e.g. vehicle’s manufacturing plates etc.). Enquiries in this regard shall be sent to the following e-mail address documents@de.man-mn.com.

Non-disclosure agreement

The bodybuilder may not forward the approval documentation provided by MAN to any third parties without obtaining prior, express permission from MAN.

The forwarding of documentation that is directly associated with the registration of the vehicle in question to persons of the institutions listed below is excepted:

- MAN Sales partners
- Technical vehicle inspection centers or testing organisations
- Approval authorities
- Registration authorities or licensing centers acting for the government

Note on type approval / homologation for TiB, CiB, BiB, CKD, SKD and PKD vehicles

Where:

- **TiB** stands for “**truck in the box**”
- **CiB** stands for “**chassis in the box**”
- **BiB** stands for “**bus in the box**”
- **CKD** stands for “**completely knocked down**”
- **SKD** stands for “**semi knocked down**”
- **PKD** stands for “**partly knocked down**”

For these versions MAN is not considered to be the manufacturer within the meaning of Directive 2007/46/EC – therefore, the responsibility for the homologation and registration process lies with the manufacturer of these vehicles.

In principle, the substance of the contracts respectively concluded with MAN shall apply.

In principle, MAN does not provide registration-related data for completed vehicles. Exceptions include homologation documentation for components subject to approval such as the engine, which MAN provides in electronic form.

However, this does not exclude MAN as a manufacturer reserving the right – following corresponding feasibility studies and economic implementation – and after reaching corresponding specifically applicable agreements with national sales organisations and importers, to provide data for national registration which exceeds the scope of that set forth above (e.g. vehicle’s manufacturing plates etc.). Enquiries in this regard shall be sent to MAN’s Homologation Department.

3.0 Liability

3.1 Liability for material defects

Claims on liability for defects only exist within the contract of sale between the purchaser and the seller. The liability for defects consequently rests with the seller of the article of sale. Claims may not be made of MAN if the reported defect results from the following:

- Non-adherence to these body guidelines
- Selection of a chassis unsuitable for the intended purpose of the vehicle
- Damage to the chassis caused by:
 - the body,
 - the nature/execution of body installation,
 - modification to the chassis,
 - incorrect operation.

3.2 Product liability

Defects in workmanship detected by MAN are to be corrected. In as much as this is legally admissible, MAN will bear no liability, in particular for consequential damages.

Product liability regulates:

- The liability of the manufacturer for their product or component of a product.
- The claim to compensation from the manufacturer of an integrated component of a product made by the manufacturer claimed upon if the occurring damage results from a defect of this component of a product.

The company that executes the bodywork or modification to the chassis shall indemnify MAN from any claims for liability made by its customers or other third parties, in as much as any damage results from the following:

- The company having failed to comply with the guidelines to fitting bodies valid at the time.
- The bodywork or chassis modification has caused damage through faulty
 - Engineering Design
 - Manufacture
 - Assembly
 - instructions.
- The set principles were not complied with in any other way.

3.3 Limitation of liability for accessories/spare parts

Warning notice

Accessories and spare parts not manufactured by MAN or approved for use in its products can impair the operational and road safety of the vehicle and lead to dangerous situations.

MAN Truck & Bus AG (or the seller) accepts no liability for claims of any kind resulting from a combination of the vehicle together with an accessory that was made by another manufacturer. Excepted from the aforementioned are cases in which MAN Truck & Bus AG (or the seller) itself offers the accessory for sale or fits it to the vehicle (or the subject of the contract).

3.4 Operational and road safety

In order to ensure operational and road safety or to maintain the validity of any claims under the guarantee, the bodybuilder must observe the instructions given in these guidelines to fitting bodies exactly. MAN shall not be liable for non-compliance.

Warning notice

Before commencing work on the body, making modifications or starting installation work, the bodybuilder must also have knowledge of the sections of the operator's manual that relate to the work he is completing. It will otherwise be impossible to recognise risks and other persons may be endangered.

MAN cannot be liable for reliability, safety and suitability under the following circumstances.

- Bodies are not constructed and fitted in accordance with these guidelines to fitting bodies
- MAN Genuine Parts or approved parts and modifications are replaced with other parts
- Unauthorised modifications are made to the vehicle

Approvals by third parties, for example Technical Inspection Agencies or approvals from public authorities, shall not be considered sufficient for precluding safety risks.

Companies handling and working on the vehicle are liable for any damages that result from deficient functional and operational safety or inadequate operating manuals. MAN consequently requires of the bodybuilder or modifier:

- maximum state-of-the-art safety standards,
- comprehensible and adequately detailed operating instructions,
- easily visible, permanently affixed plates at points posing a risk to operators and/or third persons,
- adherence to necessary protective measures (e.g. against fire and explosion risks),
- full details relating to toxicology,
- full details relating to ecology.

Safety has priority! Make use of all technical possibilities to avoid and eliminate insecure operation.

This applies equally to:

- Active safety = prevention of accidents. This includes:
 - driving safety as a result of the overall concept of the vehicle with its bodywork
 - conditional safety produced by minimal physical stress on occupants through vibration, noise, climate, etc.
 - assured perception, especially correct design of lighting fittings, warning devices, sufficient direct and indirect visibility
 - operational safety, including optimum operability of all devices and fittings, and those of the bodywork

I. Applicability and legal agreements

- Passive safety = avoidance and containment of accident consequences. This includes:
 - outer safety, e.g. design of the exterior of the vehicle/bodywork in terms of deformation, fitting of protective devices
 - inner safety, including protection of the occupants of vehicles, but also cabs installed by bodywork producers

Climatic and environmental conditions affect:

- Operational safety
- readiness for use,
- in-service performance,
- Service life
- cost-effectiveness,

Climatic and environmental influences are, for example:

- effects of temperature
- Humidity
- aggressive substances,
- sand and dust,
- radiation.

Ensure sufficient clearance of all parts involved in movement, including all cables and leads. The operating manuals for MAN vehicles provide information on the maintenance points on the vehicle. Regardless of the kind of bodywork, ensure good access to these maintenance points in all cases. Maintenance must be possible unhindered by having to remove any parts. Ensure adequate ventilation and/or cooling of sub-assemblies.

3.5 Instructions from body-building and conversion companies

In the event of a body atng added or modifications to the vehicle atng carried out by a conversion company, the operator of the vehicle is also entitled to receive the operating instructions. All the benefits of a product are of no use if the customer is unable to:

- handle it safely and true to its purpose,
- use it rationally and effortlessly,
- correctly service and maintain it,
- work with it expertly in all its functions.

Every bodybuilder and modifier shall consequently ensure that their technical manuals exhibit:

- Comprehensibility
- Complete
- Accuracy
- Traceability
- Product-specific notes on safety

A poor or incomplete operating manual means considerable risk factors for the user. Possible consequences are:

- reduced value because product advantages go unrecognized;
- complaints, irritation and annoyance;
- failures and damage that are usually attributed to the chassis,
- unexpected and unnecessary extra costs through repairs and loss of time;
- a negative image and thus less inclination to purchase from the same source again.

Operating personnel is to be instructed in operation and maintenance for the particular vehicle body or modification. Instruction must also include possible effects on the static and dynamic performance of the vehicle.

4.0 Quality assurance

To satisfy the high quality demands of our customers and comply with international product/producer liability, continuous quality inspection is also needed to conduct retrofits and in the production/fitting of bodywork. This calls for a properly functioning quality-assurance system.

The bodybuilder is advised to set up and provide evidence of a quality management system complying with general requirements and accepted rules (e.g. EN ISO 9000 ff or VDA Vol. 8).

If MAN is the contracting body for the bodywork or modification, it will demand evidence of qualification. MAN Truck & Bus AG reserves the right to conduct its own VDA Vol. 8 system audit of a supplier or appropriate examinations of processes. VDA Vol. 8 is harmonised with the bodywork manufacturer associations **ZKF** (federal association of bodywork and vehicle engineering), **BVM** (federal association of the metalworking trade) as well as with the **ZDH** (federal association of skilled crafts).

Publications:

VDA Vol. 8: Aids to quality assurance for trailer, body and container manufacturers can be obtained from the German Association of the Automotive Industry (VDA).

5.0 Approvals

The “Approvals” section contains information on the approval of bodies and manufacturer’s confirmation. The prerequisites, basic principles to be complied with when submitting applications and the options for obtaining applications are described.

5.1 Body approval

General information

Body approval from MAN is not required if the bodies or modifications are carried out in accordance with these guidelines to fitting bodies.

If MAN approves a body, this approval applies, in the case of bodies,

- to their basic compatibility with the respective chassis,
- to interfaces with the body (e.g. dimensioning and fastening the auxiliary frame).

The endorsement of approval entered by MAN in the submitted technical documents does not cover inspection of the:

- Function
- Engineering Design
- equipment of the body or the modification.

The endorsement of approval only concerns measures or parts to be seen or taken from the submitted technical documents.

MAN reserves the right to refuse issue of an approval of bodywork, even if comparable approval was issued at an earlier date. Technical advances rule out the possibility of cases atng fully identical. MAN furthermore reserves the right to alter these guidelines at any time, or to issue instructions differing from those contained herein in the case of single chassis.

Should a number of identical chassis have identical bodywork, MAN may issue a collective approval for the sake of simplicity.

For an approval process to proceed swiftly, the following are required:

Template for inspection documentation

Documents should only be sent to MAN if bodies deviate from these guidelines to fitting bodies. If this is the case, technical documents enabling inspection must be sent to MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) before work on the vehicle begins.

A rapid processing procedure requires:

- documents preferably submitted in the usual digital formats (e.g. PDF, DWG, DXF, STEP),
- complete technical data and documents,
- as few documents as possible.

The following details will be contained:

- Vehicle model (for model numbers see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model numbers”) with
 - Cab version
 - Wheelbase
 - Frame overhang
- Vehicle identification number or vehicle production number (if already existing, see Chapter II, Section 6.0, “Vehicle identification numbers and vehicle production numbers)
- Appropriate marking of departures from these guidelines in all documents!
- Loads and their points of application
 - Forces from bodywork
- Axle load calculation
- Special conditions of use:
- Subframe
 - Material and cross-section figures
 - Dimensions
 - Type of profile
 - Cross member arrangement in auxiliary frame
 - Particularities of auxiliary frame design
 - Changes to cross-sections
 - Supplementary reinforcements
 - Kick-up, etc.
- Joining means:
 - Positioning (with reference to chassis)
 - Type
 - Size
 - Quantity

The following are not sufficient for inspection and approval:

- Parts lists
- Literature
- Photos
- Other non-binding information

Drawings are only of value under the number assigned them.

5.2 Manufacturer Confirmation

General information

In the case of modifications to vehicles, a manufacturer confirmation may become necessary. Upon special request, MAN can issue an exception to existing technical stipulations. Manufacturer confirmations may only be issued if this can be arranged with the functional, traffic and operational safety guidelines.

If MAN approves a chassis modification, this approval shall only relate to the basic constructive permissibility for the relevant chassis.

Manufacturer confirmations can generally be issued in the following categories:

- Vehicle confirmations, e.g.
 - Wheelbase modifications
 - Changing tyre types
 - Optional deployment or conversion of truck/semi-trailer tractor
 - Axle loads and gross weight
 - Trailer load and gross trailer weight
- Factory automatic load-dependent brake force distribution and engine plates
- Documents supplied with the vehicle, e.g.
 - COP document
 - “Low noise vehicle” certification
- Approval documents, e.g.
 - Data confirmation

A detailed overview of the available manufacturer confirmations is available at www.manted.de.

Application for manufacturer confirmations

Manufacturer confirmations may only be applied for outside Germany via the respective central import company. The applicant is both the invoice recipient and the confirmation recipient, and must be one and the same person.

Manufacturer approvals can be applied for using the following options:

- Application via fax or email
 - Obtaining the forms (templates) via www.manted.de → Guidelines and Forms
 - Sending the completed application via fax or email to the contact address specified in the application.
- Application via MANTED-online application
 - can be found at www.manted.de → Services → MANTED-online application (additional registration required).
→ Create MANTED-online application → Select the corresponding application.
 - Please complete all the required fields in the online application.
 - Please see the help document in the online applications area for further information.

Note

It is a requirement that the conversion measure(s) are only carried out after the receipt of the corresponding manufacturer confirmation(s) - as far as is necessary.

Such special approval issued by MAN is not binding on the competent authority.

MAN has no influence on the issuance of exemptions by the competent authority.

Generally, every exemption must be checked and inspected by the officially recognised expert, as well as entered in the official vehicle documents by the responsible accreditation body. If the measure concerned is outside the national legal provisions and regulations, an exemption must be obtained beforehand from the competent authority.

Compliance with these guidelines to fitting bodies does not release the user from his responsibility for technically exemplary implementation of the modification works.

MAN reserves the right to decline to grant approvals for modifications, even if a comparable approval has been granted before. Technical progress does not automatically allow for equal treatment. Furthermore, MAN reserves the right to modify these guidelines to fitting bodies at any time or, for individual chassis, to issue instructions which deviate from these guidelines to fitting bodies.

5.3 Trademarks

The MAN logo and MAN emblem are trademarks of MAN Truck & Bus AG and may not be removed or repositioned without permission (for the contact address see “publisher” above).

MAN Truck & Bus AG reserves the right to prohibit the body manufacturer or vehicle modifier from using the MAN trademarks if they breach the Guideline To Fitting Bodies as amended. The body manufacturer or vehicle modifier will then be required to remove all visible trademarks.

If changes are made that render approvals for the basic vehicle (e.g. type or system approval) invalid; these approvals or evidence thereof must be reobtained by the body manufacturer or vehicle modifier. The body manufacturer or vehicle modifier must affix the legally required markings to the vehicle, e.g. the additional plate in accordance with Article 59 of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulation (StVZO).

NOTICE



NOTICE

II. Product identification

1.0 General

For purposes of internal and external communication, various vehicle designations have been introduced according to certain classification criteria and adapted to suit requirements.

The most important designations are:

- Variant designation
- Door identification
- Base vehicle and model number
- Vehicle identification and vehicle production number

In addition, general information on MAN's cab variants can also be found in this chapter.

2.0 Terms

Definitions of the terms used to describe MAN vehicles.

2.1 Model range

MAN's "Trucknology Generation" is divided into four model ranges. An overview can be found in the following table.

Table 01-II: The "Trucknology Generation" model ranges

Series	Explanation	Tonnage [t]**
TGL	Trucknology Generation L - Light range	7 - 12
TGM	Trucknology Generation M - Medium range	12 - 26
TGS	Trucknology Generation S - Heavy range with narrow cabs*	18 - 41
TGX	Trucknology Generation X - Heavy range with wide cabs*	18 - 41

* For further information on the MAN range of cabs, see Chapter II, Section 2.8 "Cabs" and Chapter III, Section 3.2 "Cab variants"

** Standard tonnage / permissible gross weight

2.2 Model number

A vehicle can only be uniquely identified on the basis of its model number, also known as model code number. The model number comprises three characters and unambiguously classifies different vehicle families and variants. It identifies the assignment to a model range, the tonnage and the type of suspension.

As a rule, it consists of a letter and two digits and together with the base vehicle number, it is also an element of the vehicle identification number and the vehicle production number.

The tables below list the existing model code numbers for the TGL, TGM, TGS und TGX model ranges. The designation shown in the table contains the standard wheel configuration. The given suspension type is the basic suspension of the vehicle's front- and rear-axle assemblies.

Table 02-II: Model numbers and vehicle designations in the TGL model range

Type number	Tonnage [t]	Designation	Suspension	Note
N01	7,5	TGL 7.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	Replaced by N03 in 2007
N02	8	TGL 8.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N03	7 - 8	TGL 7.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N04	10 - 12	TGL 10.xxx 4x2 BB TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
		TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BB		
N05	10 - 12	TGL 10.xxx 4x2 BB TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N11	7,5	TGL 7.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	Replaced by N13 in 2007
N12	8	TGL 8.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N13	7 - 8	TGL 7.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N14	10 - 12	TGL 10.xxx 4x2 BL TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N15	10 - 12	TGL 10.xxx 4x2 BL TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N49	12	TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BL-FOC	Leaf-Air	
N60	8	TGL 8.xxx 4x2 BB-TIB	Leaf-Leaf	
N61	10 - 12	TGL 10.xxx 4x2 BB-TIB TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BB-TIB	Leaf-Leaf	

Table 03-II: Model numbers and vehicle designations in the TGM model range

Type number	Tonnage [t]	Designation	Suspension	Note
N08	15 - 18	TGM 15.xxx 4x2 BB TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N16	12 - 15	TGM 12.xxx 4x2 BL TGM 15.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N18	15 - 19	TGM 15.xxx 4x2 BL TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BL TGM 19.xxx 4x2 BL	Leaf-Air	
N26	12 - 22	TGM 12.xxx 4x2 LL TGM 15.xxx 4x2 LL TGM 22.xxx 6x2-4 LL	Air-Air	
N28	18	TGM 18.xxx 4x2 LL	Air-Air	
N34	13	TGM 13.xxx 4x4 BL TGM 13.xxx 4x4 BL FW	Leaf-Air	
N36	13	TGM 13.xxx 4x4 BL	Leaf-Air	
N37	13	TGM 13.xxx 4x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N38	18	TGM 18.xxx 4x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N44	26	TGM 26.xxx 6x2-4 LL	Air-Air	
N46	26	TGM 26.xxx 6x2-4 BL	Leaf-Air	
N48	26	TGM 26.xxx 6x4 BB	Leaf-Leaf	
N62	18	TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BB-CKD	Leaf-Leaf	
N63	15	TGM 15.xxx 4x2 BL-TIB	Leaf-Air	
N64	18	TGM 18.xxx 4x4 BB-TIB	Leaf-Leaf	

2.3 Tonnage class

The tonnage class corresponds to the design specification as per model-number list (see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”). It is the permissible gross weight for this vehicle model and may not be exceeded. More information on permissible gross weight can be found in Chapter III, Section 2.2.4 “Permissible gross weight”.

2.4 Power rating

The stated power ratings generally round off the engine output power to the next ten hp. Engine technical data sheets are an exception. More detailed information, for example on the exhaust-gas status (Euro standard) is not contained.

2.5 Type of suspension

As standard there are three different combinations of suspension, depending on the type of operation for which the vehicle is employed. The first letter describes the front-axle assembly, the second describes the rear-axle assembly.

Table 04-II: Types of suspension for TGL/TGM and TGS/TGX

Abbreviation	Explanation
BB	Leaf suspension on front axle, leaf suspension on rear axle(s)
BL	Leaf suspension on front axle, air suspension on rear axle(s)
LL	Air suspension on front and rear axle(s)

2.6 Wheel configuration

The wheel configuration identifies the number of wheels, driven wheels and steered wheels. The term “wheel configuration” is a common term but not standardised. It is “wheel locations” that are counted and not the individual wheels. Twin tyres are therefore regarded as one wheel.

Here are two examples to explain the term wheel configuration:

Example of a three-axle vehicle with leading axle (wheel configuration))

6x2/4
 6 Total number of wheel locations
 x
 2 number of driven wheels
 / leading axle in front of driven rear axle
 4 number of steered wheels

Example of a three-axle vehicle with trailing axle (wheel configuration)

6x2-4
 6 Total number of wheel locations
 x
 2 number of driven wheels
 - trailing axle behind driven rear axle
 4 number of steered wheels

The number of steered wheels is only stated if there are steered leading or trailing axles in addition to steered front wheels.

A leading axle runs in front of a driven rear-axle unit; a trailing axle runs behind the driven rear-axle unit. The wheel configuration identifies these axles by means of a slash “/” in the case of a leading axle and a hyphen “-” in the case of a trailing axle.

If a chassis is fitted with both a leading and a trailing axle, the number of steered wheels follows the hyphen “-”. For a hydrostatic front axle MAN HydroDrive, an “H” is added to the wheel configuration, e.g. 6x4H = front axle with MAN HydroDrive, two rear axles, one of them driven.

The following wheel configurations are currently available ex works:

Table 05-II: Wheel configurations for TGL/TGM

Wheel configuration	Description
4x2	Two-axle vehicle with one driven axle
4x4	Two axles with two driven axles "allwheel"
6x2-4	Three-axle vehicle with steered trailing axle
6x4	Three-axle vehicle with two driven and non-steered rear axles

2.7 Suffix

The suffix differentiates trucks from semitrailer tractors or describes special product features.

Semitrailer tractors are designated with an 'S' suffix. Trucks have no special designation.

Example of a semitrailer tractor:

TGS 33.440 6x6 BBS

S = semitrailer

Identification of special product features is added separated from the front part of the suffix by a hyphen "-".

Example of special product features:

TGM 13.250 4x4 BL-FW

-FW = Fire engine chassis with all-wheel drive and low build height approved solely for fire fighting vehicle bodies

Table 06-II: Overview of suffixes

Abbreviation	Explanation	Example
S	S emitrailer tractor	TGS 33.440 6x6 BBS
-CKD	C ompletely K nocked D own vehicle for assembly in an MAN plant in the recipient country	TGM 18.280 4x2 BB-CKD
-TIB	T ruck I n T he B ox for assembly in an MAN plant in the recipient country	TGM 18.250 4x2 BB-TIB
-FW	Fire-engine chassis with all-wheel drive and low build height approved solely for fire fighting vehicle bodies	TGM 13.250 4x4 BL-FW
-FOC	Forward control chassis for omnibus superstructure	TGL 12.xxx 4x2 BL-FOC
-TS	Version optimised in weight for tank/silo	TGS 18.350 4x2 BLS-TS
-WW	Worldwide variant, can only be registered outside Europe	TGS 33.360 6x4BB-WW
-EL	Vehicles fitted with E fficient L ine equipment variant	TGX 18.440 4x2 BLS-EL
-U	Vehicle with low build height (" U ltra")	TGX 18.400 4x2 LLS-U

2.8 Cabs

Due to the wide range of transport tasks and uses of MAN vehicles, different cab versions are available. At MAN, there are cabs assigned to each series. The following list provides an overview.

In general, MAN offers the following cabs (not assigned here to series):

- C, M, L, DK cab
 - narrow cabs
 - e.g. for short-haul and distribution transport
- LX cab
 - narrow cab with high roof
 - e.g. for special applications and national long-haul transport
- XLX, XXL cab
 - wide cab
 - e.g. for international long-haul transport
- XL cab
 - wide cab
 - e.g. for special applications in short-haul transport
 - TGS/TGX cabs differ in their width

Fig. 01-II: Cab variants

Fahrerhaus Cab	Baureihe Range	TGX (18-41 t)	TGS (18-41 t)	TGM (15-26 t)	TGM (12-15 t)	TGL (7,5-12 t)
XXL						
2440 mm						
XLX						
2280 mm						
XL						
2440 mm						
2240 mm						
LX						
2280 mm						
L						
2280 mm						
M						
1880 mm						
Doka / Double cab						
2785 mm						
C						
1620 mm						
Fahrerhaus Cab	Baureihe Range	TGX (22.5")	TGS (22.5")	TGM (22.5")	TGM (19.5")	TGL (17.5")

Further technical information can be found in Chapter III, Section 3.2 "Cab variants"

3.0 Door designation

MAN's door designation provides readily accessible information on the vehicle model with its tonnage and power output.

The door designation consists of:

- Series
- Permissible gross weight
- Power rating (separated from the permissible gross weight by a full stop “.”)

Table 07-II: Examples of door designations

Series	Permissible gross weight [t]	Power rating [hp]
TGL	12	.220
TGM	18	.340
TGM	26	.290
TGS	24	.480
TGS	18	.360
TGX	26	.540

4.0 Variant descriptor

The variant descriptor consists of:

- Series
- Permissible gross weight
- Power rating (separated from the permissible gross weight by a full stop “.”)
- Wheel configuration
- Suspension type
- Suffix

The terms used are explained in Chapter II, Section 2.0 “Terms”.

Table 08-II: Examples of variant descriptors

Series	Permissible gross weight [t]	Power rating [hp]	Wheel configuration	Suspension type	Suffix
TGL	12	.220	4x2	BL	
TGM	18	.340	4x2	BB	-FW
TGM	26	.290	6x4	BB	
TGS	24	.480	6x2-2	LL	-U
TGS	18	.360	4x2	BL	S-TS
TGX	26	.540	6x2-2	LL	

5.0 Base vehicle number

The eight-character base vehicle (“GFZ”) number was introduced in order to identify and better differentiate between MAN vehicles.

The MAN base vehicle number describes an MAN vehicle (base vehicle) with certain technical features and defined standard equipment.

Table 09-II: Examples of base vehicle numbers

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Example	L	0	6	X	K	G	3	1
Example	L	2	1	S	G	F	3	8
Example	L	N	1	8	C	E	0	8
	L=Truck	Typ number			Sequential designation			

The model number is an important element of the base vehicle number and occupies places 2- 4 in the base vehicle number.

More information on model numbers can be found in Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”.

6.0 Vehicle identification number and vehicle production number

The vehicle identification number and vehicle production number describe customer-specific vehicles with corresponding scopes of equipment and technical characteristics.

Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is a 17-character internationally standardised alphanumeric string that uniquely identifies a vehicle.

Table 10-II: Example of a vehicle identification number

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17
Example	W	M	A	0	6	X	Z	Z	9	7	K	0	0	1	4	6	4
ISO 3779	World manufacturer's code (MAN, for example, is WMA)			Descriptive designation (places 4-6 are the model number)						Sequential designation							

II. Product identification

As a rule, vehicle identification numbers for MAN chassis of the Trucknology Generation begin with the letters “WMA”.

Exceptions are, amongst others, vehicles

- from CKD plants (these have their own manufacturer’s codes)
- of the Steyr brand (VAN)
- of the ÖAF brand (VA0)
- of the ERF brand (SAF).

The vehicle identification number contains the model number in places 4 – 6.
(see Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”).

Note:

Stamped vehicle identification numbers must not be obscured by vehicle bodies or modifications.

Vehicle production number

The vehicle production number consists of seven characters and describes the vehicle’s technical equipment. It contains the model number in places 1 - 3 followed by a four-character alphanumeric code.

Table 11-II: Example of a vehicle production number

Digit	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
Example	0	6	X	0	0	0	4
	Typ number			Sequential designation			

Table 12-II: Example of vehicle designation, model number, identification number, base vehicle number and vehicle production number

Designation of vehicle	Model number	Vehicle identification number (VIN)	Base vehicle number	Vehicle production number
TGX 18.440 4x2 BLS	06X	WMA 06X ZZ97K001464	L06X KG31	06X 0004
TGS 26.410 6x2-4 LL	21S	WMA 21S ZZ67M479579	L21S GF38	21S 0002
TGM 18.330 4X2 BL	N18	WMA N18 ZZ16Y155852	LN18 CE08	N18 0008

More information on model numbers can be found in Chapter II, Section 2.2 “Model number”.



NOTICE

III.

Chassis

1.0 General

To create the product a customer expects, under certain circumstances additional components may need to be integrated, attached or modified. We recommend using MAN Genuine parts to the extent to which they are compatible with the engineering design.

1.1 Obtaining technical vehicle data

Technical vehicle data enables selection of the optimal base vehicle for the intended purpose of the vehicle.

Information on MAN vehicles and vehicle components such as

- Cabs / bumpers
- Exhaust
- Frame side member
- Final cross member
- Gearboxes / power take-off systems

can be found at www.manted.de. Registration is required.

The following can be found at MANTED:

- Dimensions
- Weights
- Position of center of gravity for payload and body (minimum and maximum body lengths)
- Standard equipment
- Drawings

Information

The data published in MANTED refer to the series-production status of a vehicle. This may vary, depending on the technical scope of delivery. What is decisive is the actual status of the built and delivered vehicle.

National and international specifications take priority over technically admissible dimensions and weights if they restrict the technically admissible dimensions and weights.

1.2 Standards, guidelines, regulations, tolerances

Applicable standards and guidelines / directives are technical standards and must therefore be complied with. Standards are binding if they are part of rules and regulations. It cannot be assumed that all standards, regulations and guidelines/directives mentioned in the context of the chapter are complete.

Please observe notes on:

- Legal regulations
- Other guidelines/directives.

All components installed in MAN vehicles comply with the respectively applicable national and European standards and directives.

MAN's own standards are often considerably more stringent than national and international standards. In some cases, MAN presupposes the application of its own standards for reasons of quality or safety. These are explicitly stated in the corresponding sections. MAN works standard can be obtained at www.ptd.man.eu. Registration is required.

Unless expressly stated otherwise, the general tolerances apply.

1.3 Quality of execution

1.3.1 Corrosion protection

Surface and corrosion protection influence the service life and appearance of the chassis. The coating quality of add-on and modification parts should consequently be that of a series-production chassis. In order to ensure this requirement, MAN works standards M3297 “Corrosion-protection and coating systems for non-MAN bodies” and M3018 “Corrosion-protection and coating systems for purchased parts” are binding

Mechanical connecting elements (e.g. screws, nuts, washers, bolts) are to be optimally protected against corrosion.

In the event of non-compliance, MAN excludes liability for the consequences.

Series production MAN chassis are coated with environmentally friendly, water-based two-component chassis top-coat paints at approx. 80°C. To guarantee uniform coating, the following coating structure is required for all metal component assemblies:

- Bare metal or blasted component surface (SA 2.5)
- Priming: two-component epoxy primer, approved in accordance with MAN works standard M3162-C or, if possible, cathodic dip painting to MAN works standard M3078-2, with zinc phosphate pre-treatment.
- Top coat: two-component top-coat paint to MAN works standard M3094, preferably water-based; if there are no facilities for this, then solvent-based paint is also permitted.
- Refer to the data sheets of the paint manufacturer for details of curing and drying times and temperatures.

In the selection and combination of different metals (e.g. aluminium and steel), the effect of standard electrode potential for corrosion must be considered. The possible effects of the electrochemical series with regard to corrosion on the boundary surfaces (contact corrosion) must be combated by means of appropriate measures (insulation).

To prevent corrosion through salt while a vehicle is stationary during the bodybuilding phase, wash all chassis with fresh water upon arrival at the bodybuilder’s premises to remove salt residue.

Further information on corrosion protection with regard to the body can be found in Chapter IV, Section 1.9.

1.3.2 Welding work on the vehicle

In general, welding work on the vehicle other than contained in these guidelines to fitting bodies or MAN repair instructions is not permissible.

Welding on components subject to design approval (e.g. connecting devices, underride guard) may only be performed by the holder of the design approval. Welding work on these components leads to the withdrawal of the design approval and may pose road safety risks!

Welding work on the chassis requires specialist knowledge. The workshop must therefore employ suitably trained and qualified personnel to carry out the required welding work (e.g. in Germany, according to the DVS leaflets 2510 – 2512 “Carrying out repair welding work on commercial vehicles”, and DVS leaflet 2518 “Weld criteria for use of fine-grain steels in commercial vehicle manufacture/repair”, available from the DVS publishing house).

Important notice

Welding of a frame is only permissible using material identical to that used for the original frame (see Chapter III, Section 4.3).

The frames of MAN vehicles are made from high-strength fine-grain steel. The fine-grain steel employed is highly suitable for welding. Used by a qualified welder, metal active gas (MAG) and manual metal arc (MMA) welding techniques produce high-grade and durable welded joints.

Welding filler material:

Important notice

Welding filler material:

A suitable filler material must be selected; it must at minimum possess the same yield strength and tensile strength as the material to be welded.

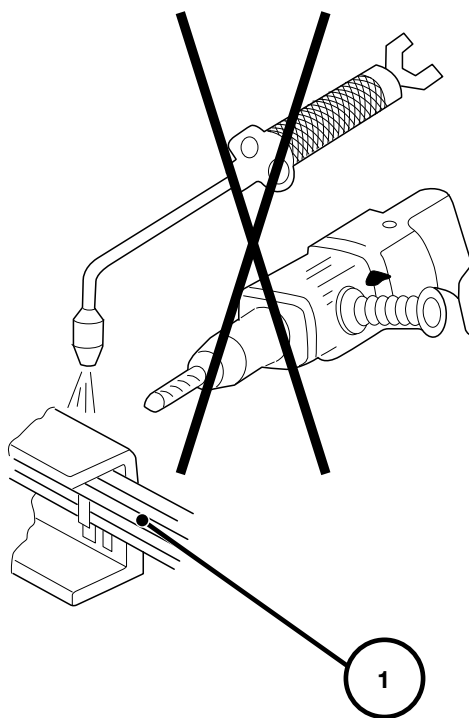
Basic approach:

Welding must not be carried out if the ambient temperature drops below + 5°C.

It is important to prepare the welding point thoroughly to produce a high-quality joint.

Heat-sensitive parts in the vicinity of welded joints (e.g. electric wiring, compressed-air lines) must be protected against the effects of heat or disassembled (Fig. 01-III).

Fig. 01-III: Protection of heat-sensitive parts



T_993_000021_0001_Z

1) Polyamide pipes

The areas where the part to be welded joins the vehicle and the earth terminal on the welding equipment must be bare metal. Any paint, corrosion, oil, grease, dirt, etc. must be removed.

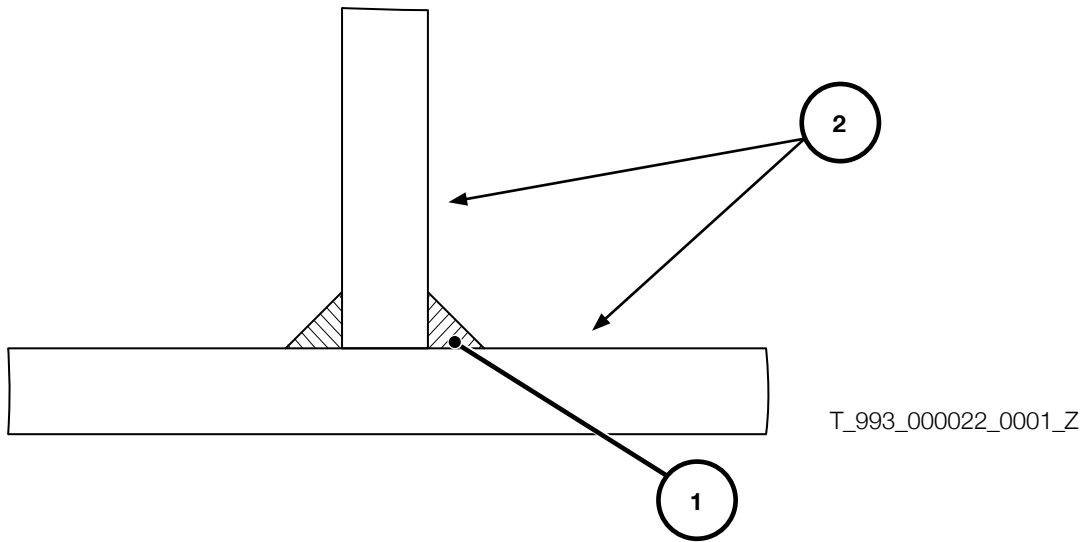
Only DC welding is allowed - pay attention to the polarity of the electrodes.

Welding must be done without undercuts (see Fig. 02-III). Make sure there are no cracks in the weld seam. Produce joint seams on main members as V or X (see Fig. 03-III) seams in several passes.

The layer of scale caused by the welding process as well as residue of burned paint must be mechanically removed. Welds must be restored to a bare-metal state prior to preserving/painting.

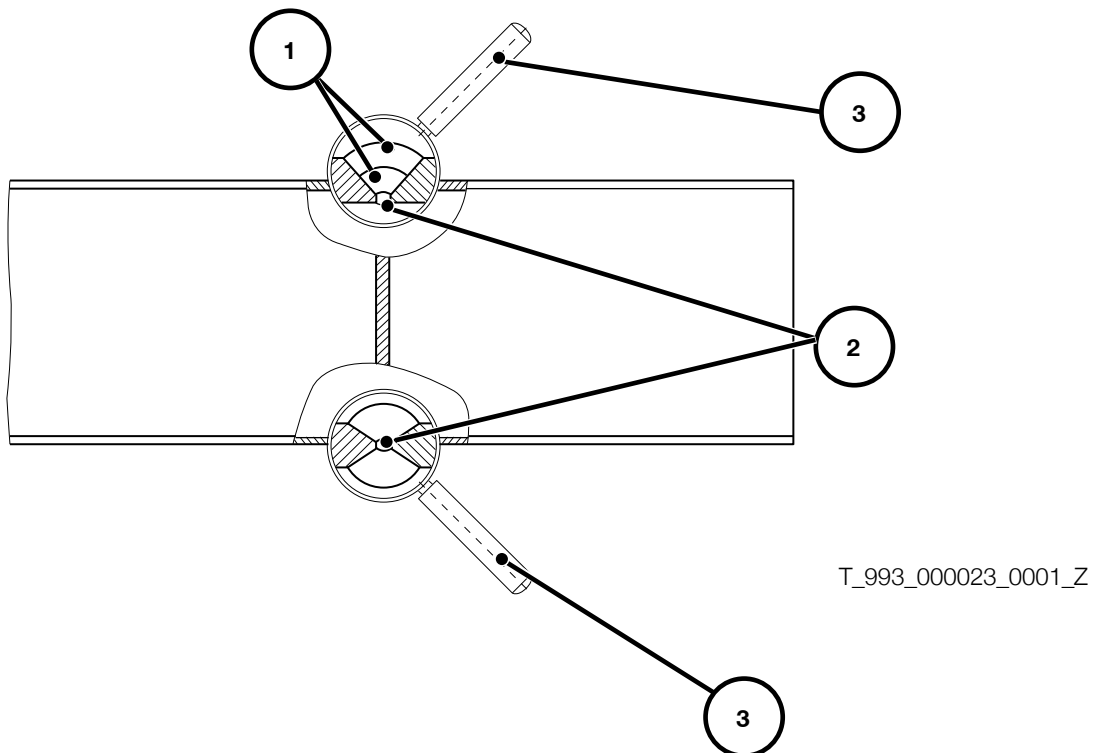
To this end, MAN recommends that welds be mechanically finished.

Fig. 02-III: Undercuts



- 1) Weld seam
- 2) Avoid undercuts at the locations shown

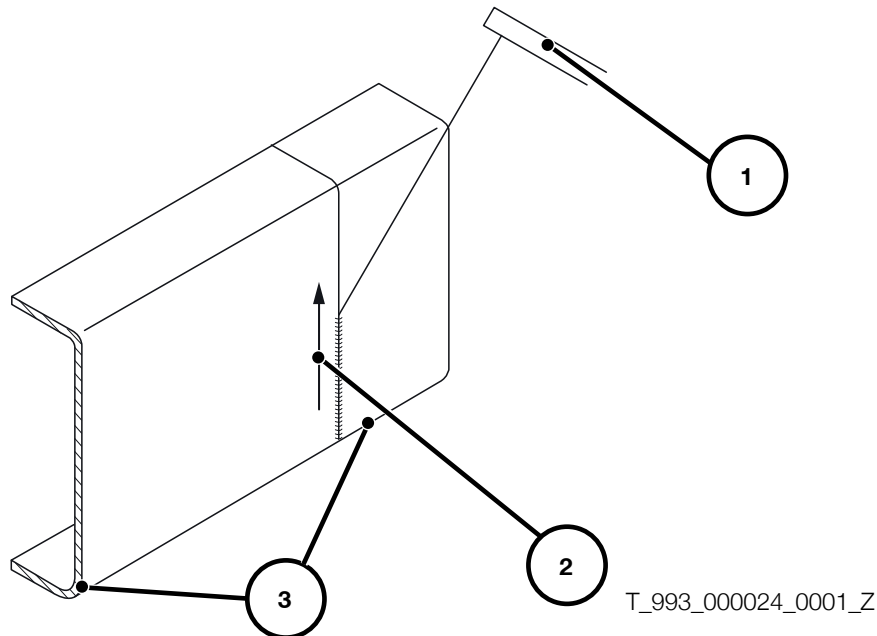
Fig. 03-III: Welding an X and Y seam



- 1) Weld seam with two passes
- 2) Root pass
- 3) Welding electrode

Vertical welding shall be carried out from bottom to top (see Fig. 04-III).

Fig. 04-III: Vertical welding



- 1) Welding electrode
- 2) Direction of welding
- 3) Profiles to be welded

To prevent damage to electronic subassemblies (e.g. alternator, radio, FFR, EBS, EDC, ECAS) keep to the following procedure:

- Disconnect the minus and plus cables of batteries, join the loose ends of the cables (- to +).
- Turn on the battery master switch (mechanical) or bypass the electric battery master switch on the solenoid (disconnect cables and join).
- Attach the earth clip of the welding apparatus directly to the point to be welded, ensuring good conductivity (see above).
- Connect the parts to be welded with each other (e.g. connect both parts to the earth clip).

Electronic sub-assemblies need not be disconnected if the above prerequisites are precisely met.

1.3.3 Drill holes, riveted and bolted connections

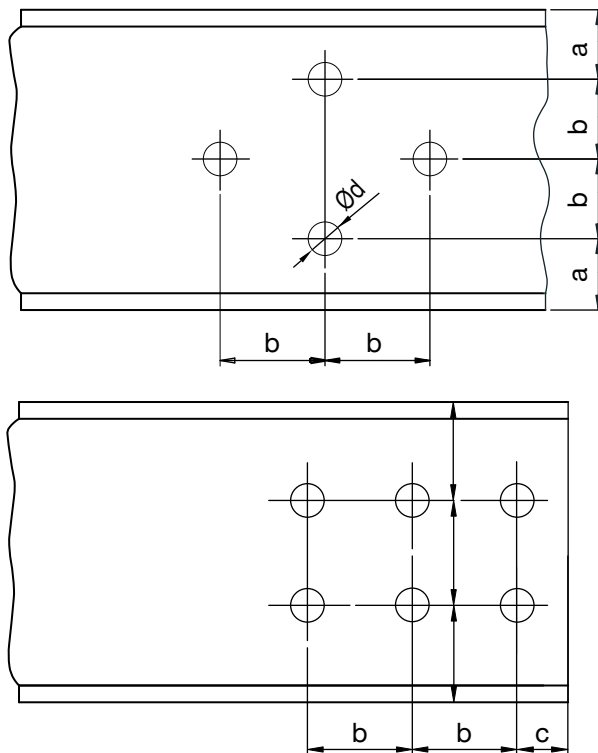
Connections between frame parts and frame add-ons (e.g. corner plates with cross member, thrust plates, platform corner pieces, tank brackets and so on) are realised by means of rivets or bolts during series production.

Drill holes in frame side member

The drill holes in the frame web are to be used for connections to the frame.

The hole pattern extends in parts along the entire length of the frame side member. If required, the exact hole pattern can be accessed at www.manted.de under "Frame side member". Drill-hole and edge distances are shown in Fig. 05-III. If the existing drill holes do not enable the connection to be realised, it is possible to drill holes in the web of the side member in accordance with Fig. 05-III. Drill holes can be made (in the frame web) along the entire useful length of the frame. Drilling must not damage any of the parts located on the inner side (e.g. electric wiring, compressed-air lines). All drill holes must be deburred after drilling and the drilling swarf removed. In addition, it must be ensured that subsequently drilled holes are adequately protected against corrosion (see Chapter III, Section 1.3.1).

Fig. 05-III: Distances between drill holes



T_993_000025_0001_Z

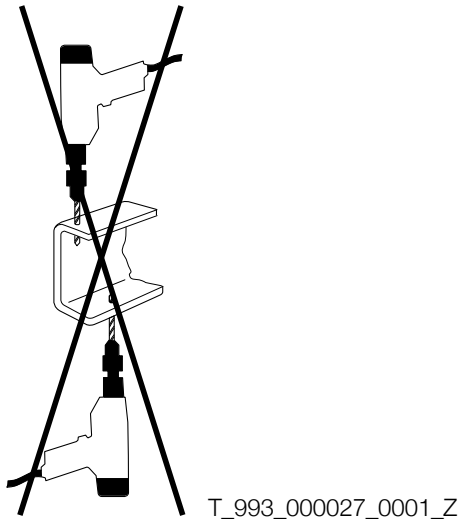
- a ≥ 40 mm
- b ≥ 50 mm
- c ≥ 25 mm
- d ≤ 14 mm on the TGL
- d ≤ 16 mm on the TGM
- d ≤ 16 mm on the TGS/TGX

Important notice

Drill holes in the upper and lower flange

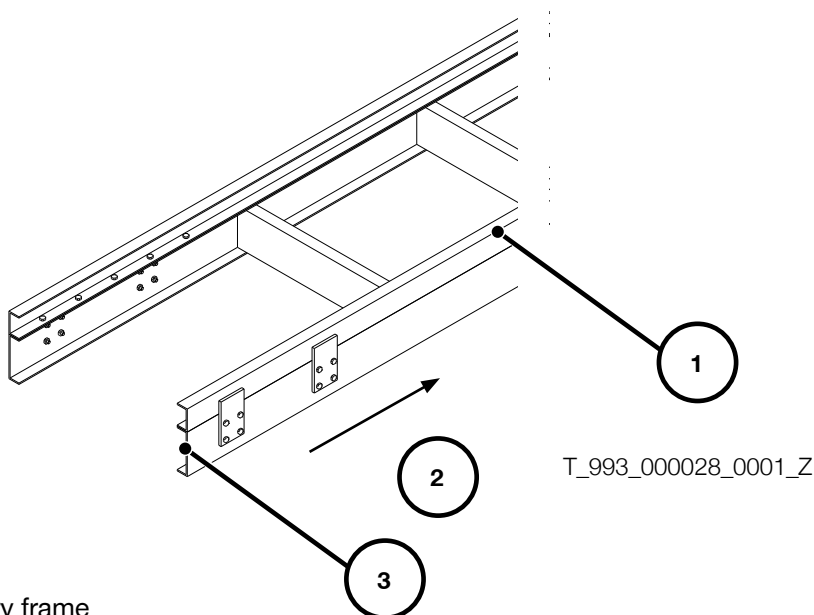
As a matter of principle, it is not permitted to subsequently drill any holes in the upper and lower flanges of the frame side member (Fig. 06-III).be selected; it must at minimum possess the same yield strength and tensile strength as the material to be welded.

Fig. 06-III: Drill holes in the uooper and lower flange



The only exception to drilling holes in the upper and lower flange is at the rear end of the frame behind the final cross member or the last cross member (in cases where no final cross member has been fitted). In addition, the use of thrust plates in this area is necessary. Moreover, any holes in the upper and lower flanges not used for bodywork shall nevertheless be occupied by bolt connections of the frame and auxiliary frame (Fig. 07-III).

Fig. 07-III: Drill holes at frame end



- 1) Auxiliary frame
- 2) Direction of travel
- 3) Frame end (vehicle)

Bolted connections on chassis frame

If ex works bolted connections are changed, a bolted connection of equal quality as per manufacturer’s specifications must be restored in accordance with MAN standard M3059 (for obtaining this standard, see www.ptd.man.eu). For this purpose, the following aspects of the bolted connections must be identical:

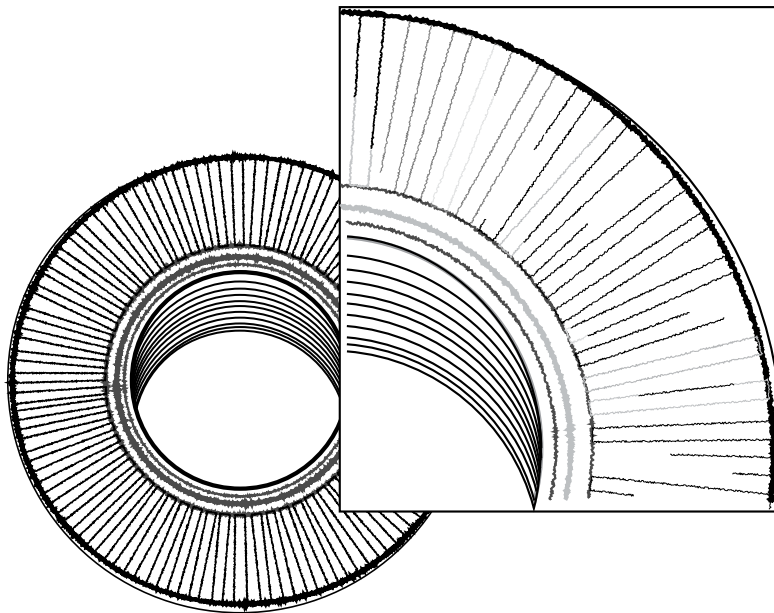
1. Number and location of bolted connections (e.g. at connections of cross members)
2. Strength class (e.g. ribbed bolts 10.9, hexagonal flange nuts 10)
3. Types of nuts and bolts (ribbed bolts/hexagonal flange nuts)
4. Thread dimensions (e.g. M14 x 1.5)

Tightening torques are to be applied as per MAN standard M3059-1. To the end, the total coefficients of friction of the nuts and bolts must be between $\mu_{tot} = 0.09$ to 0.15.

MAN recommends the use of ribbed bolts/hexagonal flange nuts as per MAN standards M7.012.04/M7.112.40.

If connections are disassembled, use new nuts and bolts on the tightening side when reassembling ribbed bolts. The tightening side can be identified by slight grooves on the ribs in the bolt/nut flange (see Fig. 08-III).

Fig. 08-III: Marks on nips on the tightening side



T_993_000026_0001_Z

Alternatively, in accordance with manufacturer’s specifications it is also possible to use high-strength rivets (e.g. Huck-BOM, blind fasteners). A riveted joint must be at least equivalent to a bolted connection in terms of design and strength.

1.4 Fire-protection measures for vehicle bodies and modifications

This chapter contains basic information as well as specific notes concerning fire-protection measures for bodies and modifications on MAN chassis.

Fires can originate from:

- vehicle bodies or modifications
- falling cargo (e.g. wood chips)
- the operational environment of the vehicle
- the surface temperature of exhaust silencers and exhaust pipes.

1.4.1 General

An increasing variety of transport tasks and vehicle applications results in a large number of causes of fires in vehicles and cargo. It is mandatory for the body manufacturer or converter to comply with the specifications set down in MAN's Guideline to fitting bodies, *Section I-Applicability and legal agreements -3.4 Operational and road safety*.

It is mandatory for the body manufacturer or converter to initiate the fire-protection measures appropriate for the type of application/operation during conversion of the vehicle.

In particular, information relevant to registration, country-specific regulations and laws must be observed.

The body manufacturer or converter must point out the corresponding fire-protection measures in the operating instructions for its body and refer the end user to the particularities thereof.

The following applies to all fire-protection measures taken by body manufacturers and converters:

MAN can provide no information on the effectiveness of the measure used, responsibility lies with the company performing the modification.

1.4.2 Statutory requirements

MAN delivers chassis that are already equipped ex works in accordance with national ADR regulations.

No component or system on the chassis with relevance to ADR/GGVS may be modified during work on the body/conversion unless necessitated by the respective national regulations to be complied with.

It is mandatory for body manufacturers and converters to comply with ADR/GGVS regulations and country-specific laws and regulations.

Please see www.manted.de for further information. Registration is required.

1.4.3 Measures in the vicinity of the engine and exhaust system

In general, modifications to the exhaust system are to be avoided. Various factory options are available for MAN chassis and body builders must check to see if these can be used on a case-by-case basis.

Temperatures of 250 – 300°C occur on the surface of the exhaust system.

MAN recommends the installation of heat shields or heat-protection mats as required on parts of the vehicle/body that exhibit high temperatures.

With regard to vehicles fulfilling the EURO 6 exhaust standard, it must be noted that the diesel particulate filter (DPF) is subject to automatic regeneration cycles. The soot particles are collected and converted into CO₂ in the diesel particulate filter (DPF). This process is known as regeneration. A high exhaust gas temperature is required upstream of the DPF for this purpose. Regeneration usually takes place automatically during driving operation and is not noticed.

In this regard, please note the detailed information in the vehicle's operating instructions.

Warning notice

FIRE RISK!

Exhaust system becomes extremely hot and requires a long time to cool down.

Combustible materials, dust and vapours can be ignited especially easily, e.g.:

- If they are lying on or adhering to the exhaust system
- When refuelling, near fuel, coal, wood or grain storage facilities or similar
- On grass surfaces, hay, straw, foliage or other vegetated areas.
- When loading and unloading dangerous goods vehicles

Please see the further information in the vehicle operator's manual regarding this.

1.4.4 Measures on the air intake system

In order to avoid drawing in burning cigarette ends or similar, a so-called cigarette mesh must be fitted directly over the air intake in the same fashion as the mesh installed on production vehicles (non-flammable material, mesh size SW6, area of the open cross-section at least that of the intake air scoop on the air filter).

Warning notice

There is a risk of vehicle fire if this requirement is not observed!

MAN can provide no information on the effectiveness of the measure used, responsibility lies with the company performing the modification.

1.4.5 Electric wiring/fittings

Overloading, external thermal influences, sparks produced by improper connections or loose plug connectors in the electric wiring can result in a vehicle fire.

Electric wiring in the body, in particular wiring carrying heavy loads, must be adequately dimensioned and equipped with fuses appropriate for the maximum current draw.

When connecting additional electrical consumers, the electrical interfaces of the vehicle described in the Guideline to fitting bodies are to be employed.

Electric wiring is to be routed in such a manner that it is protected by adequate distance from the thermal effects of heat sources such as the engine, the exhaust system and so on (see Chapter III, Section 1.4.3 „Measures in the vicinity of the engine and exhaust system“).

If this is not possible, the wiring must be protected by means of suitable insulation measures such as covers, corrugated tubes/protective hoses, ducts and so on.

There must be no chafing points on sharp edges, protruding threaded bolts, nuts, heads of screws and so on.

Connections between individual cables must be implemented professionally and correctly, using plug connectors. The requisite spare parts can be obtained from the MAN Spare-parts Service.

Important notice

Subsequent connection to existing electric wiring by means of insulation displacement connectors or simply twisting or soldering is forbidden. Soldered connections are not permitted in movable wiring.

Any electric wiring/cable harnesses on the chassis damaged during assembly of the body must be replaced.

More detailed information can be found in Chapter III- Chassis – 8.0 Electrical/electronic system (vehicle electrical system).

2.0 Overall vehicle

2.1 General

This chapter contains basic terms as well as specific notes concerning the modification of MAN vehicles. In particular, information relevant to registration must be observed.

2.2 Terms, dimensions and weights

The terms, dimensions and weights below are to be observed when modifying vehicles and bodywork.

Information

National regulations take priority over technically permissible dimensions and weights if they restrict the technically permissible dimensions and weights.

2.2.1 Theoretical wheelbase

The theoretical wheelbase is a variable that assists in determining the position of the centre of gravity and the axle loads. It depends on the:

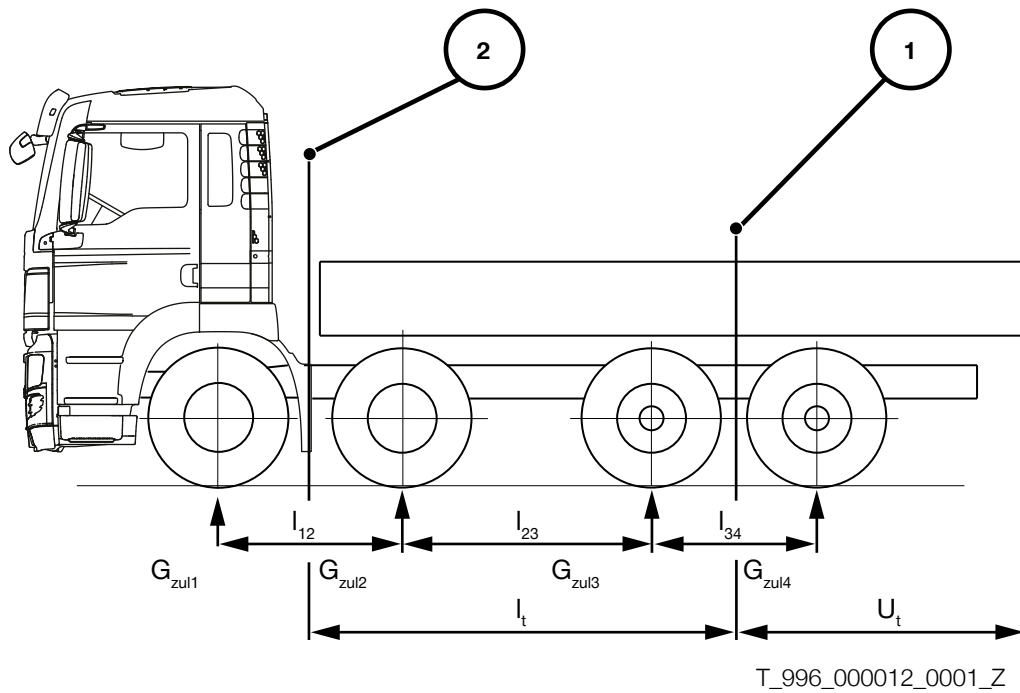
- Number of axles
- Arrangement of axles
- Distance between axles
- Permissible loads on individual axles

The theoretical wheelbase is the distance between the theoretical front-axle centerline and the theoretical rear-axle centerline.

Theoretical axle centerlines are used as reference points in order to simplify calculations. The reference point is needed in order to group several axles at one point. The permissible axle loads of the axles to be grouped may be the same or different.

An example can be seen in Fig. 09-III, where both front axles are combined to a theoretical front-axle centerline and both rear axles to a theoretical rear-axle centerline.

Fig. 09-III: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang on a four-axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles (random axle-load distribution)



- 1) theoretical rear-axle centerline
- 2) theoretical front-axle centerline

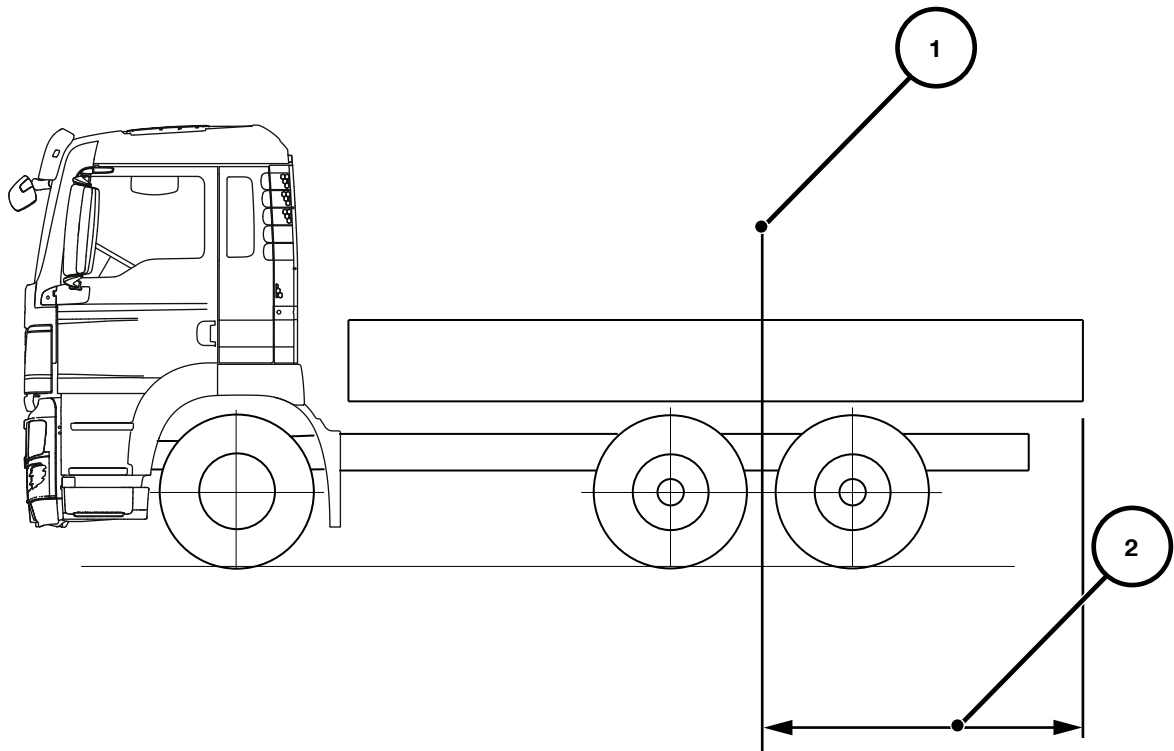
l_{12}, l_{23}, l_{34} distance between the respective axles
 $G_{zul1}, G_{zul2}, G_{zul3}, G_{zul4}$ permissible axle load of the respective axles
 l_t theoretical wheelbase
 U_t theoretical overhang

Formulae for calculating the theoretical wheelbase in different axle configurations are described in Chapter V Section 1.13.

2.2.2 Theoretical and permitted overhang lengths

The theoretical overhang length is the distance between the theoretical rear-axle centerline and the end of the vehicle, including its bodywork (see Fig. 10-III).

Fig. 10-III: Frame overhang on a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and same rear-axle loads



T_996_000013_0002_Z

- 1) theoretical rear-axle centerline
- 2) theoretical overhang

The permitted overhang is an important dimension with regard to adhering to permissible axle loads and the minimum front-axle load. As an example, Fig. 10-III shows the overhang on a three-axle chassis.

The permissible overhang for

- two-axle vehicles is 65%
- all other vehicles is 70%

of the theoretical overhang.

The theoretical overhang must not be longer than the permissible overhang.

However, the above-mentioned figures can be exceeded by 5% in the absence of equipment for pulling a trailer.

The prerequisite is that the minimum front-axle loads stated in Chapter III, Section 2.2.8, Table 01-III are maintained in every operating state.

The terms “theoretical wheelbase” and “theoretical rear-axle centerline” are explained in Chapter III, Section 2.2.1.

In addition, the overhang length has a significant effect on the distance that the rear end of the vehicle swings out when the vehicle is driven in a circle. The national registration requirements must be complied with when planning the body.

2.2.3 Permissible axle load

The permissible axle load is the total load on an axle or group of axles that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible axle load
- nationally permissible axle load.

The technically permissible load on an axle or group of axles is restricted by the characteristics, condition and design of the components of the axle(s), for example the axle itself, suspension, rims and tyres.

The nationally permissible load on an axle or group of axles depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice

Exceeding technically permissible axle loads is forbidden!

Under certain circumstances, nationally permissible axle loads may be exceeded. In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible axle loads are lower than the technically permissible axle loads.

2.2.4 Permissible gross weight

The permissible gross weight is the total weight of a vehicle including its load that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible gross weight
- nationally permissible gross weight.

The technically permissible gross weight is the weight that may not be exceeded, taking into account the engineering design of the vehicle's components (e.g. axle concept, brake system, material stress).

The nationally permissible gross weight of a vehicle depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice

Exceeding the technically permissible gross weight is forbidden!

Under certain circumstances, the nationally permissible gross weight may be exceeded. In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible gross weight is lower than the technically permissible gross weight.

2.2.5 Permissible gross train weight

The permissible gross train weight is the weight of a train combination, i.e. tractor and trailer or semitrailer tractor and semitrailer (including its load) that may not be exceeded.

A distinction is made between

- technically permissible gross train weight
- nationally permissible gross train weight.

The technically permissible gross train weight is the weight that may not be exceeded, taking into account the engineering design of the vehicle's components (e.g. axle concept, brake system, material stress).

The nationally permissible gross train weight depends on the laws and the criteria governing the registration of vehicles in that specific country.

Important notice

Exceeding the technically permissible gross train weight is forbidden! Under certain circumstances, the nationally permissible gross train weight may be exceeded.

In this regard, the following must be observed.

- A certificate of exemption must be obtained from the national authority responsible.
- A certificate of exemption can only be obtained in case where the nationally permissible gross train weight is lower than the technically permissible gross train weight.

2.2.6 Axle overload

Axle overload is to be understood as the exceeding of both nationally permissible and technically permissible axle loads.

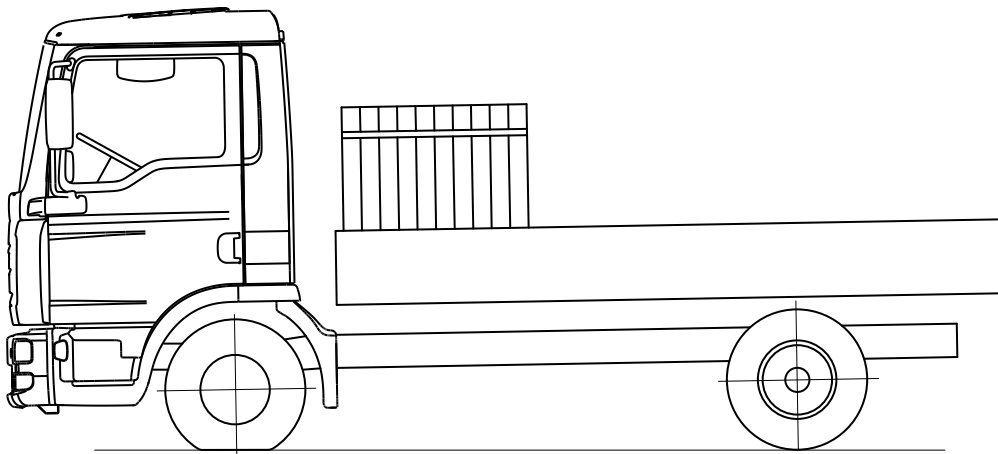
Axle overloads can result from:

- loading the vehicle in front- or back-heavy manner
- overloading
- incorrect design of vehicle or body.

Important notice

Axle overloads must be avoided because otherwise, serious damage can occur to the vehicle and its components..

Fig. 11-III: Overload on front axle due to front-heavy loading



T_996_000014_0001_Z

2.2.7 Wheel-load difference

The wheel-load difference describes the difference in load on the left and right wheel or set of wheels of **an axle or group of axles**. The difference in load can cause a tilted position in relation to the road. In conjunction with a laterally shifted center of gravity, this can lead to adverse driving characteristics. Furthermore, it can also result in one-sided wear on the tyres.

Bodybuilders and operators must ensure that the wheel-load difference in all operating states (laden and unladen) is as low as possible. An uneven load distribution as a result of the body can, for example, be countered by relocating parts such as the tank, battery box and spare wheel.

If there are increased wheel-load differences, ESP (Electronic Stability Program) should be selected as alternative equipment in order to improve driving stability.

The maximum wheel-load difference must not exceed 10% of the actual (1) axle load, but 5% of the permissible (2) axle load. The smaller value is the decisive factor (see red line in Fig. 12-III).

In addition, the permissible load of the tyre and rim combination should be checked. Information concerning this can be found in the technical manuals of the tyre and rim manufacturers.

Proceed as follows to determine the maximum permissible wheel-load difference per axle or group of axles.

Step 1: calculate the limit value of the axle load = $\frac{0,05}{0,1} \cdot$ permissible axle load

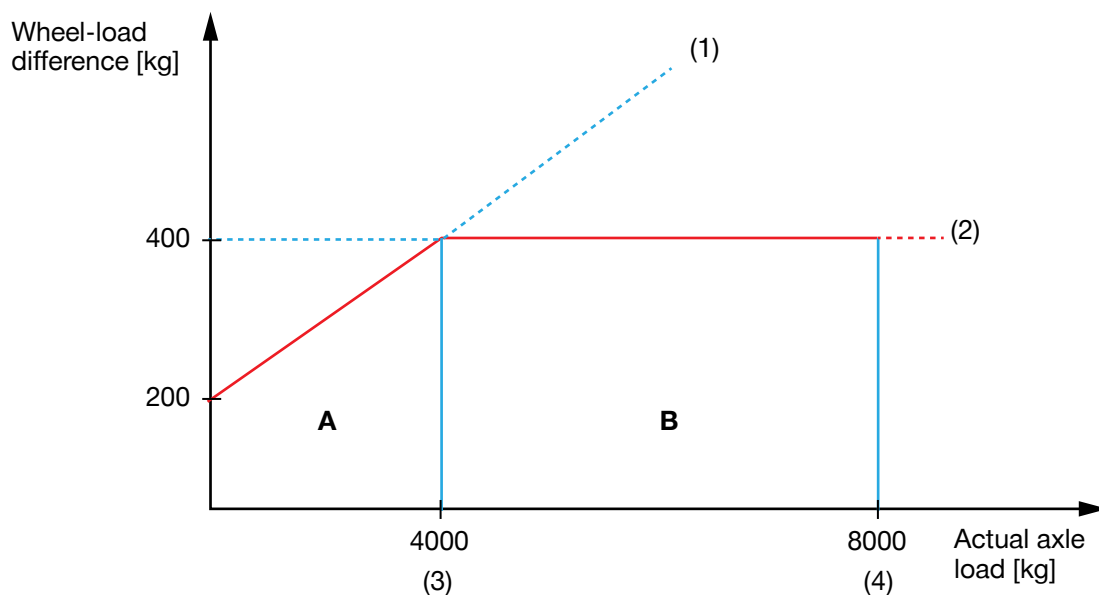
Step 2: determine the applicable range: Range A \leq limit value
Range B $>$ limit value

Step 3: calculate the permissible wheel-load difference
If the actual axle load is in Range A, the formula
- permissible wheel-load difference = 0.1 x actual axle load applies.

If the actual axle load is in Range B, the formula
- permissible wheel-load difference = 0.05 x permissible axle load applies.

Step 4: check the permissible wheel loads

Fig. 12-III: Representation of the permissible wheel-load difference (the numerical values apply to this example; they are not universally applicable)



T_354_000001_0001_D

- | | | | |
|----|------------------------------------|----|---------------------------------|
| 1) | 10% of the actual axle load | 2) | 5% of the permissible axle load |
| 3) | Limit value between Ranges A and B | 4) | Permissible axle load |

Example:

Axle data:

Actual weights:

- Unladen: 3000 kg; (with equal distribution 1500 kg per wheel)
- Laden: 7800 kg; (with equal distribution 3900 kg per wheel)

Permissible axle load: 8000 kg

Tyres: 315/80R22,5 with load index 156

Step 1: calculate the limit value of the axle load

$$\text{Limit value} = \frac{5 (\%)}{(10 (\%))} \times 8000 \text{ kg} = 4000 \text{ kg}$$

Step 2: determine the applicable range

- Unladen: < limit value (3000 kg < 4000 kg) -> Range A
- Laden: > limit value (7800 kg > 4000 kg) -> Range B

Step 3: calculate the permissible wheel-load difference

- Unladen: 0,1 x 3000 kg = 300 kg (\pm 150 kg per wheel)
A load of 1350 kg is thus permitted on one side and 1650 kg on the other.
- Laden: 0,05 x 8 000 kg = 400 kg (\pm 200 kg per wheel)
A load of 4100 kg is thus permitted on one side and 3700 kg on the other.

Step 4: check the permissible wheel loads

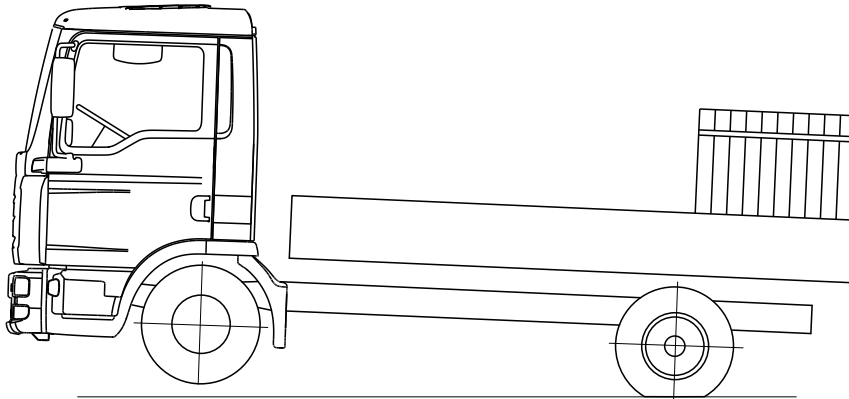
Load index 156 means that the permissible tyre-load capacity is 4000 kg.

In this example, the tyre-load capacity thus limits the possible wheel-load difference to 200 kg when laden. (\pm 100 kg per wheel)

2.2.8 Minimum front-axle load

To ensure proper steering, the front axle of the vehicle, depending on model range and number of axles, must exhibit a given minimum load as per Table 01-III in all load conditions of the vehicle

Fig. 13-III: Minimum load on front axle



T_996_000016_0001_Z

Notes on use of the table:

- If there is more than one front axle, the % value is the sum of the front axle loads.
- Three-axle vehicles with liftable leading or trailing axle must be considered as two-axle drive when axle lift is actuated. In this condition, the higher minimum front axle load of two-axle drive vehicles applies. The empty condition must be considered with both lifted and lowered axle.

Table 01-III: Minimum loading of front axle(s) of the TGL/TGM in every load situation expressed as a percentage of the respective vehicle's actual weight

Minimum loading of front axle in every load situation expressed as a percentage of the respective vehicle's actual weight				
GW = gross weight				
RDT = rigid-drawbar trailer				
CAT = center-axle trailer				
Series	Number of axles	without RDT / CAT Solo vehicle	with RDT / CAT	Other tail load, e.g. crane, liftgate
TGL	Two axles	25%	30%	30%
TGM	Two axles	25%	30%	30%
	More than two axles	20%	25%	25%

With combined rear loads like rigid drawbar trailers with loading crane for example, the higher minimum front-axle load applies.

The values apply including any additional tail loads such as

- nose weight through central axle trailer,
- loading crane on vehicle tail,
- Lift gates
- transportable fork-lift trucks.

2.2.9 Calculating the axle load and weighing procedure

It is essential that an axle load calculation be completed in order to ensure correct design of the body. The weights given in the sales documents only apply to production standard vehicles. Weight differences can be caused by optional equipment or manufacturing tolerances. Manufacturing inaccuracies (within tolerances) may occur.

Achieving optimum compatibility between bodywork and truck is only possible if the vehicle is weighed before any work on the body is commenced. The weights thus obtained are then taken as a basis for an axle load calculation.

The vehicle must be weighed subject to following conditions:

- Without the driver
- With a fully filled AdBlue® tank and fully filled fuel tank
- With the handbrake released and the vehicle secured with chocks
- If fitted with air suspension, raise the vehicle to normal driving position
- Lifiable axle(s) must be raised to the normal driving position (as in loaded condition)
- Do not actuate any moving-off aid.

Observe the following sequence when weighing a vehicle (leading or trailing axle relates to the rear axle):

Two-axle vehicles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Three-axle vehicles with two rear axles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd together with 3rd axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Four axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles:

- 1st together with 2nd axle
- 3rd together with 4th axle
- whole vehicle as a check

Four-axle vehicle with one front and three rear axles:

- 1st axle
- 2nd together with 3rd and 4th axles
- whole vehicle as a check.

2.2.10 Rolling circumference and difference in rolling circumference

The rolling circumference is the distance a tyre covers in the course of a single revolution without slip.

Different tyre sizes on the front and rear axle(s) can only be fitted to all-wheel-drive vehicles (including HydroDrive) if the difference in rolling circumference of the tyres used does not exceed 2%.

In the case of non-all-wheel-drive vehicles, the difference in rolling circumference may not exceed 10%.

The basis for calculation is always the circumference of the smaller tyre.

2.3 Modifications to the overall vehicle

In general, modifications to the complete vehicle should only be made in exceptional cases. It is essential to comply with all manufacturer's specifications and to agree any modifications with MAN (for the address, see "Publisher" above).

In this context, individual components cannot be regarded individually, because they are usually part of systems and functions of the complete vehicle. The cross members of the chassis frame are an example of this. Together with the frame side members, they form the support structure of the truck and affect many other functions. This means they are subject to heavy loads and may not be modified.

2.3.1 Modifications to the wheelbase

Every change of wheelbase requires manufacturer's confirmation. It is assumed that any change to the wheelbase will only be carried out subsequent to receipt of the manufacturer's approval.

Notes on applying for manufacturer's confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2.1. The conversion data file associated with changes to the wheelbase and/or frame overhang will be provided together with the confirmation.

Technical design regulations applicable to steering (in particular 70/311 EEC, ECE-R79) mean that, depending upon the number and type of steered axles, wheelbase, tyres axle loads and gross weight, chassis of MAN model ranges are fitted with different steering wheels (diameter), steering gear (range of ratios) and steering oil piping (cooling coils).

As a basic principle, it must be ensured that the new wheelbase is within the model limit.

"Within the model limit" means that the new wheelbase is neither

- shorter than the shortest nor
- longer than the longest standard wheelbase for the same model of vehicle.

"The same model of vehicle" means vehicles with

- the same model number
- the same type of vehicle and
- the same wheel configuration

Important notice

Any shortening or extending of wheelbases exceeding this may only be carried out by MAN or its qualified conversion suppliers ("qUL") subsequent to consultation with MAN.

In addition, on TGL/TGM vehicles

- fitted with electronic-hydraulic steering of the trailing axle "EHLA®" it is possible to extend and shorten the wheelbase. Modifications to the steering system, however, are not permitted.

Type of wheelbase modification

Modifications to the wheelbase can be carried out in one of the following two ways:

- I. Relocating the entire rear-axle unit
- II. Disconnecting the frame side members (inserting or removing a section of the frame).

In the case of the TGL/TGM, MAN recommends relocating the rear-axle unit, especially when the wheelbase is to be changed to the next shortest or next longest standard wheelbase available. Due to the existing hole pattern in the frame side member (distance between holes is 50 mm), this can most often be done without having to drill additional holes or carry out welding.

Irrespective of the type of wheelbase modification, the following must be observed.

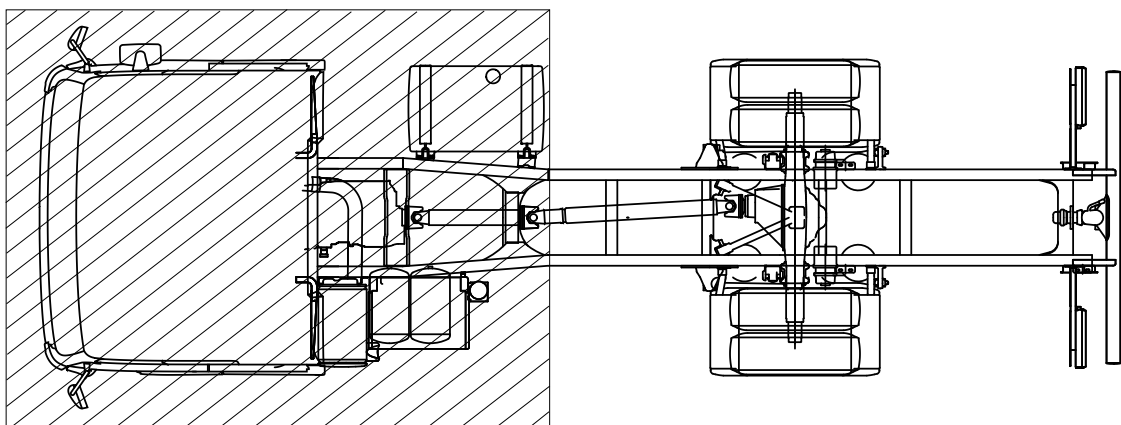
- The maximum distance between cross members subsequent to wheelbase modification may not exceed 1200 mm. A tolerance of +100 mm is permissible.
- Modifications to the propshaft train must be carried out according to these guidelines to fitting bodies (see Chapter III, Section 6.5 and the instructions provided by the propshaft manufacturer. If the new wheelbase is the same as a standard wheelbase, then the arrangement of the propshaft and cross members must be the same as that for a vehicle with standard wheelbase.
- Chapter III, Sections 6.3.5.2 and 8.2.1 apply with regards to the relocation of air and electrical lines. CAN cables may not be cut. For this reason, longer routes must be selected when shortening wheelbases. Moreover, rings and loops may not be formed when routing cables. During wheelbase extensions all rear-axle related control units and sensors must be relocated with the axle, which is why adapter cable harnesses are available for all the aforementioned equipment. System, method and item numbers are described in detail in Chapter III, Section 8.2.

I. Relocating the entire rear-axle unit

If the rear-axle unit is relocated, the axle mounting, axle guide and cross members must be attached using rivets or MAN double-nip countersunk bolts in accordance with Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 of the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies. The distance between drill holes specified there must be adhered to!

In the case of vehicles with dropped frames, the axle guide and suspension (e.g. spring hangers, longitudinal control arm brackets) may not be located in the area in front of or within the bends in the frame. A minimum clearance of 100 mm to the second frame bend is assumed (see Fig. 14-III).

Fig. 14-III: Forbidden zone for rear axle guide



T_996_000017_0001_Z

II. Separating the frame side member

If the wheelbase modification is carried out by separating the frame side member, it is mandatory for welding to comply with the specifications in the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies (see Chapter III, Section 1.3.2). The original frame material must be used for any part inserted in the frame, e.g. frame side members, frame inserts. The material specifications can be found in Chapter III, Section 4.2. It is recommended that the frame side members are pre-heated to 150°C – 200°C.

The frame must not be separated in the vicinity of:

- Axle guides and suspension (e.g. spring hangers, trailing arm mountings), minimum distance 100 mm
- Bends in the frame, minimum distance 100 mm
- Points where loads are introduced
- Gearbox mountings and cross members (also transfer cases on all-wheel-drive vehicles)
- Engine mounting
- Points where loads are introduced from bodywork

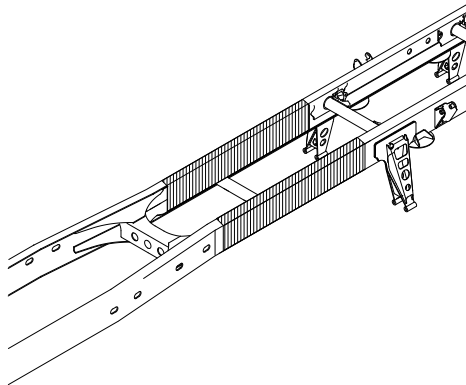
With the exception of Type N48, the frames of TGL/TGM vehicles have straight-through frames without bends.

On vehicles with straight frames behind the cab, the area in which weld seams for wheelbase modifications are permitted begins 100 mm behind the gearbox cross member and ends 100 mm ahead of the frontmost rear-axle guide (see Fig. 16-III).

On vehicles with dropped frames behind the cab, the area in which weld seams for wheelbase modifications are permitted begins 100 mm behind the bend and ends 100 mm ahead of the frontmost rear-axle guide (see Fig. 15-III).

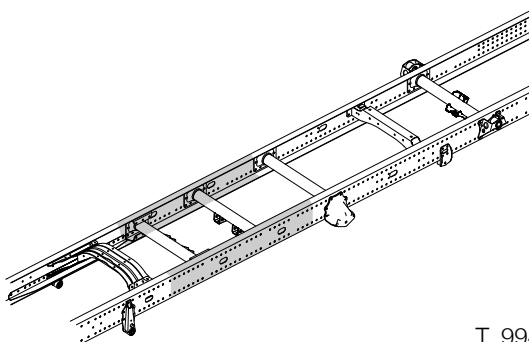
Welded seams along the longitudinal axis of the vehicle are not permitted!

Fig. 15-III: Permissible area for welding dropped frames



T_993_000029_0001_Z

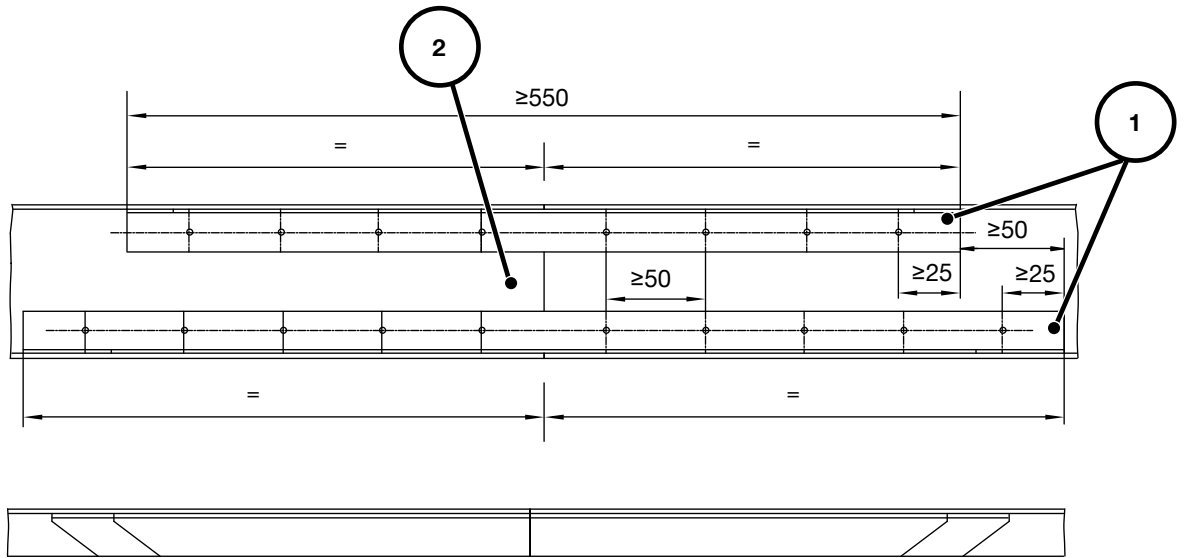
Fig. 16-III: Permissible area for welding straight frames



T_994_000030_0001_Z

If the wheelbase modification is carried out by separating the frame side member, weld seams for shortened wheelbases must be secured by means of inserts. Frame inserts must be in accordance with the following:

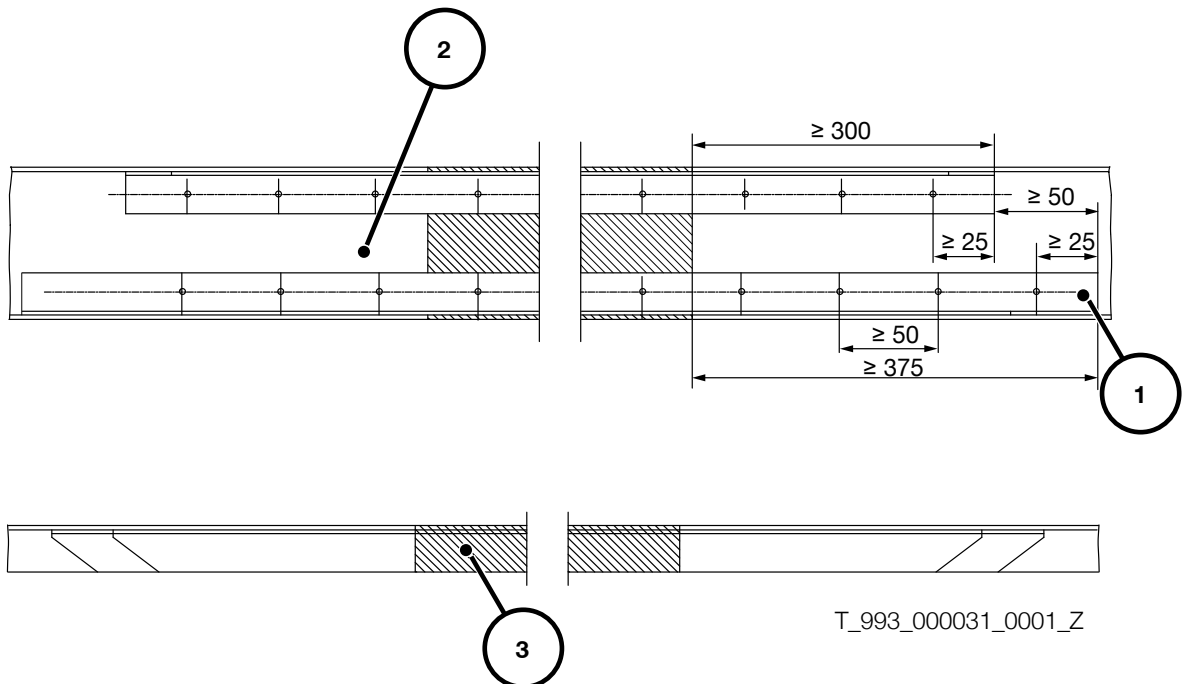
Fig. 17-III: Inserts for wheelbase shortening



T_993_000030_0001_Z

- 1) Frame insert
- 2) Frame side member

Fig. 18-III: Inserts for wheelbase extension



T_993_000031_0001_Z

- 1) Frame insert
- 2) Frame side member
- 3) Profile section

Location no. 1, Fig. 17-III and Fig. 18-III:

- Existing drill holes in the frame in the vicinity of the angle inserts are to be used. The following applies to the arrangement of drill holes on the frame side member:
distance between holes ≥ 50 mm, edge distances ≥ 25 mm. The hole pattern can be found in the corresponding frame side member drawing.

Location number 2, Fig. 17-III and Fig. 18-III:

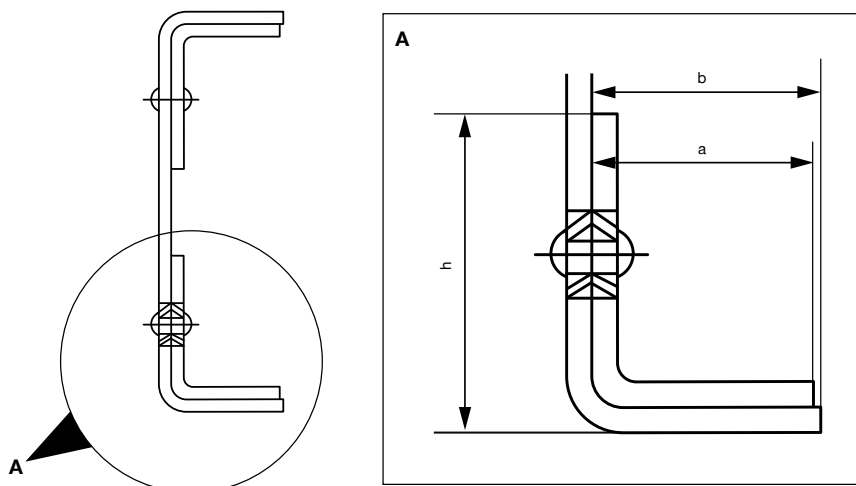
- Where parts are in contact, the weld seam must be levelled (no. 2 in Fig. 17-III and Fig. 18-III).

Location no. 3, Fig. 17-III and Fig. 18-III:

- Where wheelbases are extended by means of inserting a frame side member profile, the material specifications as set down in the frame-section table and the maximum permissible wheelbases as per the MAN guidelines to fitting bodies must be observed. The frame track may not be changed. If the maximum distances between frame cross members is exceeded, supplementary cross members must be inserted.

Moreover, the following notes on the dimensions of inserts must be observed.

Fig. 19-III: Inserts for wheelbase extension



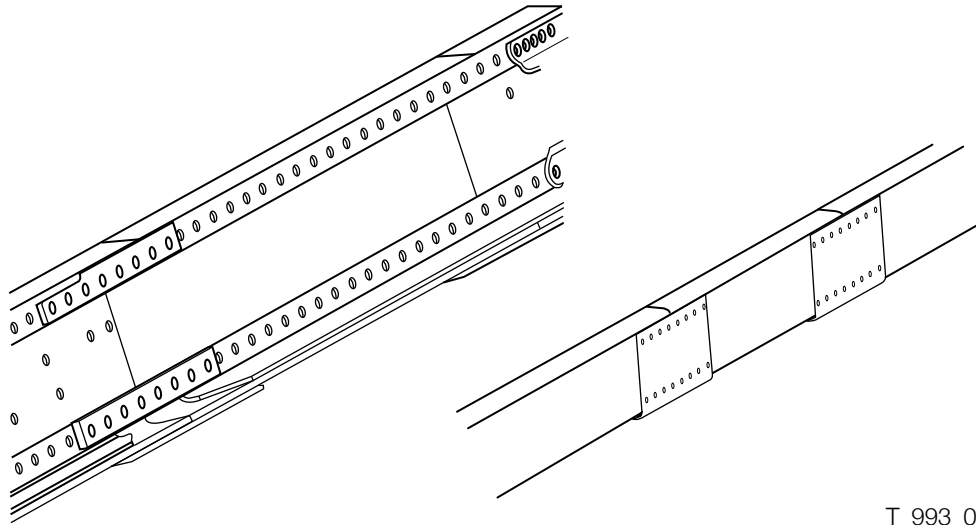
T_993_000032_0001_Z

Key

- Height (h) \geq Width (a)
- Width (a) is the same as the inner width of the frame (b), tolerance -5 mm.
- Thickness is the same as frame thickness, tolerance -1 mm. Material min. S355J2G3 (St.52-3)
- Rolled sections are not permitted.

On some long-wheelbase chassis, frame inserts are already fitted between the front and rear axles at the factory. Frame inserts may not be welded together with the frame side members. This can be avoided for example, by inserting a copper-based separating foil which is removed once the welding work is completed. Inserts used in changing the wheelbase may be simply butted-up to one another and may either be welded together or joined with an overlapping plate (see Fig. 20-III, Fig. 21-III).

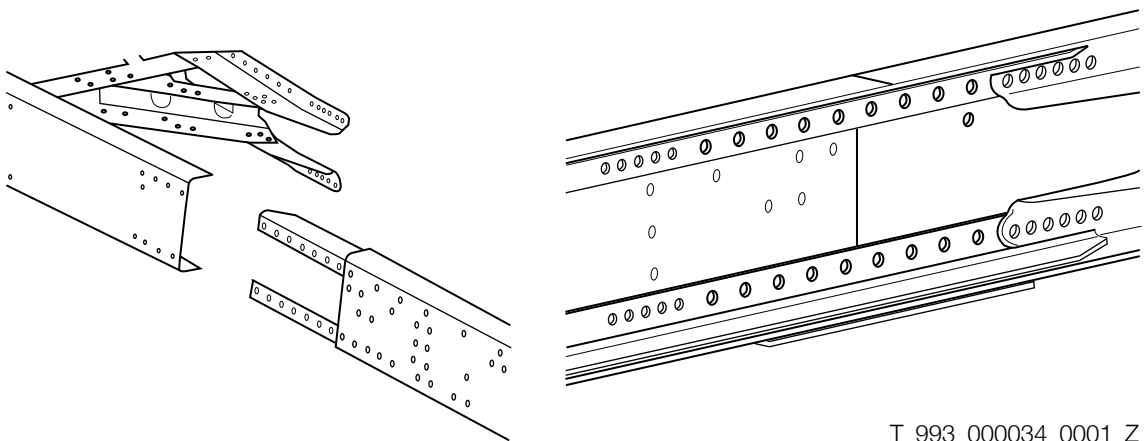
Fig. 20-III: Insert covering, outside and inside



T_993_000033_0001_Z

The joint between the frame and the insert seam may not coincide with a weld seam in the frame - a distance of 100 mm between seams must be observed.
 This is easy to achieve if during cutting of the frame the location of the frame-insert joint is already taken into account.

Fig. 21-III: Projecting inserts, outside and inside



T_993_000034_0001_Z

2.3.2 Modifying the frame overhang

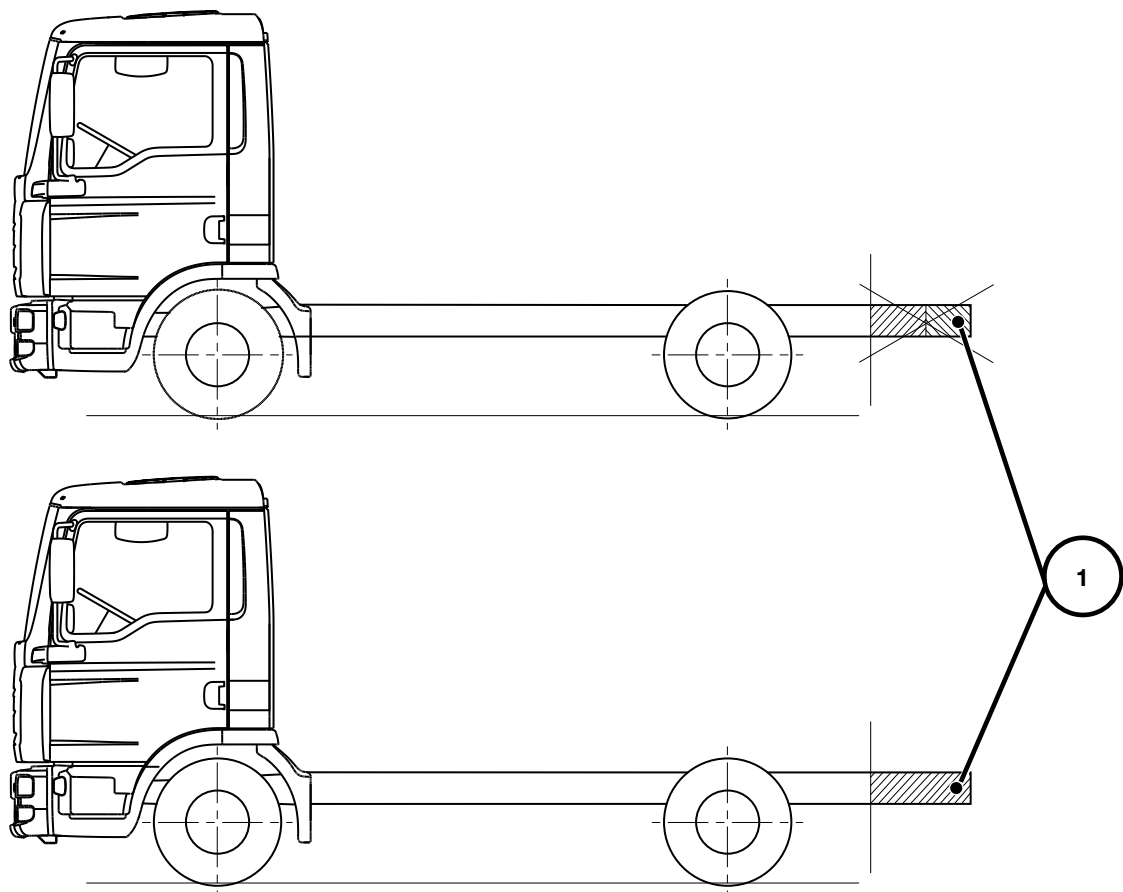
“Frame overhang modification” refers to any changes in length from the middle of the last rear axle to the frame end. As a basic principle it is possible to extend or shorten the overhang, provided the generally applicable national conditions for registration are met.

Modifications to the overhang can change the location of the center of gravity for payload and body as well as the resulting axle loads. Prior to commencing work, an axle-load calculation must be carried in order to determine whether the respective permissible axle load can be complied with (see Chapter V, Section 1.10 for an example of an axle-load calculation).

Frame overhang extension

Frame extensions are only permissible using material identical to that used for the original frame (see Chapter III, Section 4.2). Extensions must always be carried out on the frame end. Extensions consisting of several profile sections are not permitted (cf. Fig. 22-III).

Fig. 22-III: Extension of frame overhang



T_995_000023_0001_G

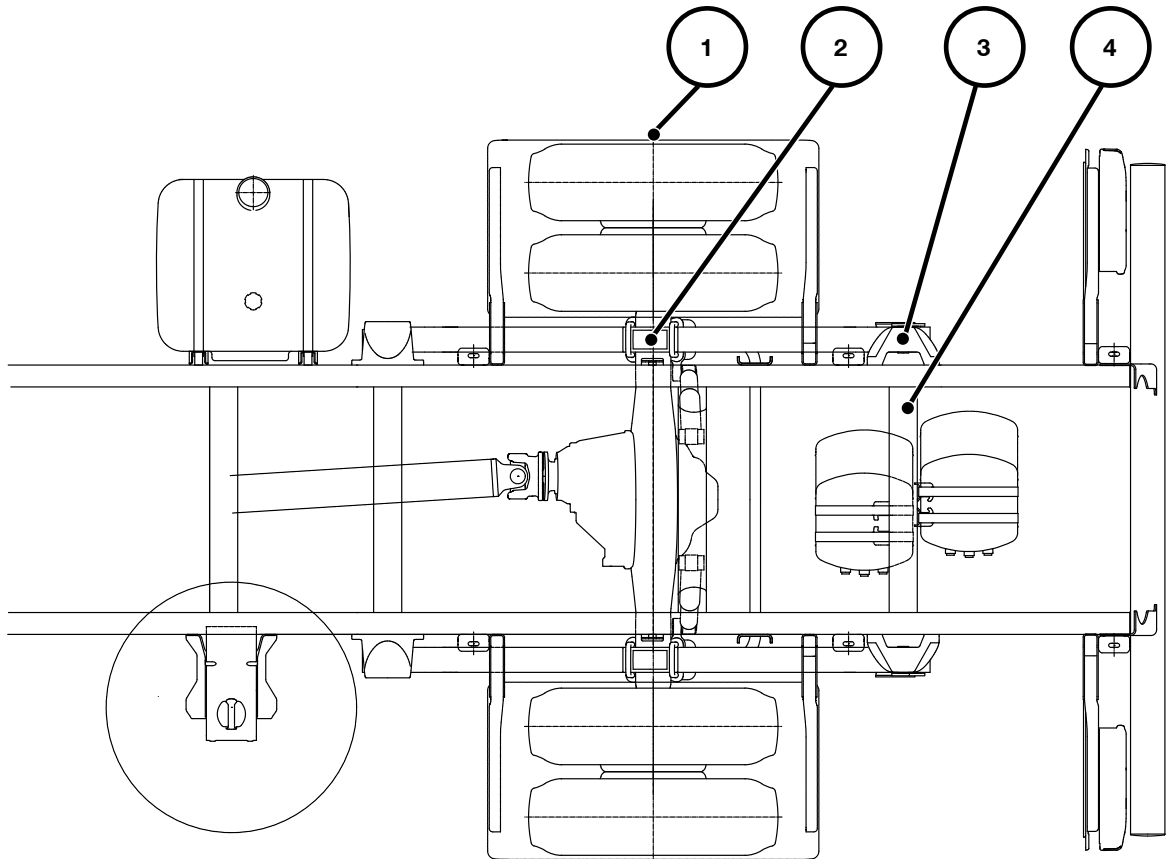
- 1) Frame extension

The specifications concerning welding on the frame (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, Chapter III, Section 1.3.2) must always be observed.

Frame overhang extensions may not be carried out the area of the rear-axle mounting and guide or the axle suspension (e.g. the air-spring-disc, leaf-spring-bearing and stabiliser mountings). The necessary minimum distance of 100 mm must be maintained here. Cross members located in this area may not be relocated but must be left where they are.

If the distance between any two cross members to the rear of the frame overhang extension is greater than 1200 mm ± 100 mm, a supplementary cross member must be provided.

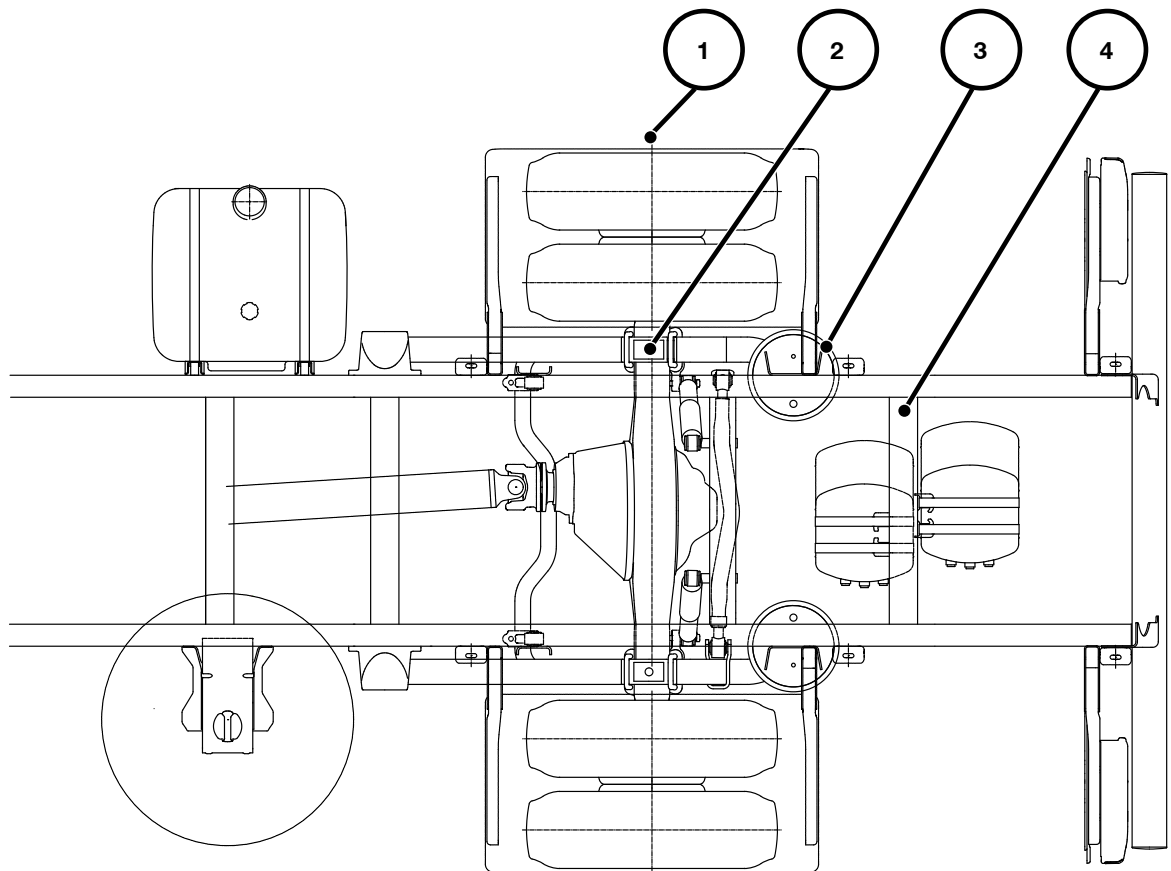
Fig. 23-III: Example of a leaf-sprung rear-axle unit with associated fastenings



T_994_000001_0001_Z

- 1) Center of rear axle
- 2) Axle mounting
- 3) Fastening of axle-suspension elements (leaf spring)
- 4) Frame side member

Fig. 24-III: Example of an air-sprung rear-axle unit with associated fastenings



T_994_000002_0001_Z

- 1) Center of rear axle
- 2) Axle mounting
- 3) Fastening of axle-suspension elements (air-spring-disc)
- 4) Frame side member

Important notice

On certain bodies it is sensible to use frame inserts in order to reinforce the modified overhang. For this reason, MAN recommends using frame inserts.

The dimensions of the frame inserts depend on the following criteria:

- Type of load
- Introduction of force
- Body design
- Body type
- Dimension of auxiliary frame

Correspondingly prepared cable harnesses for frame extensions are available from MAN.

A detailed description of the procedure for extending cable harnesses, including a list of all permissible item numbers can be found in Chapter III, Section 8.2. Notes on routing cable harnesses are to be observed.

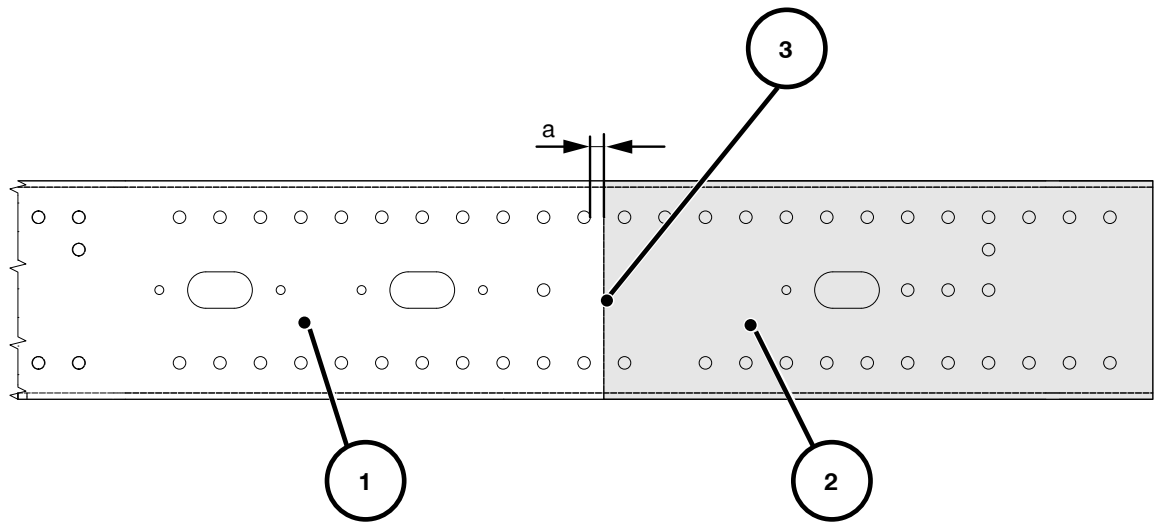
For extending and re-routing compressed-air lines, refer to Chapter III, Section 6.3.5 of the guidelines to fitting bodies.

Shortening the frame overhang

When a frame overhang is shortened, it is vital to adhere to the necessary minimum distance of 100 mm when cutting the frame side member in the area of the rear-axle mounting and guide, as well as in the area of the axle suspension (e.g. the air-spring-disc, leaf-spring and stabiliser mountings).

The cut must be so positioned that drill holes are not cut. If forces are introduced via drill holes at the frame end, it is mandatory to adhere to the necessary distance to the extreme fibre (Fig. 25-III Distance a).

Fig. 25-III: Distance to extreme fibre of frame end



T_993_000035_0001_Z

- a Distance to extreme fibre
- 1) Frame side member
- 2) Frame overhang to be removed
- 3) Frame cut

Any cross members in the area of the cut must be relocated so that they can be bolted to the frame side member again. The following applies:

Distance between cross members $\leq 1200 \text{ mm} \pm 100 \text{ mm}$

Where a frame overhang has been shortened, the cable harness installed as standard remains in use. In such cases, Chapter III, Section 8.2 must be observed with regard to routing lines. Compressed-air lines may be shortened in accordance with Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.

Important notice

MAN recommends reinforcing frames by means of frame inserts (see also frame overhang extension).

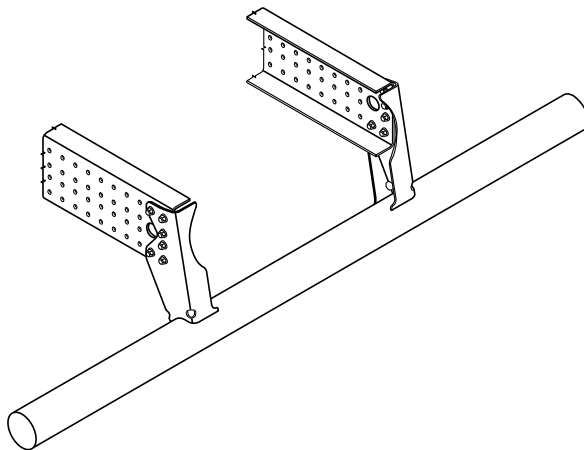
Use of final cross member

Frame overhangs shortened or extended in accordance with the above specifications (e.g. distance between cross members, length of overhang) do not require a final cross member when MAN underride protection is fitted, because this simultaneously functions as the final cross member (not on Type N48).

A final cross member is required:

- For operation with a trailer, also when ball-type couplings are in use (mounting of the socket)
- If a liftgate is fitted (because MAN underride protection is not fitted in this case)
- In the case of other rear loads or point loads (e.g. forklifts that are carried on the vehicle, loading crane mounted on the frame end).

Fig. 26-III: Frame end without final cross member



T_994_000003_0001_G

2.3.3 Modifying the wheel configuration

Modifying the wheel configuration means:

- fitting of additional axles,
- removal of axles,
- Converting non-steered axles to steered axles
- Converting steered axles to non-steered axles

Important notice

Modifying the wheel configuration is forbidden. These conversions are carried out exclusively by MAN and its qualified conversion suppliers ("qUL"). Manufacturer's confirmation is necessary in every case.

2.3.4 Changing the tyre type

Every change of tyre type requires manufacturer's confirmation. Notes on applying for manufacturer's confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2

The conversion data file associated with changes to the tyre type will, if required, be provided together with the confirmation.

Technical limit values with regard to changing the tyre type can be found in Chapter I, Section 2.2.10

The notes in Chapter IV "Body" relating to anti-skid chains, clearance and the load ratings of tyres and rims must be observed.

2.3.5 Changing the vehicle type and interchangeable operation as semitrailer tractor/truck

Conversion of a truck into a semitrailer tractor or of a semitrailer tractor into a truck or using the same vehicle alternatively as a semitrailer tractor or truck requires manufacturer's confirmation from MAN.

Notes on applying for manufacturer's confirmation can be found in Chapter I, Section 5.2 "Manufacturer's confirmation".

Conversion of a semitrailer tractor to a truck or vice versa requires modification of the vehicle's parameterisation. The conversion data file associated with the chassis modification will be provided together with the confirmation.

Depending on the selected vehicle (vehicle model), the change of vehicle type as well as interchangeable operation may possibly require conversion measures to be taken in the area of the axle guide (e.g. springs, shock absorbers, stabilisers) and the brakes.

The scope of such conversion measure depends on the selected vehicle model and the desired utilisation.

Therefore, in the case of new-build vehicles to be used as both semitrailer tractors and trucks, it must be determined beforehand whether a truck chassis or a semitrailer tractor is to be used.

The conversion of a TGL or TGM chassis to a semitrailer tractor may only be carried out by MAN Truck & Bus AG or its qualified conversion suppliers („qUL“).

2.3.6 Retrofitting additional units, attachments and accessories

If units, attachments or accessories are to be retrofitted to the vehicle, they must be harmonised with MAN when the measures are in the planning phase (for address see “Publisher” above).

Full and verifiable documentation enabling a decision to be taken on the feasibility of the planned measures must be submitted.

The background to this is that retrofitting usually involves intervention in the control unit’s CAN. This also involves additions to the programming of a vehicle’s software. Retrofitted systems may under certain circumstances not be assimilated into the vehicle’s own Trucknology® “Time maintenance system” or “Flexible maintenance system”.

For this reason, in the case of retrofitted original parts, the same maintenance convenience will not necessarily result as in a first-time configuration.

Subsequent modification or expansion of the vehicle parameterisation can only be carried out with the help of the MAN Service outlet responsible and MAN approval of the programs.

Warning notice

Under no circumstances does MAN accept design responsibility or responsibility for the consequences of retrofits that it has not approved. The stipulations stated in these guidelines and in approvals must be adhered to. Approvals, reports and certification produced by third parties (e.g. test institutes) do not automatically mean the issue of approval by MAN.

MAN may refuse approval even though third parties have issued appropriate clearance. Unless otherwise agreed, approval only refers to the actual installation of the equipment. Approval does not mean that MAN has checked the entire system with regard to strength, vehicle handling etc., and has accepted responsibility for warranty of products. This responsibility is borne by the executing company. The retrofitting of subassemblies and the like can alter the technical data of a vehicle. The respective equipment manufacturer and/or the dealer/importer is responsible for determining and issuing this new data.

2.4 Homologated vehicle components / vehicle components relevant to safety

This section provides an overview of the most important homologated components of the vehicle and/or components of the vehicle relevant to safety. They may not be changed without permission from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

If any changes are made, the affected parts must be accepted again by a technical inspectorate. The MAN warranty, however, is invalidated.

To be admissible for registration, vehicles must be configured in such a manner that they comply with the respective country-specific laws. In order to ensure this in series production, parts relevant to registration are homologated. Because of this, individual acceptances are no longer necessary.

Some of these components are listed below.

- Exhaust silencer
- Axles and running gear
- ADR components
- Trailer bracket and coupling
- Driveline and wheels
- Brake system
- Electrical components
- Cab
- Front cross member
- Camera system
- Fuel tank with mounting, hose and pump
- Steering system
- Lighting equipment
- Air intake
- Engine with engine attachments
- Register coupling
- Fifth-wheel coupling
- Final cross member for trailer coupling
- Underride protection, rear and side
- Adjuster mechanism

Further information concerning the homologation or relevance to safety of parts not listed above can be requested from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

3.0 Cab

3.1 General

Modifications to the cab's structure (e.g. incisions/cut-outs, changes to the support structure including the seats and seat fastenings, cab extensions, lowering of the roof) as well as modifications to the cab mountings and tilting mechanism are to be avoided wherever possible.

Warning notice

If modifications to the cab are nevertheless necessary for technical reasons relevant to the body, they must be harmonised with MAN during the planning phase (for address see "Publisher" above).

Modifications to the cab may only be carried out by MAN or its qualified conversion suppliers ("qUL").

The generally applicable national conditions for registration must be met in every case.

3.2 Cabs

This section provides an overview of cabs including technical data for all the model ranges. The tabular overviews provide information on designation, dimensions and a schematic representation for identification purposes.

TGL/TGM chassis are supplied with the following cab variants:

Table 02-III: TGL/TGM cabs

Designation		Dimensions*		
Name	Technical designation	Length	Width	Height (from Cab-0)
C	With D0836 (6-cyl.): Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L10S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R10S	1.620	2.240	1.664
	With D0834 (4-cyl.): Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L12S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R12S			
L	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L32S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R32S	2.280	2.240	1.737
LX	Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L37S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R37S	2.280	2.240	2.035
DK	With D0834 (4-cyl.): Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L58S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R58S	2.786	2.240	1.737
	With D0836 (6-cyl.): Left-hand drive vehicle: F99L57S Right-hand drive vehicle: F99R57S			

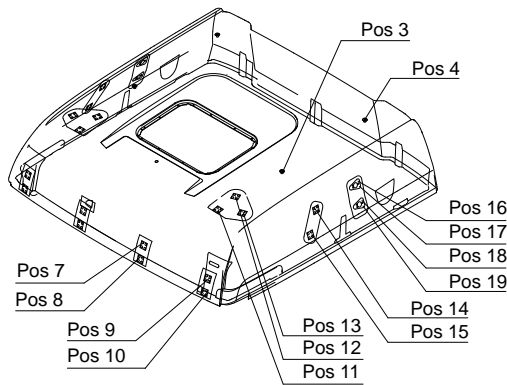
*) Cab dimensions without added on parts such as wings, skirts, mirrors, spoiler, etc.

3.3 Spoilers, roof extensions, roofwalk

The retrofitting of a roof spoiler or aero package available ex works is possible. Genuine MAN spoilers and aerodynamics kits for retrofitting can be obtained from the Spare-parts Service. Drawings can be found in MANTED under "Cabs". Only the proper attachment points may be used when retrofitting components to the cab roof.

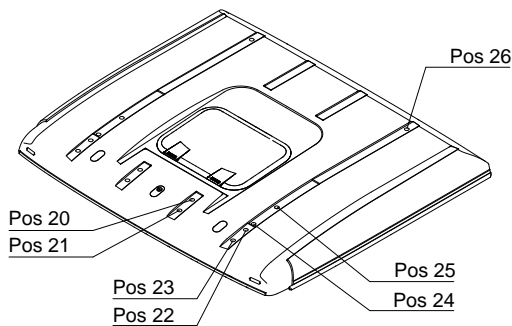
Fastenings on cab roofs

Fig. 27-III: LX cab (L/R37)



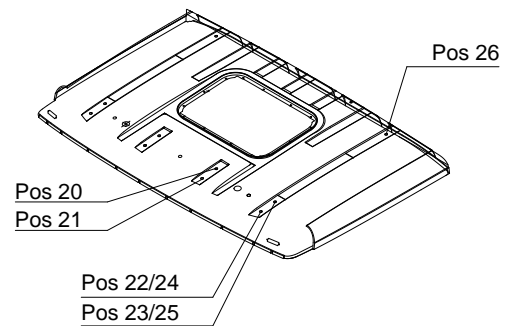
T_629_000001_0001_G

Fig. 28-III: L cab (L/R32)



T_629_000002_0001_G

Fig. 29-III: C cab (L/R 10-12)



T_629_000003_0001_G

Table 03-III: Attachment points on cab roofs

	Position	Bolt / drill hole	Tightening torque
Roof spoiler with plastic high roof	3/3a 4/4a	M8	20 Nm
Roof spoiler with steel roof	24/24a 25/25a 26/26a	M8	20 Nm
Sunblind with steel roof	20/20a 21/21a 22/22a 23/23a	M8	20 Nm
Sun blind with plastic high roof	7/7a 8/8a 9/9a 10/10a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm
Air horn with plastic high roof	14/14a 15/15a 16/16a 17/17a 18/18a 19/19a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm
Rotating beacons with plastic high roof	11/11a 12/12a 13/13a	St 6,3 / Ø 5,5 mm	10 Nm

- Drilling designation "a" is symmetric with $y = 0$
- Maximum load per bolt: 7.49 -12 t
- Maximum roof load: 30 kg
- Bolted connections over 3 offset points (not in one line)
- Center of gravity of roof extensions max. 200 mm above mounting level
- Drill holes in the plastic raised roof (laminated-in plates):
 - Drilling axis parallel to the surface
 - Drilling at an angle of ± 2 mm to the surface
 - Drilling depth 10 mm + 2 mm

Information on additional attachment for roofwalk
Table 04-III: Additional attachment for roofwalk

	Position	Bolt / drill hole	Tightening torque
Roofwalk on rear wall (all cabs)	1/1a 2/2a	M8 / Ø 11,2 mm	20 Nm

Fig. 30-III: Additional fastener for roofwalk


T_629_000008_0002_G

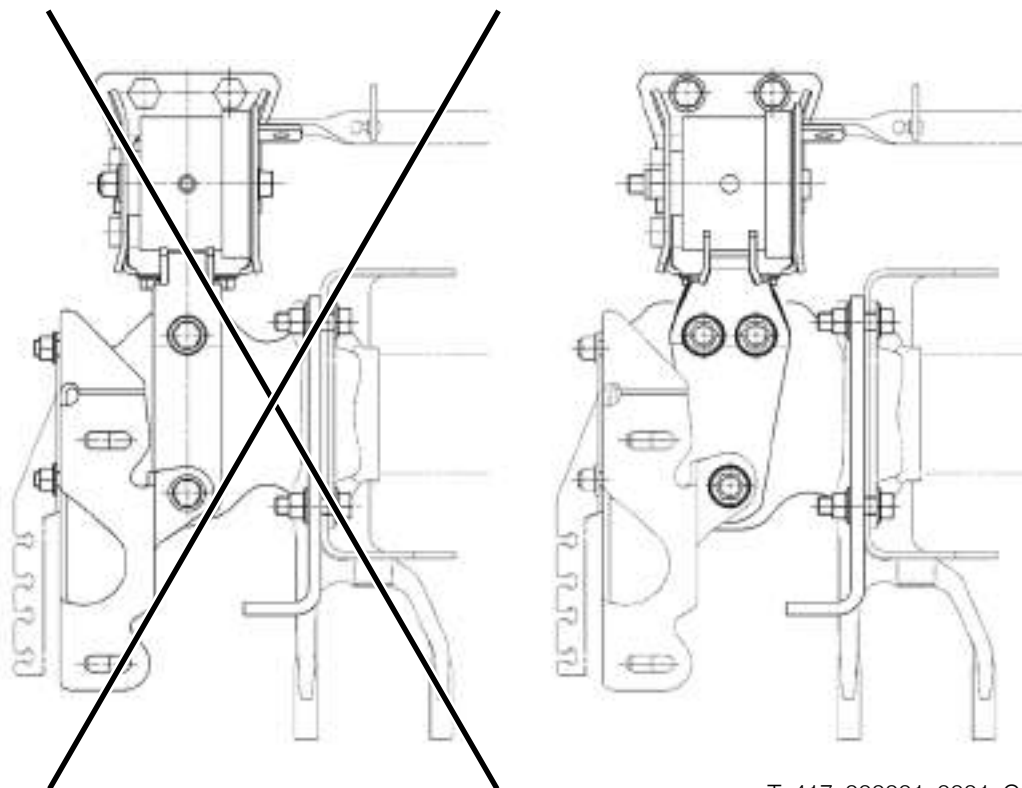
- Drilling designation „a“ is symmetric with $y = 0$
- A support for the roofwalk must be fitted to the rear wall
- All 4 attachment points 1/1a, 2/2a must be used
- The roofwalk must never be installed ahead of the rear edge of the roof hatch.
- Maximum weight of roofwalk: 30 kg
- Maximum load on roofwalk: 100 kg

3.4 Roof sleeper cabs

Roof sleeper cabs (Topsleepers) can be fitted when the following prerequisites are met:

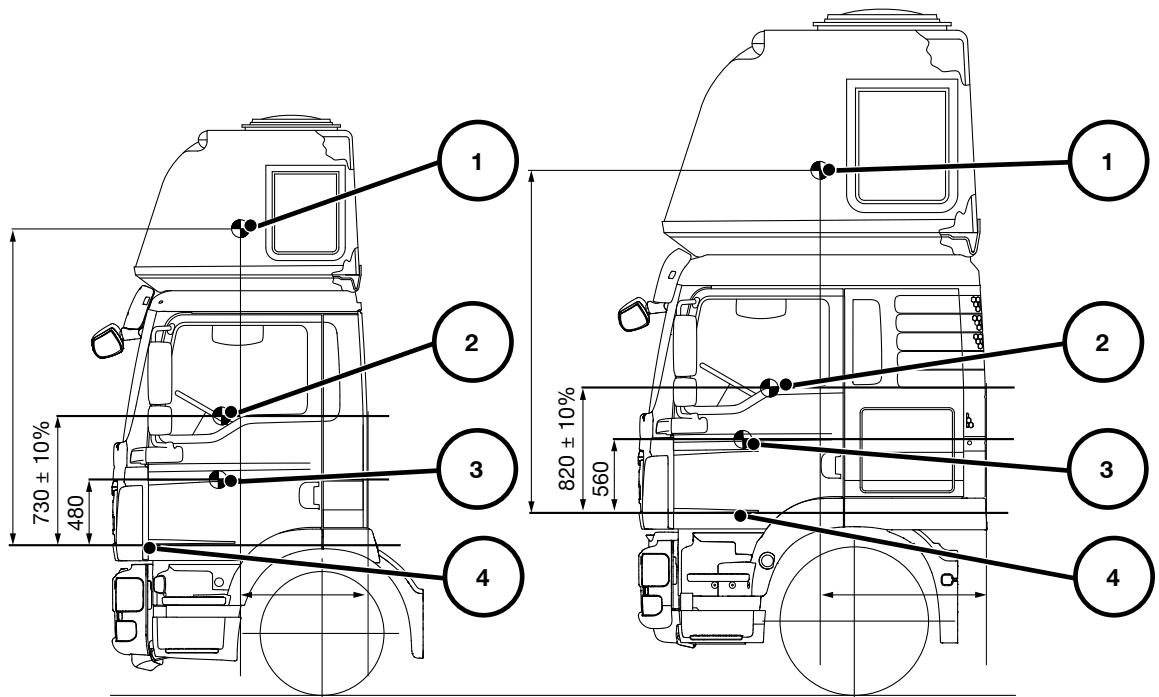
- Emission level Euro 6 or lower (exception: roof sleeper cab not permitted for Euro 6 with C cab), see Table 05-III
- If a roof sleeper cab is to be fitted to the TGL model range (model code number N01 – N15) with C cab (Compact) then it is necessary for the front mount bracket to be triple-bolted (production standard since January 2008), see Fig. 31-III).
- Body approval must be obtained from MAN. This is the responsibility of the manufacturer of the roof sleeper cab and not of the workshop fitting it (see Chapter III, Section 2.3.6).
- The manufacturer of the roof sleeper cab is responsible for compliance with regulations (in particular safety regulations, e.g. trade association guidelines), regulations and laws (e.g. GGVS/ADR).
- A suitable method of preventing the cab from closing by itself when it is tilted must be installed (e.g. by fitting a securing device).
- If the tilting process differs from that for the standard MAN cab, a simple but comprehensive operating manual must be drawn up.
- The antennas fitted on original MAN cab roofs must be properly relocated. This is intended to ensure good quality reception and transmission of electromagnetic radiation in accordance with the EMC Directive. Extension of the antenna cable is not permitted.
- When the cab has been fitted, the dimensions stated for the resulting cab center of gravity must be adhered to and verified (see Fig. 32-III)
- The maximum weights listed in Table 05-III must be adhered to.

Fig. 31-III: Double and triple bolting of mount bracket



T_417_000001_0001_G

Triple-bolting of the front mount bracket can be retrofitted. Installation also requires the combination retaining bracket and steering-gear mounting to be replaced. This modification must be carried out by a specialist workshop..

Fig. 32-III: Cab center of gravity with top sleeper


T_629_000009_0001_G

- 1) Topsleeper center of gravity
- 2) Resulting center of gravity
- 3) Cab center of gravity
- 4) Cab floor

Table 05-III: Roof sleeper cabs, maximum weights and required modifications to the cab mount

Series	Body permitted for		Cab	Max. additional mass with equipment	Modification of cab mount
	≤ Euro 5	Euro 6			
TGL	Yes	No	C	110 kg	L050-417050
	Yes	Yes	L	180 kg	(ex works rear cab mount with air suspension) front cab mount L050-417030
TGM	Yes	No	C	110 kg	Front and rear cab mount modified L050-417060
	Yes	Yes	L	180 kg	(ex works rear cab mount with air suspension) front cab mount modified: L050-417030

Modification of the cab mounts can be ordered from:

MAN Truck & Bus Deutschland GmbH
 Truck Modification Center (TMC)
 Otto-Hahn-Strasse 31
 54516 Wittlich
 E-Mail: trc@man.eu

3.5 Fastening of warning plates to the front flap

To avoid damage to the front flap while fastening the warning plates, the procedure must comply with Service Information (SI 288606). This is available from MAN workshops.

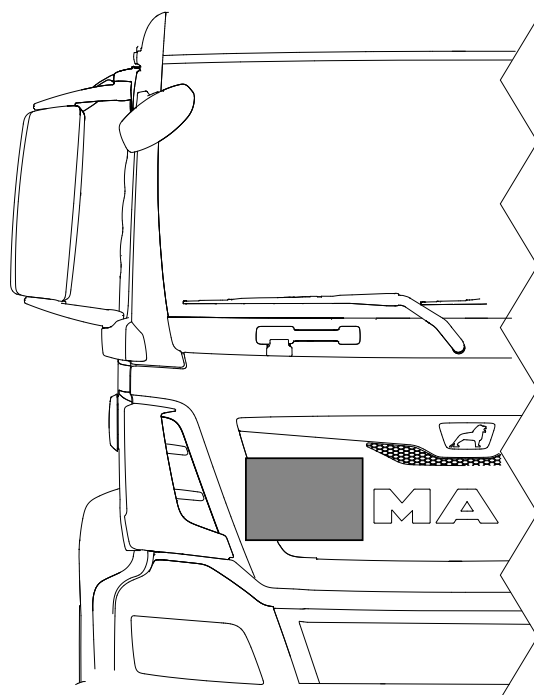
The location for fastening warning plates to the front cover is defined and released by MAN.

The following apply:

- The statutorily permitted vehicle width must not be exceeded.
- The supply of air to the radiator/engine must not be impaired.
- The connection must be adequately strong.
- Generally applicable guidelines concerning the transport of hazardous goods must be observed.

The description of the assembly procedure together with the necessary distances/clearances and the standard parts to be used can be found in Service Information (SI 288606)

Fig. 33-III: Schematic representation of the defined position for warning plates



T_639_000001_0001_G

4.0 Chassis frame

4.1 General

The frame forms the basis of the chassis. It accommodates the axles, the driveline with engine, gearbox and transfer case and carries the cab and bodywork. Modifications to the chassis frame must be carried out in accordance with the specifications set down in Chapter III, Section 2.3.

4.2 Frame materials

Modifications to the frame side members and cross members of the chassis are permitted only when the original frame material is used.

Table 06-III: Steel materials for MAN chassis frames

Material no.	Old material designation	Old standard	$\sigma_{0,2}$ N/mm ²	σ_B N/mm ²	New material designation	New standard	Profile nos.
1.0980	QStE420TM	SEW 092	≥ 420	480-620	S420MC	DIN EN 10149-2	5, 33, 35, 36, 37, 38, 39, 41, 42
1.0984	QStE500TM	SEW 092	≥ 500	550-700	S500MC	DIN EN 10149-2	31, 32, 34, 40, 46
			500	560-700	LNE500	NBR 6656:2008	43, 45

The assignment of model-range-specific frame profiles (profile numbers), their material parameters and the model-related allocation of frame profiles can be found in Chapter III, Section 4.3.

4.3 Frame profiles

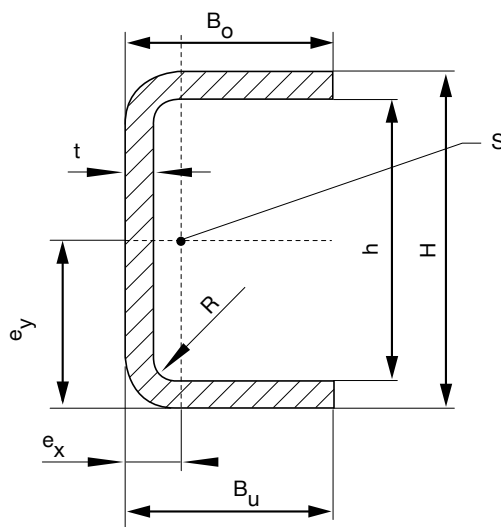
Precise data on the standard model-related allocation of frame side members are available via www.manted.de (registration required).

The frame side member profile that is being used is described in up-to-date and binding form by:

- the chassis drawing
- the technical data sheet for the corresponding vehicle, see “Chassis” on www.manted.de.

The following tables show the series-specific profile data and type classification for the frame side members.

Fig. 34-III: Profile data of frame side members



T_411_000001_0001_G

S Surface center of gravity

Table 07-III: Profile data for frame side members TGL/TGM

No	H	h	B _o	B _u	t	R	G	σ _{0,2}	σ _B	A	e _x	e _y	I _x	W _{x1}	W _{x2}	I _y	W _{y1}	W _{y2}
	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	mm	kg/m	N/mm ²	N/mm ²	mm ²	mm	mm	cm ⁴	cm ³	cm ³	cm ⁴	cm ³	cm ³
5	220	208	70	70	6	10	16	420	480..620	2021	16	110	1332	121	121	85	53	16
35	220	212	70	70	4	10	11	420	480..620	1367	16	110	921	84	84	59	37	11
36	220	211	70	70	4,5	10	12	420	480..620	1532	16	110	1026	93	93	65	41	12
37	220	206	70	70	7	10	18	420	480..620	2341	17	110	1526	139	139	97	57	18
38	220	204	70	70	8	10	21	420	480..620	2656	17	110	1712	156	156	108	64	20
39	270	256	70	70	7	10	21	420	480..620	2691	15	135	2528	187	187	102	68	19
40	270	256	70	70	7	10	21	500	550..700	2691	15	135	2528	187	187	102	68	19
41	270	254	70	70	8	10	24	420	480..620	3056	15	135	2844	211	211	114	76	21
46	270	254	70	70	8	10	24	500	550..700	3056	15	135	2842	211	211	114	76	21

5.0 Frame attachments

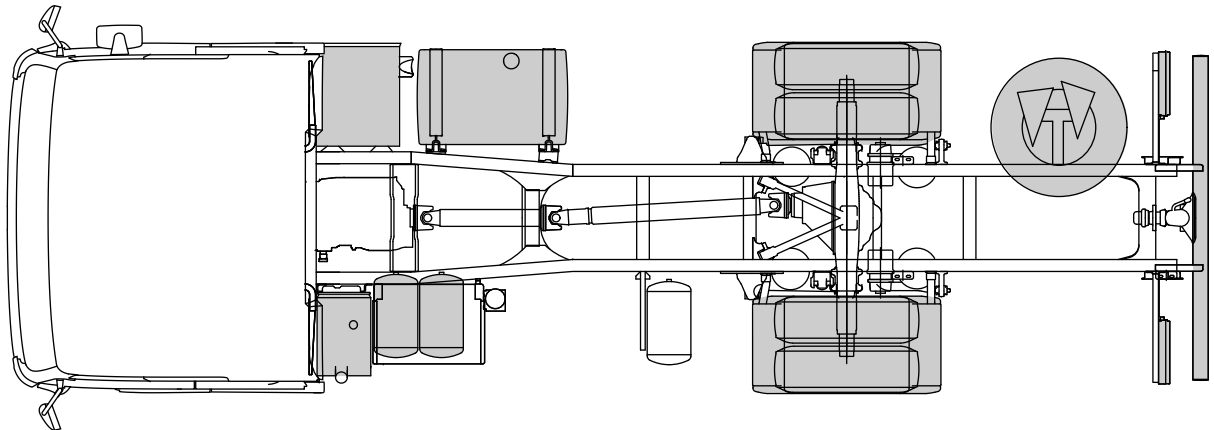
5.1 General

Frame attachments are parts whose attachment points are located on the frame.

These include, for example:

- Fuel and AdBlue tank
- Side underride protection
- Underride protection
- Battery box
- Spare wheel
- Exhaust silencer
- Mudguard

Fig. 35-III: Example for frame attachments



T_996_000018_0001_G

5.2 Front underride protection

Motor vehicles used for the transport of goods that have at least four wheels and a maximum permissible mass of over 3.5 t must be fitted with front underride protection that is approved in accordance with Directive 2000/40/EC.

This shall not apply to:

- Offroad vehicles
- vehicles whose application is not compatible with the regulations for front underride protection.

The following criteria must be met in order to obtain registration as an off-road vehicle:

- At least 50% of the wheels are driven.
- A differential lock or ASR is fitted.
- Gradeability of the individual vehicle $\geq 25\%$
- Plus at least four of the following requirements:
 - Approach angle $\geq 25^\circ$
 - Departure angle $\geq 25^\circ$
 - Ramp angle $\geq 25^\circ$
 - Ground clearance beneath the front axles is at least 250 mm.
 - Ground clearance beneath the rear axles is at least 250 mm.
 - Ground clearance between the axles is at least 300 mm.

Vehicles that do not meet the criteria for an off-road vehicle are fitted with FUP that complies with the requirements of Directive 2000/40/EC.

All-wheel-drive vehicles (wheel configurations e.g. 4x4, 6x4-4, 6x6, 8x6 and 8x8) and vehicles that meet the off-road criteria can be registered as off-road vehicles and are therefore not fitted with front underride protection at the factory.

If it is not possible to locate bodies or attachments (e.g. outriggers, tool boxes) such that the above stated criteria are not violated then the vehicle must be retrofitted with front underride protection, which is available from the MAN spare parts organisation.

Responsibility for this lies with the body builder. MAN is not liable for any costs arising from the retrofitting of front underride protection to vehicles that were delivered as off-road vehicles.

All TGL 4x2, TGM 4x2, 6x2 and 6x4 vehicles are fitted with FUP that complies with the requirements of Directive 2000/40/EC.

Exception

In the case of vehicles with a permissible gross mass of ≤ 7.5 t, only the ground clearance of ≤ 400 mm (ground to lower edge of bumper) has to be complied with. The ground clearance is complied with as standard, so that FUP is optional on vehicles of ≤ 7.5 t. If the load is increased to over 7.5 t, FUP has to be retrofitted!

Important notice

Underride protection equipment may not be modified (e.g. by welding, drilling or modification of brackets). Non-compliance voids type approval.

5.3 Side underride protection

“Lateral protection device(s) (are) designed to offer effective protection to unprotected road users against the risk of falling under the sides of the vehicle and being caught under the wheels” (excerpt from ECE-R73). Trucks, tractor units and their trailers with a permissible gross weight of > 3.5 t must be fitted with side underride protection.

Exceptions applicable to the truck sector are as follows:

- Semitrailer tractor units (not semitrailers)
- Vehicles built for special purposes that are incompatible with the fitting of side underride protection.

The following apply in Germany:

- The respective national approval authority can be applied to for certificates of exemption to cover transfer trips of chassis.
- In this connection, “special vehicles” mainly means vehicles with side tipper. This only applies to vehicles with side tippers and a body inside length of less than 7,500 mm. Neither vehicles for combined transport nor off-road vehicles are exempt from the mandatory requirement for fitting side underride protection.

The corresponding national regulations must be observed when determining whether or not side underride protection has to be fitted.

Side underride protection for chassis can be delivered ex-works. Body builders who retrofit side underride protection can procure MAN profiles, profile supports and components for assembly from the Spare-parts Service.

Important notice

The company installing or modifying side underride protection is responsible for compliance with national regulations (regulated by Directive ECE-R73 01, in Germany by §32c StVZO (Road Traffic Licensing Regulations)).

It is not permissible to attach brake, air or hydraulic pipes to side underride protection. There may be no sharp edges or burrs; the rounding-off radius for all parts cut to size by the body builder must be at least 2.5 mm; Rounded bolts and rivets may project by a maximum of 10 mm. If the vehicle is fitted with different tyres or different springs, the height of the SUP must be checked and, if necessary, corrected. If there are several components in a row (battery box, tool box) that serve as a form of SUP, a maximum distance of 25 mm is permissible but the rear component may not project laterally outwards above the front one.

If it is necessary for the body builder to modify MAN's original profile support for the SUP, then the relationship between the span "l" and projection "a" shall apply as illustrated in the following diagram (Fig. 37-III). If, according to expert opinion, the permitted dimensions are exceeded then the body builder must arrange for strength testing to be carried out. The illustrations are only intended to clarify the dimensions for which the MAN side underride protection meets strength requirements.

Note:

There is no side underride protection ex works for the N16, N26 and N48 models. In these cases, the body builder must fit side underride protection in accordance with the above-mentioned regulations.

Fig. 36-III: Side underride protection on the TGL/TGM

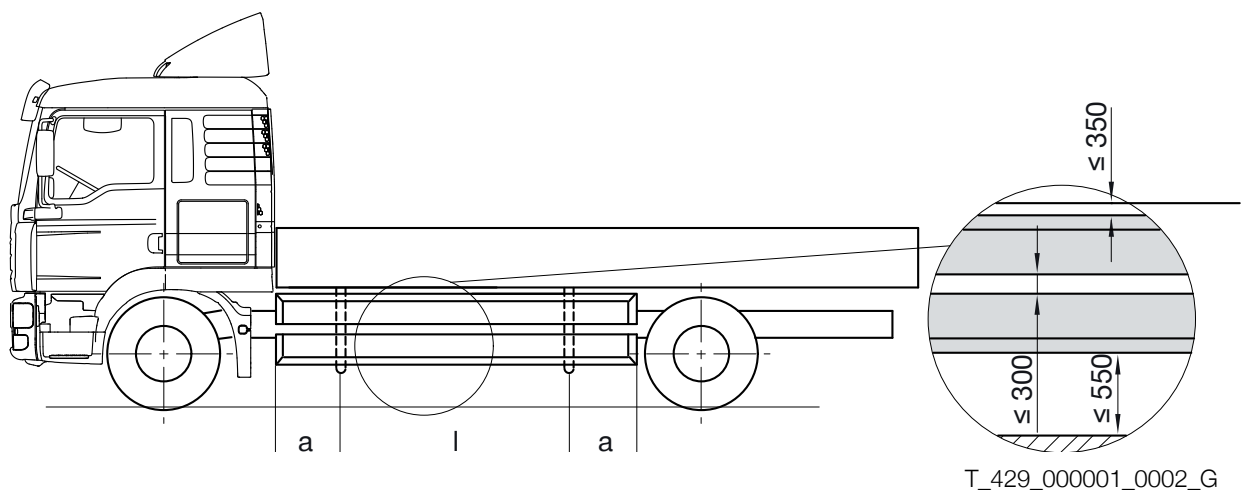
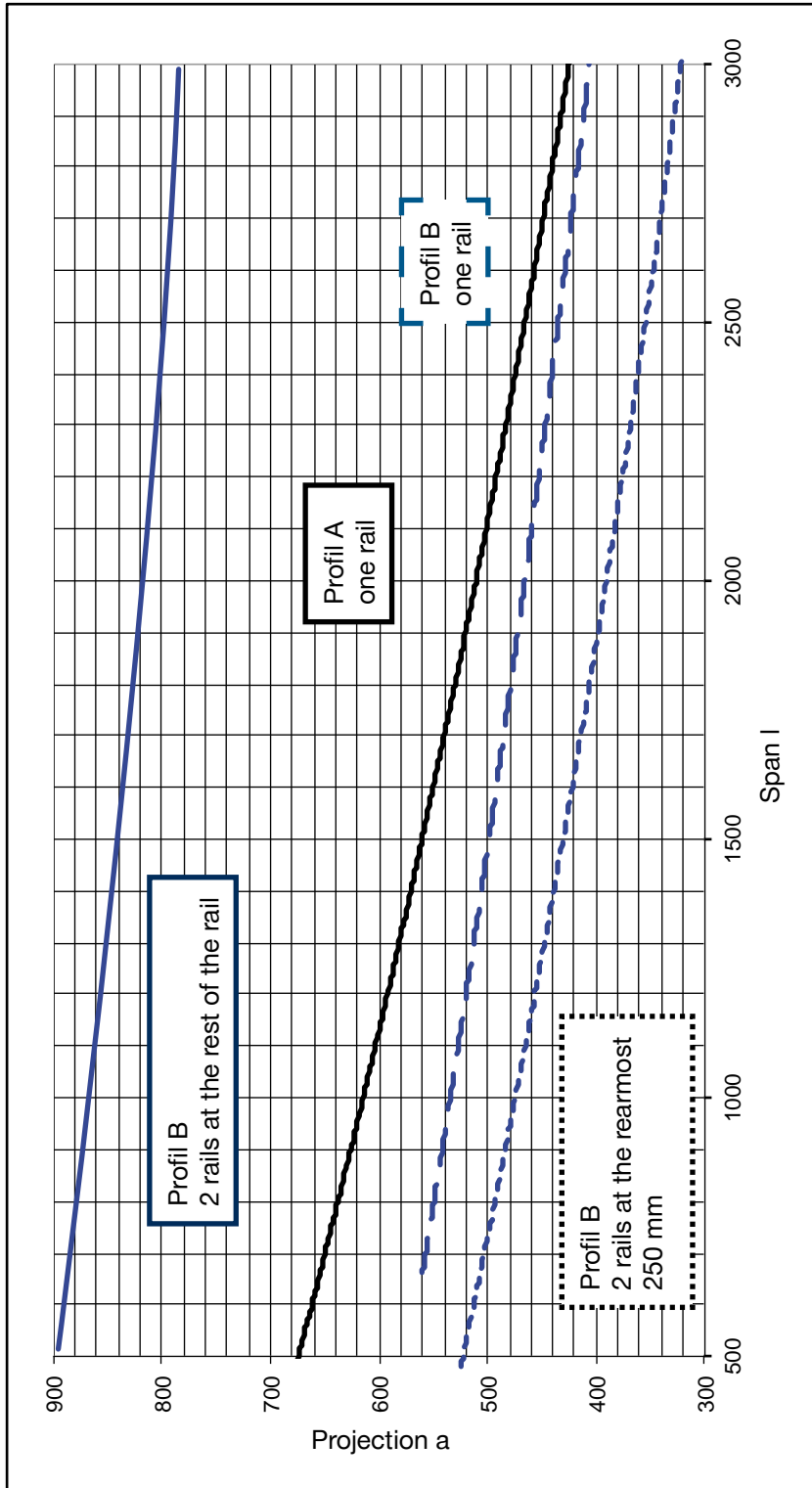


Fig. 37-III: Graph for ascertaining span and projection for the TGL/TGM



T_429_000003_0001_D

The following list shows which profile type (design) is used for which vehicles ex works.

For vehicles of model range TGL

- in exhaust-emission class Euro 5 and lower: Version B, one side guard
- in exhaust-emission class Euro 6: Version A

For vehicles of model range TGM

- in exhaust-emission class Euro 6 or lower and rim size > 19.5": Version B, two side guards
- in exhaust-emission class Euro 5 or lower and rim size ≤ 19.5": Version B, one side guard
- in exhaust-emission class Euro 6 and rim size ≤ 19.5": Version A

The profiles are shown below.

Fig. 38-III: Version A

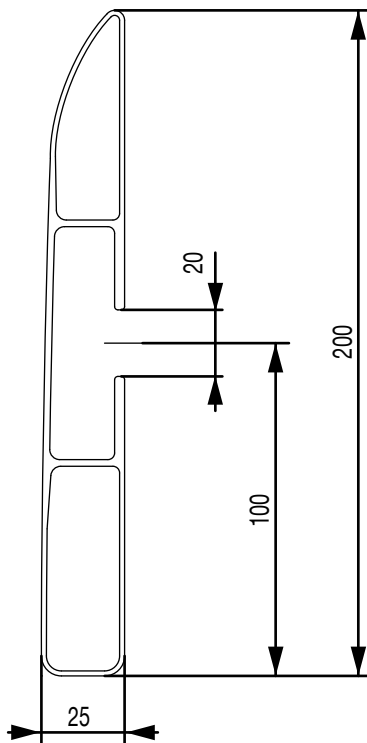
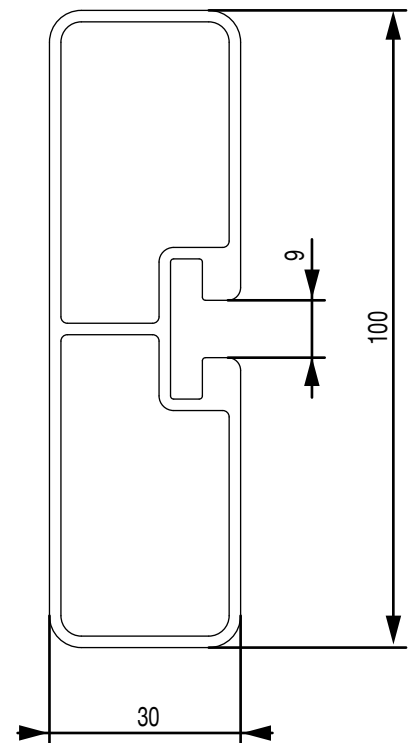


Fig. 39-III: Version B



T_429_000005_0001_G

5.4 Rear underride protection

Chassis of the TGL and TGM model ranges are delivered ex works with different variants of MAN's rear underride protection. The respective variant is fitted by MAN depending upon the vehicle's application (see Table 08-III).

MAN's underride protection on the TGL/TGM is designed such that it also performs the function of the final cross member on vehicles not fitted with a trailer coupling (see also Fig. 40-III). Optionally, rear underride protection can be omitted and the chassis would in such cases be fitted with a final cross member with or without a hole pattern for a trailer coupling (depending upon equipment fitted).

In this case, the bodybuilder is responsible for fitting a suitable rear underride protection approved in accordance with the regulations. For retrofitted rear underride guards, e.g. following shortening of the frame, the bodybuilder/converter must ensure and verify that the regulations have been adhered to because the dimensions are dependent upon the superstructure and can only be determined once the vehicle including the superstructure has been fully completed. MAN underride protection devices are type-approved in accordance with Directive 70/221/EEC as last amended by 2006/20/EU.

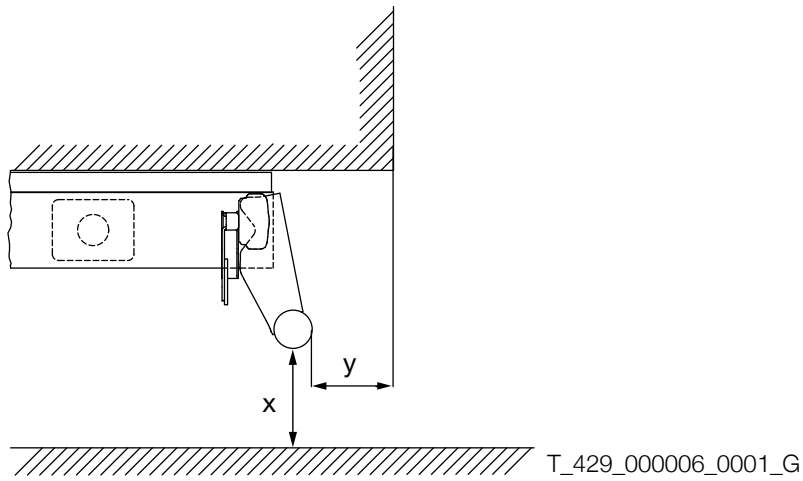
When a bodybuilder/converter fits an MAN underride protection device, it must be ensured that only MAN Verbus-Ripp bolts with shaft are used for making the bolted connection between the bracket and the frame and that these are tightened on the nut side to a torque in accordance with MAN Standard M3059 (140 Nm for M12x1.5 threads).

Table 08-III: Underride protection variants and positions see Fig. 40-III)

Fitting item no.	Type	Use	Y	X*
81.41660-8170	TGL		384 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8186	TGL	with trailer bracket when a ball-type coupling is fitted	386 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8189	TGM	N16 19.5" wheels	379 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8191	TGM	N26 19.5" wheels	370 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8192	TGM	4x4 13 t BL N34, N36	376 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8195	TGM	4x4 13 t BL N34, N36 only with single tyres in sizes from 295/80R22.5" to 305/70R22.5"	376 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8204	TGM	4x2 and 6x2-4 22.5" wheels	359 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8205	TGM	4x2 22.5" wheels crane tipper	364 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8206	TGM	4x4 18-t crane tipper all-wheel drive	346 mm	550 mm
81.41660-8207	TGM	4x4 18 t/13 t BB	346 mm	550 mm

* maximum permissible distance as per Directive 70/221/EEC

Fig. 40-III: Dimensional specifications for underride protection



The following dimensions must be observed.

x = vertical distance from lower edge of underride protection to the road surface for an unladen vehicle

y = horizontal distance from rear edge of underride protection to rear edge of body

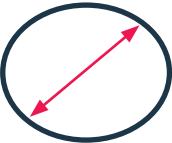
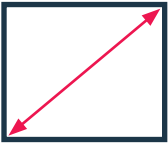


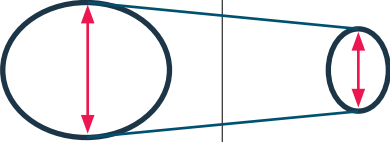

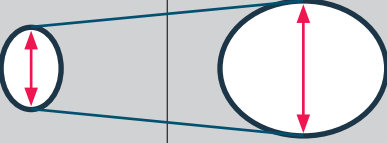
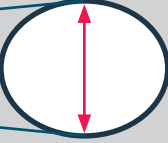
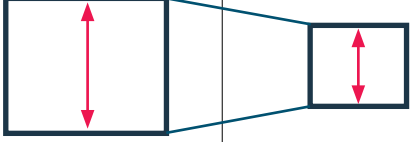

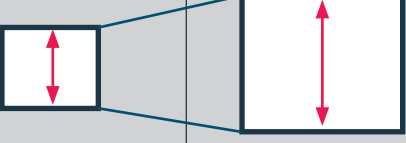
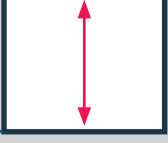
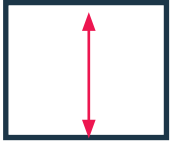
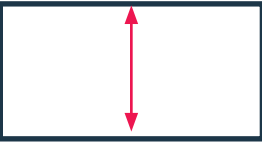
Type-approved underride protection devices must never be modified (e.g. by making changes to weld seams, drill holes, brackets) because this will invalidate certification/type approval!

5.5 Fuel tanks

As far as space permits, fuel tanks can be moved and auxiliary ones installed. With large volumes, ensure an equal distribution of load on the wheels, as far as possible (see Chapter III-Chassis Section 2.2.7 Wheel load difference).

If the tank shape has changed, the tank pick-up must be replaced and in certain cases the vehicle must be parameterised again by a MAN service outlet.

The following overview applies:

OLD Tank profile	NEW Tank profile	Exchange tank pick-up necessary?	Parametrisation necessary	Note
		Yes	Yes	change of cross section
		Yes	Yes	change of cross section
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		Yes	No	tank filling height
		No	No	none tank filling height

For special fuel tank shapes, contact the manufacturer of the fuel tank.

If larger or auxiliary fuel tanks are fitted after delivery from the factory, then the additional tank volume will be subject to a mineral oil/fuel/energy tax by the territory into which it is being imported.

This regulation applies to modifications carried out before the vehicle was registered in the customer's name (e.g. at the body builder) and to retrofits carried out once the vehicle has already been registered in the end customer's name. Customers must be informed of this issue.

Fuel can only be carried tax-free in "main tanks" (and in reserve tanks up to a total volume of 20 litres). Main tanks are the fuel tanks with which the vehicle was delivered, not those which were fitted afterwards by a body builder or workshop, for example.

According to the ADR directive, the maximum permissible total volume may not exceed 1500 l. Country-specific ADR directives must be observed.

Country-specific guidelines must be observed in the event of modifications.

The description of the procedure for the first fuelling of twin or multi-tank systems can be found in the applicable vehicle operating instructions or service information (SI 545200).

Information on use in mining:

Corrosion damage can occur on vehicles with aluminium fuel tanks which are used in coal mining or for coal transport.

Here, contact corrosion occurs between the elements aluminium and carbon.

MAN recommends selecting steel tanks when configuring vehicles for coal mining applications.

If no steel tanks are available in the desired size, then the tank system must be checked regularly.

Another option is to have the fuel tank professionally painted; regular checks are still recommended, however.

5.5.1 Mounting fuel tanks

Various fuel tank versions are offered ex works for the different series.

The following points must be observed when fuel tanks are mounted on the frame:

- MAN recommends using original MAN fuel tanks, tank supports and fixing elements. These can be obtained from the MAN Spare Parts Service.
- The weight of the tank should be borne equally by the tank supports.
- If possible, tank supports are to be mounted on the chassis frame close to cross members.
- Ensure that the attachment points for the tank support in the chassis frame have the greatest possible vertical spacing.
- For strength and stability reasons, clamping straps must be placed over the baffles of the fuel tank.
- The distance from the centre of the tank support to the centre of the baffle must not exceed 200 mm for tank volumes of up to 400 l. The distance from the centre of the tank support to the centre of the baffle for greater volumes (> 400 l) must not exceed 150 mm.
- Individual fuel tanks of up to 600 l are fixed to the vehicle frame by two tank supports and clamping straps. Depending on the application, however, three tank supports may already be required.
- For 600 l and larger, fuel tanks are fixed to the vehicle frame by three tank supports and clamping straps.
- The fuel tanks are fixed to the vehicle frame by tank support brackets. Between the tank supports and tank shell and between the clamping straps and tank shell, underlays must be added in accordance with MAN standards M3306-2 and M3306-1 respectively in order to ensure even, slip-free transmission of force from the clamping straps and tank supports to the tank shell. Absolutely no deformation of the fuel tank may be allowed to occur.

Body builders can obtain the mentioned MAN works standards via www.ptd.man.eu (registration required).

5.5.2 Modifications to fuel lines

Environmental note

Collect any remaining fuel that emerges with a suitable container.

Country-specific disposal provisions must be observed.

Important notice

The ingress of dirt into fuel lines must be prevented at all costs! A risk of damage to the fuel system exists.

Please note the stipulations in the repair manuals of MAN Truck & Bus AG on the MAN After Sales Portal (ASP*): www.asp.mantruckandbus.com. Registration is required.

If fuel tanks have to be moved during assembly or conversion work, then the fuel lines must be adapted to the new conditions.

To ensure that lines are laid correctly, the standards and the specifications in the installation drawings defining the lines and their fixing elements must always be observed.

The lines must be laid in accordance with the following MAN standards:

Table 09-III: MAN standards

PA lines	M 3319 M 3230-1 MAN 318 SAE J 2260
Steel pipes	M 3005-1 M 3360 M 3512 DIN ISO 8535-1
Hose lines	M 3114 M 3243 MAN 327 DIN 73379

MAN works standards can be purchased via the MAN portal for technical documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

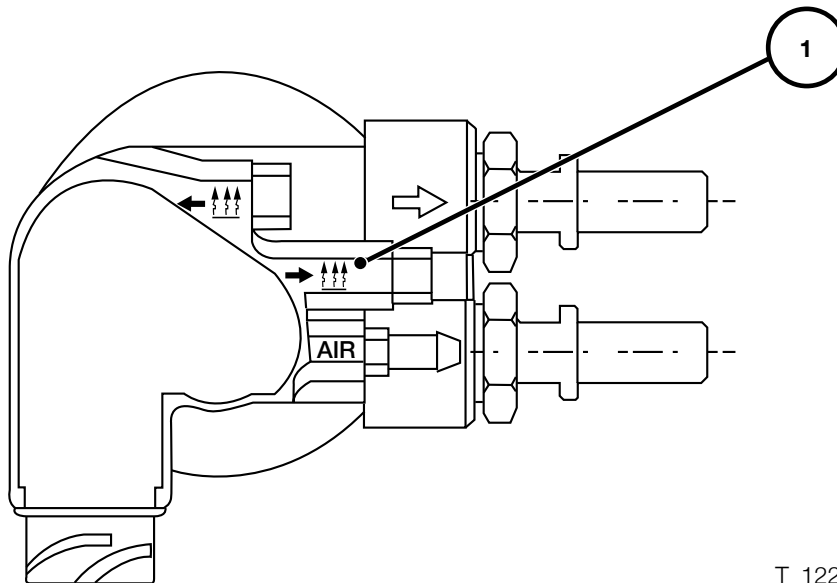
As a rule, the following requirements must be met when modifications are made to fuel lines:

Table 10-III: Material specifications

	Fuel lines for engine	Fuel lines for auxiliary heaters
Material	according to DIN73378	
Diameter	12x1,5	Suction line 4x1 Pressure line 4x1.25
Plug/Connector	81.98181-6404	Hose M3243-3.5X3-P1 (50 mm or 85 mm long) Hose clamp 81.97440-0248
	51.98181-0006	
	81.12510-0029	
	81.98181-6418	
Attachment	using cable tie 81.97401-0631 or similar	
Distance between individual attachment points	max. 500 mm	
Lay in accordance with	M3317	

- When the tank is relocated, it must be ensured that the tank ventilation is protected against water and kept free of dust. The tank ventilation hose must not be shortened.
- Fuel tapping is permitted only at the tank supply unit, see Pos. 1, Fig. 41-III.

Fig. 41-III: Tank supply unit



T_122_000002_0001_G

- 1) Fuel tapping at tank supply unit

MAN genuine spare parts are available via the MAN service outlet.

If the position of the tank is changed, then the following guidelines must be observed:

Table 11-III: Guidelines

Change in tank position	Subject	Specification	Note
Move tank to other side of vehicle with respect to the standard position	Line extension Line reduction	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Move tank backwards with respect to the standard position	Line extension	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Move tank forwards with respect to the standard position	Line reduction	Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of lines for tank ventilation must be ensured
Place tank higher with respect to the standard position	Height change	Max. permissible line extension 3000 mm	Lower edge of the supply unit may not be higher than the lower edge of the fuel service centre (KSC)
Place the tank higher than the fuel service centre with respect to the standard position	Height change	Written request to MAN required. (For address, see "Publisher")	
Place tank lower with respect to the standard position < 300 mm	Height change	Ensure laying of lines according to MAN standards	Correct laying of the hose for tank ventilation must be ensured
Place tank lower with respect to the standard position > 300 mm	Height change	Written request to MAN required. (For address, see "Publisher")	

5.6 Coupling devices

In order to operate turntable trailers, rigid drawbar trailers or semitrailer tractors, a correspondingly designed coupling device (i.e. trailer coupling and final cross member / fifth-wheel pick-up plate and fifth-wheel coupling) is necessary.

Important notice

Standardisation and legislation for the implementation of coupling devices are based on national conditions for registration, for example:

- Article 43 of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO) (safety standard),
- Article 22a of the German Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO) (type approval),
- BGV D29 (accident-prevention regulations of the Trade Association for Vehicle Operators)

and the calculation of the D value.

A comprehensive description of the final cross members available from MAN, the calculation of the D value and more detailed information can be found in the separate booklet entitled "Coupling devices TG".

5.7 Front-mounted attachments

Front mounting plates enable the fitting of front-mounted attachments, e.g. for winter or road maintenance services.

Front attachments should influence the inflow to the radiator as little as possible.

It is necessary to ensure sufficient clearance between vehicle front and front attachment. Covers attached directly to the vehicle front should be avoided. However, should they be necessary, openings on the sides must also be provided in addition to openings at the front.

If the front attachment affects the inflow to the radiator, Chapter III Section 6.3.3 must also be observed.

Mounting plates for winter and road maintenance service

The mounting unit for front-mounted attachments consists of two components: the front mounting plate and the preparation for the front mounting plate hereinafter referred to simply as „preparation“.

Front mounting plate and preparations are available ex works for selected vehicle models.

The front mounting plate acts as a mounting facility for equipment used in winter and road maintenance service.

The preparation forms the connecting element between vehicle chassis and front mounting plate. The scope of delivery of the preparation includes the front mounting plate brackets, shackle bolts and the support. The front mounting plate bracket enables the front mounting plate to be adjusted for height when mounted on the preparation.

A DIN EN 15432-1-compliant front mounting plate can be mounted on the ex works preparation. In order to ensure interchangeability, the front mounting plates are to be designed in compliance with DIN EN 15432-1.

The combination of front mounting plate and preparation available ex works complies with the requirements of DIN EN 15432-1. For third-party front mounting plates, MAN is unable to make any statements about the strength of the combination.

Requirements concerning the attachment

Front-mounted attachments are usually snowploughs. Other front-mounted attachments such as rotating road sweepers or mowers must not exceed the load that arises from a snowplough.

The load arising from the front-mounted attachment is restricted by the following factors:

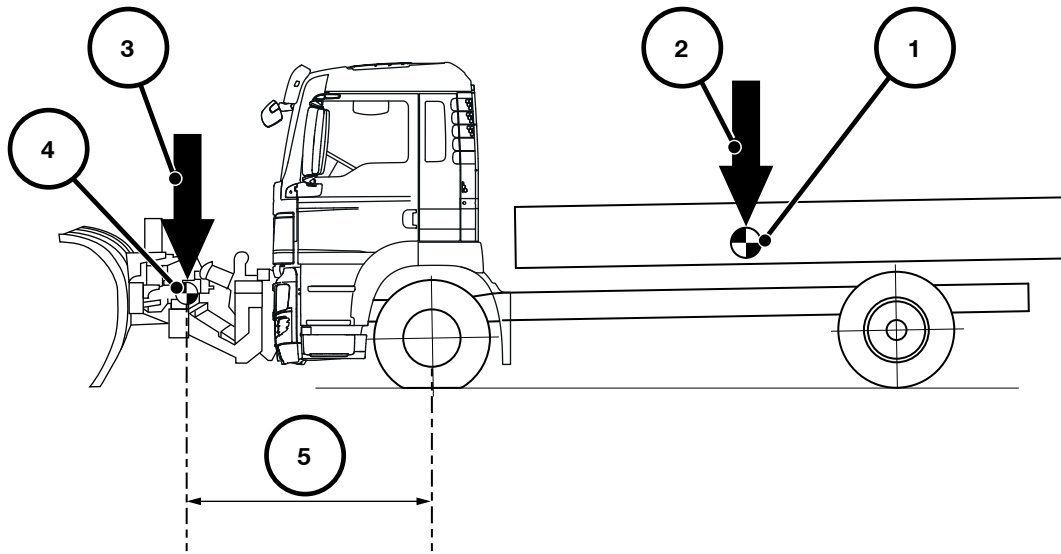
- Permissible front axle load
- Permissible gross weight
- Minimum rear-axle load
- Compliance with the limits of the mechanical load on the combination as per DIN EN 15432-1.

When these factors are checked, it is especially important to note that the snowplough cannot be considered separately from the overall vehicle. Various factors can result in the permissible limits being exceeded.

The spreader hopper that is generally taken along on winter service must be considered both when full and when empty for the purpose of calculating the design. When the hopper is emptied during the trip, the vehicle's center of gravity shifts towards the front axle while its gross weight drops. Bodies such as loading cranes also require axle loads to be individually examined. Due to the long lever arm and frontal weight of the snowplough, front-axle overloading in particular must be critically examined.

For information on the method of calculating axle load, please see Chapter V, Section 1.10.1.

Fig. 42-III: Example of forces and points of application of a force



T_675_000001_0001_G

- 1) Vehicle's center of gravity
- 2) Weight of vehicle
- 3) Weight of plough
- 4) Center of gravity of the plough attachment
- 5) Lever from the front axle to the attachment's center of gravity

Compatibility between front mounting plate and the MAN preparation and compliance with the above-mentioned points must be checked prior to attaching.

Retrofitting

Where the preparation is retrofitted, MAN Genuine Parts must be used. Non-MAN parts are not permitted for retrofitting this attachment.

The preparation can only be retrofitted with the aid of the appropriate MAN Service outlet and MAN Customer Service.

Important notice

The clearance of the cab must not be impinged upon by front-mounted attachments.

For the protection of other road users, the front mounting plate must be fitted with a protective cover when not in use. This cover is included when the MAN front mounting plate is ordered.

6.0 Engine and driveline

6.1 General

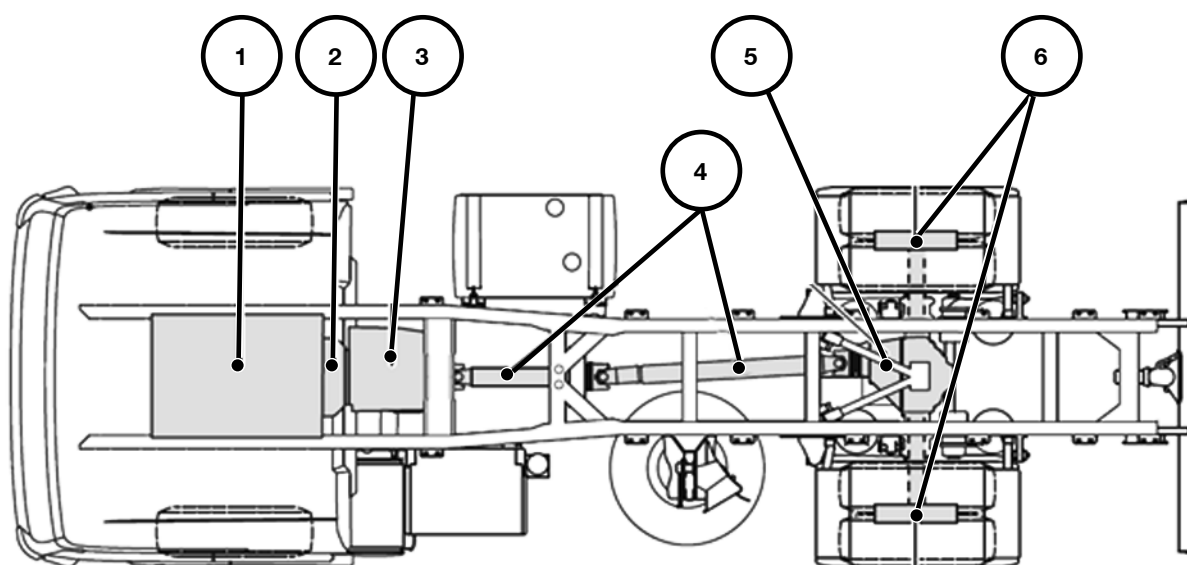
The task of the driveline is to provide the thrust and tractive forces necessary for propelling a vehicle subject to the effective driving resistances. The driveline must fulfil the following functions.

- Conversion (adjustment) of torque and engine speed
- Compensation for different speeds of inner and outer wheels when cornering
- Driving operation, forwards and in reverse
- Operation of the engine at the optimum consumption and exhaust levels of its operating map
- Driving of auxiliary consumers

Drive components are (see Fig. 43-III):

- Engine and engine components
- Gearbox and gearbox components
- Axles and axle components
- Transfer case (only on all-wheel-drive vehicles)

Fig. 43-III: Example of an MAN driveline



T_991_000021_0001_G

- 1) Engine
- 2) Clutch
- 3) Gearbox
- 4) Propshafts
- 5) Axle transfer case
- 6) Axle with planetary gear

6.2 Engine versions

MAN offers various engine versions according to series and emissions class.

In the TGL and TGM four- and six-cylinder in-line diesel engines with common-rail injection from engine series

- D0834 (4-cylinder engines)
- D0836 (6-cylinder engines)

are installed.

The engines are available in emissions classes Euro II, Euro III, Euro IV, Euro V, EEV and Euro VI.

Depending on emissions class, the engines are equipped with exhaust-gas recirculation, on-board diagnosis (**Euro IV and higher**) including NO_x control (torque reduction in case of NO_x control failure) and exhaust gas aftertreatment.

The Brazilian emissions class Conama P6 is similar to Euro IV without OBD. Conama P7 is similar to Euro V with an OBD similar to the European OBD2.

The following abbreviations are used:

EEV:	Enhanced Environmentally friendly Vehicle
OBD:	On Board Diagnosis
EGR:	Exhaust Gas Recirculation
PM-Cat:	Particulate filter (open particulate filter; PM = Particulate Matter)
CRT:	Particulate filter (closed particulate filter; CRT = Continuously Regenerating Trap)
SCR:	Selective Catalytic Reduction with “AdBlue” as the reducing agent; <u>without</u> exhaust gas recirculation (Euro IV, Euro V, EEV)

6.2.1 Type codes for MAN engines

Information on the engine number and the additional data on the type plate can be found via the MAN After Sales Portal or in the vehicle operating manual.

The type code for MAN engines is based on a precisely defined system.

As a general principle, this classification key consists of 6 elements that serve to identify the following features:

- 1) Fuel type
- 2) Bore
- 3) Stroke
- 4) Number of cylinders
- 5) Turbocharging
- 6) Engine installation

Using the example **D0836LFL68**, the type code is explained as follows:

Table 12-III: Type code for MAN engines

Model designation	Explanation	Example
D	Fuel type	Diesel
08	Figure +100	108 mm bore
3	(Figure x10) +100	125 mm stroke (rounded)
6	Number of cylinders	6 cylinders
L	Supercharging	with turbocharging and intercooler
F	Engine installation	Engine/vertical/forward-control
L	Engine installation	Light series
68	Model identifier	Rating/speed/approval

6.3 Engine environment

6.3.1 Modifications to the engine

Important notice

MAN does not permit any modifications to the engine or its components. Non-compliance voids type approval and warranty.

6.3.2 Modification to the air intake

Modifications to the intake system must generally be avoided. Various deliverable serial variants are available for TGL/TGM that must be checked with respect to their usability. Information about the delivery options for the respective vehicle is available in the nearest MAN sales branch.

If modification of the air intake is unavoidable, the following standards shall apply. If these cannot be observed, a written request and approval from MAN is required (for address, see "Publisher" above).

The following regulations generally apply here:

- Air intake must be unobstructed.
- The low pressure in the intake pipe must not change.
- Cross-sections of the piping in the form and/or surface must not be modified under any circumstances.
- Sharp bends in the pipes must be avoided, mitre cuts are not permissible.
- Do not modify air filters.
- Only use approved air filter elements.
- The suspension or support concept and the basic installation position of the components must be retained.
- In the case of modifications to the intake system, it must be guaranteed that all provisions relevant to noise and emissions and other legal provisions continue to be fulfilled.
- The air intake must be protected from taking in heated air (e.g. engine waste heat from the region of the wheel arches or near to the exhaust silencer). A suitable intake point must be selected, which guarantees that the intake air is not heated more than 5°C (ambient temperature at the temperature in front of the turbo charger). If the intake air temperature is too high, there is a risk of exceeding the exhaust limit values. If the exhaust limit values are not observed, the operating licence is invalidated!
- The piping on the clean air side must be selected so that it is externally completely leak-proof. The inside of the clean air pipe must be smooth, it must not be possible for particles or similar to become free. Slipping of the clean air pipe at the sealing points must be avoided at all costs. Suitable retaining devices must be provided for this purpose.
- In order to avoid taking in burning cigarette ends or similar, a cigarette protective grill must be installed directly on the intake point in the same manner as the serially installed grille (non-combustible material, mesh size SW6, area of the open cross-section min. area of the untreated air nozzle on the air filter). Non-observance of this involves the risk of vehicle fires! MAN is unable to make a statement regarding the measure decided upon; the responsibility for this is held by the implementing company.
- The intake point must be in an area with lower dust levels and in the splash-proof area.
- All the provisions must also be fulfilled which are called for by the Employers' Liability Insurance Association or equivalent establishments relating to the relevant components (e.g. surface temperature in the handle area).
- An adequate drain facility by means of water trapping mechanisms as well as unobstructed dust discharge from the filter housing and the untreated air region must be guaranteed, otherwise damage to the engine may occur.
- The intake system must have water trapping efficiency of at least 80% (in accordance with SAEJ2554 for an air volume flow of 13 - 22m³/min).
- All intake pipes must have low pressure resistance of 100 mbar as well as temperature resistance of min. 80°C (short-term 100°C) Flexible pipes (e.g. hoses) are not permitted.

- Intake system in the crew cabin: The intake system is provided with a rain cap for transportation. The rain cap must be removed by the body manufacturer and replaced by a suitable untreated air intake (integrated in the body) which complies with the regulations specified above.
- If intake systems are modified,
 - MAN is unable to guarantee the observance of these and other provisions. The implementing company is responsible for this, and also for provisions relating to on-board diagnosis (OBD).
 - MAN is unable to provide any information about usage modifications or about acoustic behaviour, a new noise test may be necessary. Components with an acoustic effect (e.g. nozzle at the clean air intake) must not be modified. If the noise limit values are not observed, the operating licence is invalidated!
 - MAN is unable to provide any information about the service life of the air filter, since the service life of the air filter may be shortened if modifications are made to the intake system.

In addition to the general regulations, the following shall also apply to vehicles with the Euro 4/Euro 5 emission standard:

- The position of the partial vacuum sensor in an even pipe section must be selected with the shortest possible distance to the turbo charger. The correct sensor display must be guaranteed by the implementing company.

Caution: Risk of engine damage if too low values are displayed!

Additional regulations exist in the case of vehicles with the Euro 6 emission standard. A distinction between engines with and without mass air flow meters must be made here.

Variant 1: Engine with mass air flow meter.

The following specified regulations apply to the Euro 6 engines with mass air flow meters listed in Table 13-III and Table 14-III.

In Fig. 44-III and Fig. 45-III, two possible installation positions of mass air flow meters are shown.

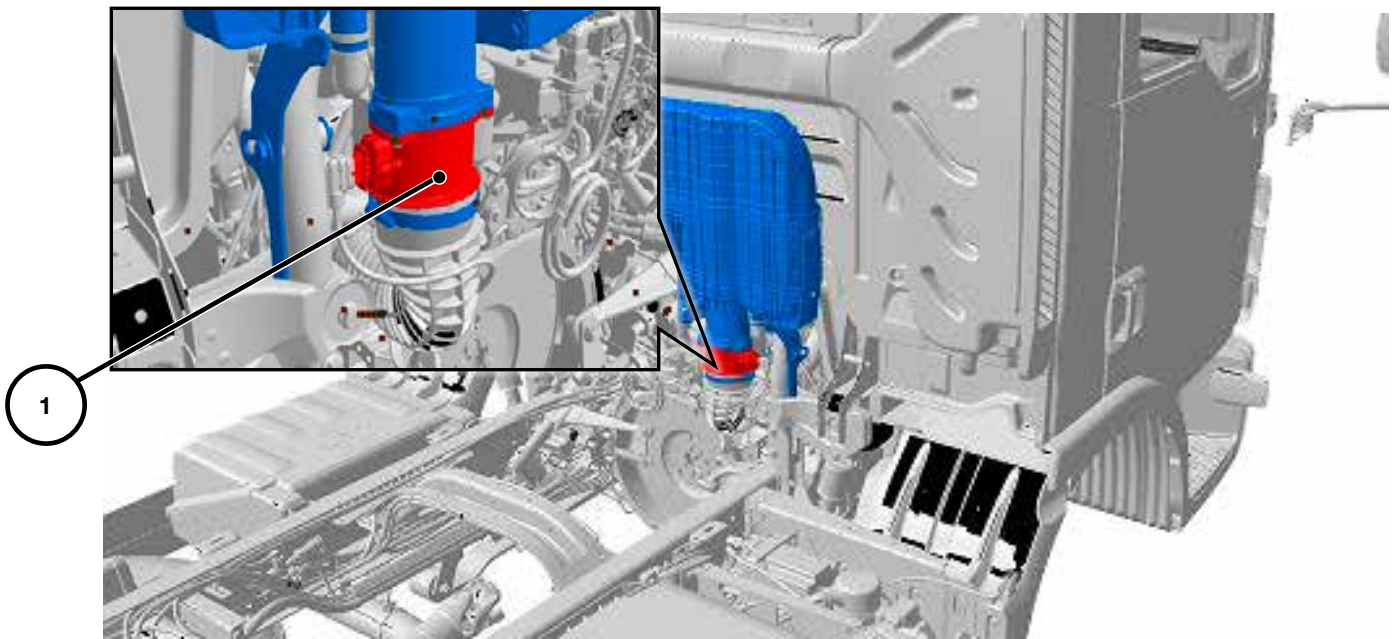
Table 13-III: Euro 6 engine with mass air flow meter

Engine (4-cylinder)	
Engine rating in DIN hp	Engine designation
150	D0834LFL66
	D0834LFLAA
180	D0834LFL67
	D0834LFL75
	D0834LFLAB
	D0834LFLAD
220	D0834LFL68
	D0834LFL76
	D0834LFLAC
	D0834LFLAE
	D0834LOH64

Table 14-III: Euro 6 engine with mass air flow meter

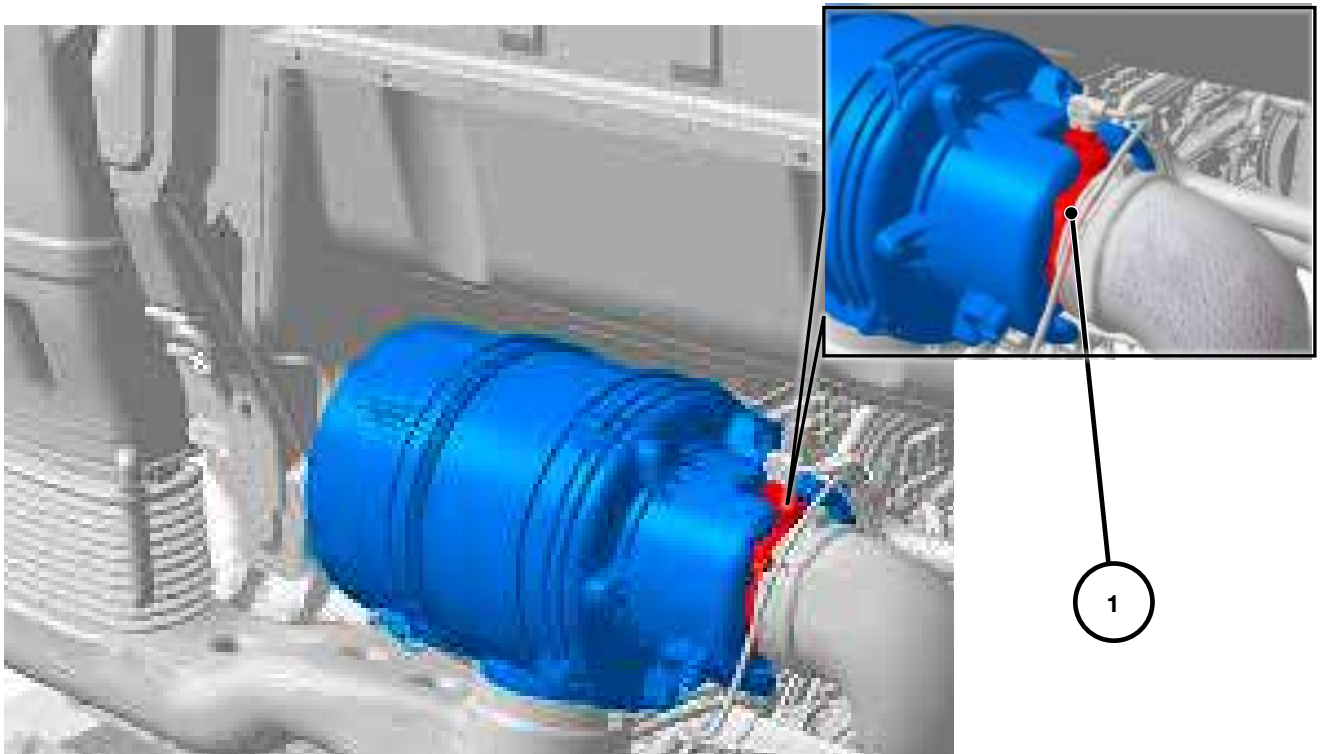
Engine (6-cylinder)	
Engine rating in DIN hp	Engine designation
250	D0836LFL75
	D0836LFLAH Beijing5
	D0836LFLAK Beijing5
	D0836LFL66
	D0836LFLAA
	D0836LFLAD
290	D0836LFL76
	D0836LFLAI Beijing5
	D0836LFLAL Beijing5
	D0836LFL67
	D0836LFLAB
D0836LFLAE	
340	D0836LFL77
	D0836LFLAJ Beijing5
	D0836LFLAM Beijing5
	D0836LFL68
	D0836LFLAC
	D0836LFLAF

Fig. 44-III: Mass air flow meter (pos. 1) on C-Fhs



T_82_000001_0001_G

Fig. 45-III: Mass air flow meter (pos. 1) on L-Fhs



T_82_000002_0001_G

- The installation position, position and alignment of the sensors in the intake system must not be modified.
- When routing the air compressor intake pipe, it must be ensured that there are sufficiently dimensioned cross-sections. The pipe must have low pressure stability of at least 250 mbar and be temperature stable in a range of -40°C to +120°C.
- The inflow and outflow of the mass air flow meter must not be modified:
 - The position and orientation of the air filter must not be modified
 - The geometry and position of the clean air piping must not be modified Length modifications and twisting of the complete clean air piping are not permitted.
 - An original MAN filter insert must be installed. This has an influence on the inflow and characteristic (curve) of the mass air flow meter, and may cause malfunctions if not observed.
 - The installation position, position and alignment of the mass air flow meter must not be modified.
 - The installation of a safety element is not currently permitted. A safety element prevents the ingress of dirt into the clean air side when the air filter is changed. If not observed, this has an influence on the inflow and characteristic (curve) of the mass air flow meter, and may cause malfunctions.
 - The complete untreated air path (intake grille, intake duct, folding bellows for articulated buses, untreated air pipe) must be adopted (exception: Crew cabin variant)

Variant 2: Engine without mass air flow meter

All Euro 6 engines that are not listed in Table 13-III and Table 14-III do not have a mass air flow meter. These engines are available from mid 2017.

Due to the omission of the mass air flow meter in the intake path, this intake system must be treated for conversion purposes as an engine with the Euro4/Euro5 emission standard.

- The position of the partial vacuum sensor in an even pipe section must be selected with the shortest possible distance to the turbo charger. The correct sensor display must be guaranteed by the implementing company.

Caution: Risk of engine damage if too low values are displayed!

6.3.3 Modifications to the engine cooling system

Engine cooling systems are harmonised with the respective engines and the following must therefore be observed.

- Components of the factory-fitted cooling system (radiator, grille, air ducts, coolant circuit) may not be modified.
- Exceptions only with permission from MAN (for address, see “Publisher” above).
- The cooling system may **only** be filled with the coolants released by MAN as specified in the fuel database.
- Materials that contain copper may not be used in the cooling circuit.

If the area of the inflow surface is reduced (by front attachments, for example), thus reducing the performance of the radiator, the following must be taken into account:

- Increased operation of the fan and thus increased fuel consumption
- Negative influence on the capacity of the continuous brake
- Reduction of engine power when close to its limits

Under the following conditions, a radiator with modified performance may be required:

- Operation primarily under stationary conditions
- Operation in climatically unfavourable zones (countries with hot climates)
- Operation in areas where it can be expected that the cooling performance can be reduced e.g. due to high dust level

When fitting a third-party radiator, it is mandatory to follow the mechanical installation requirements set down in the installation guidelines for built-in engines. These guidelines can be requested from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

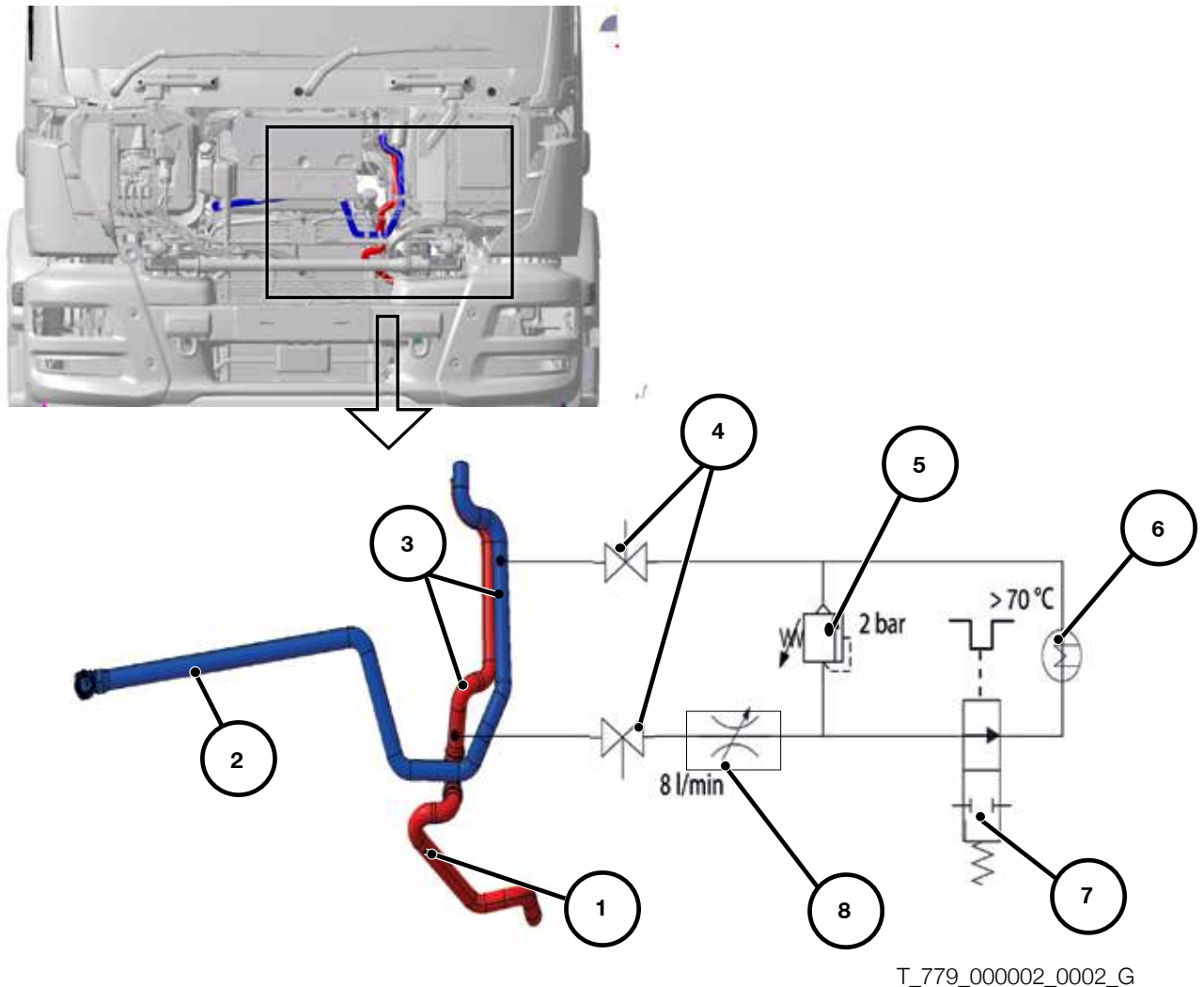
Coolant tapping for heating body components

For some bodies, it can be necessary for body components through which flow medium flows to be heated at low ambient temperatures in order to prevent the flow medium from freezing or to reduce the viscosity of the transported medium. This can be achieved by tapping coolant from the cooling circuit.

Coolant must be picked up parallel to the cab heating circuit in accordance with Fig. 46-III. The tapping can take place using a T-piece in the heating supply line. The return line of the body heating system is also connected to the heating return line using a T-piece. If the tapping of coolant is not a permanent requirement, it must be manually shut off using shut-off valves.

Information

In the case of vehicles with D0834 SCR-type engines only, the factory-fitted coolant pump must subsequently be replaced with the coolant pump with the MAN item number 51.06500-6701 by a MAN service outlet if coolant tapping is to take place. Otherwise, sufficient heating of the cab cannot be ensured. If the above-named coolant pump is not fitted, tapping of coolant to heat body components is not permitted.

Fig. 46-III: Coolant tapping at the supply line of the cab heating system behind the front panel


1 - Heating supply line

2 - Heating return line

3 - T-pieces

4 - Shut-off valves

5 - Pressure-limiting valve

6 - Heat exchanger (optional)

7 - Temperature-controlled valve / Thermostat (>70°C)

8 - Throttle valve or flow regulator valve (max. 8l/min)

The following aspects must be observed for coolant tapping:

- Coolant tapping must take place using a T-piece in the heating supply line of the cab heating system.
- The return line of the body circuit using a T-piece in the heating return line.
- Inner diameter of the lines for body heating 16 mm, the same as cab heating lines
- Do not use materials containing copper
- Hoses in accordance with MAN company standard 334 -1, material version 8
- Coolant tapping via the body circuit max. 8l/min
- Pressure limited to max. 2bar (pressure-limiting valve)
- Coolant tapping only at coolant temperature of >70°C (establish using thermostat or temperature-controlled valve)
- In the case of maintenance works on the cooling circuit, shut-off valves must be provided for the body circuit
- Without external evidence of filling capacity, the heat exchanger must not be positioned higher than the coolant expansion tank.
- The whole circuit must be ventilated prior to use.

6.3.4 Modifications to engine encapsulation, noise insulation

Interference with and changes to engine capsulation in place ex works are not permitted. If a vehicle comes ready defined as „low-noise“ it will lose its status as a result of subsequent changes or retrofits. The company that has carried out the modification will then be responsible for re-obtaining the previous status.

6.3.5 Compressed-air supply

- Air compressor
- Compressed-air dryer
- Compressed-air tank
- External compressed-air connections

The compressed air system supplies, among other things:

- The compressed-air brake system
- The cab suspension
- The chassis suspension
- Consumers requiring compressed air for operation.

6.3.5.1 Basic principles

Warning notice

Improperly executed work on the compressed-air system can impair the function of the brake system. This can lead to the failure of components or parts relevant to safety.

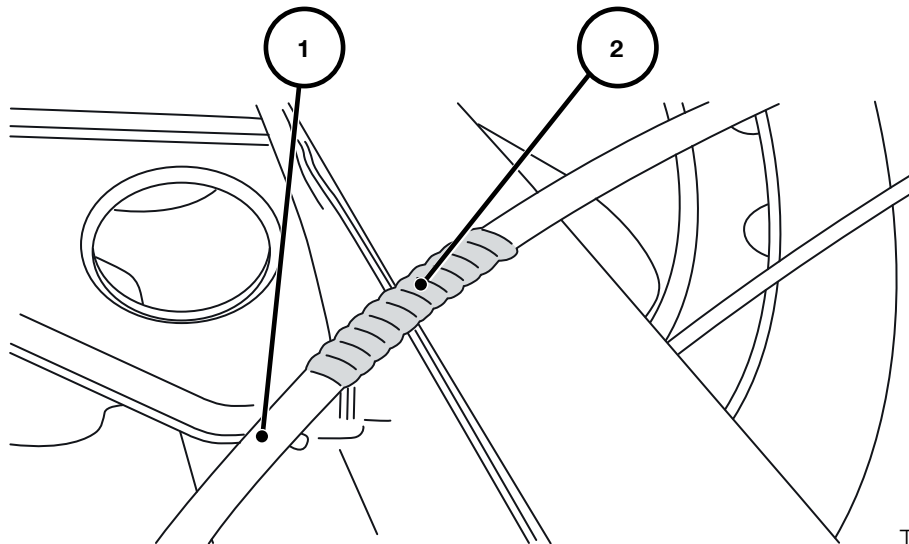
6.3.5.2 Routing lines

Principles of laying lines:

- Do not lay lines loose, use existing means of attachment and/or conduits.
- Do not heat plastic pipes to install them, even if they are to be laid in a curve.
- When attaching PA pipes make sure they cannot become twisted.
- Fit a tube clip or, in the case of a cluster of pipes, a cable tie at the beginning and end in each case.
- Attach corrugated wiring harness pipes to plastic consoles in the frame and in the engine area to prepared cable routes using cable ties or clips.
- Never attach more than one line to the same hose clip.
- Only polyamide pipes as per DIN74324 Part 1 or MAN standard M3230 Part 1 (extension of DIN74324 Part 1) may be employed (MAN portal for technical documentation: www.ptd.man.eu, registration required).
- The cross-section of lines may not be changed.
- Add 1% to the length of the polyamide pipe (corresponding to 10 mm for each metre), because plastic pipes contract in the cold and the vehicles must be capable of working at temperatures down to -40°C.

- Do not heat pipes to lay them.
- When cutting plastic pipes to length, use plastic pipe cutters because sawing them creates ridges on the cut faces and chippings can get into the pipe.
- PA pipes may rest on the edges of a frame or in frame openings. A minimal amount of flattening on the PA pipe at the points of contact is tolerated (maximum depth 0.3 mm). However, notched abrasions are not permitted.
- PA lines may touch one another. There should be minimal flattening at the points where they touch one another.
- PA lines can be bundled together with a cable tie but in parallel and must not cross each other. PA and corrugated pipes should only be bundled together with pipes of the same type. The restriction in movement caused by the pipes becoming stiffer when bundled together must be taken into account.
- Covering frame edges with a cut open corrugated pipe causes damage; the PA pipe is worn at the point where it contacts the corrugated pipe.
- Points of contact between the compressed-air line (Position 1, Fig. 47-III) and edges of the frame can be protected with a protective spiral (Position 2, Fig. 47-III). Such a protective spiral must grip the pipe it is guarding tightly and fully in its windings. (Exception: Polyamide pipes ≤ 6 mm.)

Fig. 47-III: Protective spiral on PA pipe



T_510_000001_0001_G

- 1) Compressed-air line
- 2) Protective spiral

- Do not let PA pipes/corrugated pipes come into contact with aluminium alloys (e.g. aluminium tank, fuel filter housing). Aluminium alloys are subject to mechanical wear (fire risk).
- Pipes that cross over and pulsate (e.g. for fuel) must not be joined by a cable tie where they cross (risk of chafing).
- Do not fix leads rigidly to injection lines and steel fuel feeding pipes for the flame starting system (risk of chafing, fire risk).
- Accompanying central lubricating cables and ABS sensor cables may only be attached to air hoses if a rubber spacer is fitted.
- Do not attach anything to coolant hoses and hydraulic hoses (e.g. steering) by cable ties (risk of chafing).
- Under no circumstances bundle starter cables together with lines carrying fuel or oil because it is a must that the cable from the plus terminal does not chafe.
- Effects of heat: Pay attention to the possibility of heat build-up in encapsulated areas. Resting leads against heat shields is not permitted (minimum distance from heat shields ≥ 100 mm, from the exhaust ≥ 200 mm).
- Metal leads are prestrengthened and may not be bent or fitted such that they can bend by themselves during operation.



If subassemblies/components are seated to move in relation to one another, the following basic rules must be followed when routing leads:

- A lead must be able to follow the movement of a subassembly without hindrance; ensure that there is sufficient spacing between moving parts (rebound/compression, steering angle, tilting of cab). Lines must not be stretched.
- Precisely define the respective beginning and end of the movement as a fixed clamping point. The polyamide pipe or corrugated tube is gripped tightly at the clamping point using the widest cable tie possible or a clip suitable for the diameter of the pipe.
- If polyamide pipes and corrugated tubes are laid at the same junction, the stiffer polyamide pipe is laid first. The softer corrugated tube is then attached to the polyamide pipe.
- A line tolerates movement at right angles to the direction in which it is laid, so ensure sufficient spacing between the clamping points (rule of thumb: spacing of clamping points $\geq 5 \times$ amplitude of movement to be sustained).
- Large amplitude of movement is best withstood by laying a pipe U-shaped and allowing movement along the arms of the U.

Rule of thumb for minimum length of slack loop:

Minimum length of slack loop = $\frac{1}{2} \bullet$ amplitude of movement \bullet minimum radius $\bullet \pi$

- Observe the following minimum radii for PA pipes (define the respective start and end of the movement precisely as the fixed clamping point).

Table 15-III: Minimum radius for PA pipes

Nominal diameter - Ø [mm]	4	6	9	12	14	16
Radius [mm]	20	30	40	60	80	95

- Use plastic clips to secure the lines and comply with the maximum clip spacing stated in Table 16-III.

Table 16-III: Maximum space between clips used to secure pipes in relation to pipe size

Pipe size	4x1	6x1	8x1	9x1,5	11x1,5	12x1,5	14x2	14x2,5	16x2
Clamp spacing [mm]	500	500	600	600	700	700	800	800	800

6.3.5.3 Connecting auxiliary consumers

The compressed-air system pipework for connecting auxiliary consumers uses Voss Systems 203 (for small pipes of nominal size [NG] 6), 230,232 and special connectors such as double mandrel.

With regard to the assembly of the various systems, the MAN standards M3061-2, M3061-3 and M3298 must be observed.

The mandatory standards referred to, contain detailed binding instructions for assembling pneumatic lines and units.

MAN recommends using the Voss System 232.

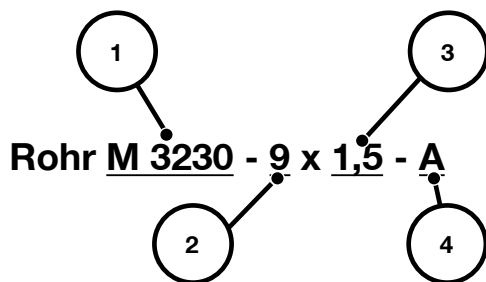
Additional loads may not be connected:

- to the service and parking brake circuits or trailer control,
- to the test connections,
- directly to the four-circuit protection valve.

Designation example: 9 x 1.5 (NG 6) polyamide pipe:

The designation of a polyamide pipe with an external diameter $d_1 = 9$ mm and section thickness of pipe wall $s = 1.5$ mm is explained below.

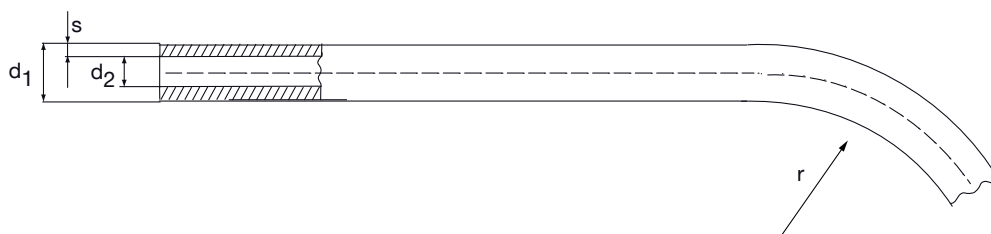
Fig. 48-III: Apportionment of MAN works standard M3230



T_511_000002_0001_G

- 1) MAN works standard
- 2) External diameter of pipe
- 3) Section thickness of wall
- 4) Type of material

Fig. 49-III: Dimensioning Air pipe



T_511_000001_0001_G

- d_1 external diameter of pipe
 d_2 internal diameter of pipe
 s section thickness of wall
 r radius of curvature

The radii of curvature set down in MAN standard M 3230-1 must be complied with. Can be found in Chapter III - 1.2 Standards, guidelines, regulations, tolerances.

MAN uses a distribution rail on the solenoid-valve block to connect its own compressed-air consumers. This is installed on the frame side member on the right (for vehicles with wheel configurations 4x2, 6x2-4 and 6x4) and on the left (for wheel configuration 4x4).

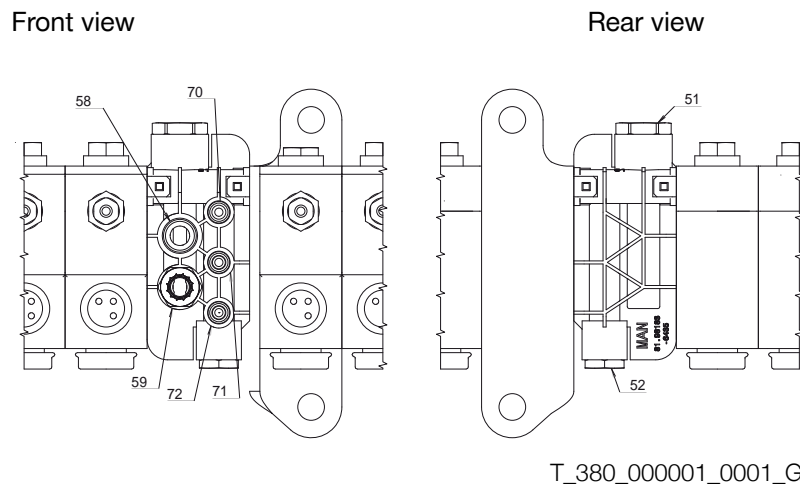
The connections on the distribution rail (see Fig. 50-III) are occupied by lines, depending on the equipment fitted ex works.

Bodybuilders have the following connection options:

- Compressed-air consumers can be connected to an unused connection on the distribution rail.
- The existing distribution rail can be extended by means of the corresponding solenoid valves.

When a greater volume of compressed air is tapped (e.g. when an auxiliary compressed-air tank > 40 litres is installed), a separate overflow and check valve with an overflow pressure of $7,3^{+0,3}$ bar (MAN item no. 81.52110-6049) is necessary.

Fig. 50-III: Connecting auxiliary consumers



6.3.5.4 Loss of compressed-air pressure

Compressed-air systems cannot achieve one hundred percent efficiency and slight leakage is often unavoidable despite the most careful installation work. So the question is how much loss of air pressure is unavoidable, and when does the loss become too high. In simple terms, any loss of air pressure is to be avoided that would result in not being able to drive a vehicle immediately after starting it within 12 hours of shutting it down/parking it. Based on this there are two different methods of determining whether air loss is unavoidable or not:

- Within 12 hours of the system being charged to its cut-off pressure, the pressure must not be below < 6 bar in any circuit. The check must be made with depressurised spring-loaded brake release units, in other words with the parking brake applied.
- The pressure in the tested circuit must not have fallen by more than 2 % within ten minutes of charging the system to its cut-off pressure.

If the air loss is greater than described here, an unacceptable leak is present and must be eliminated.

6.3.5.5 External air supply

When a connection is retrofitted by a bodybuilder for continual external air supply (e.g. on fire-fighting vehicles), it is mandatory to employ one of the connection options shown below for compressed-air feed.

The corresponding variant is to be selected in dependence on the available feed pressure:

- Variant 1: Feed pressure of at least 13 bar
- Variant 2: Feed pressure of between 9 and 10 bar

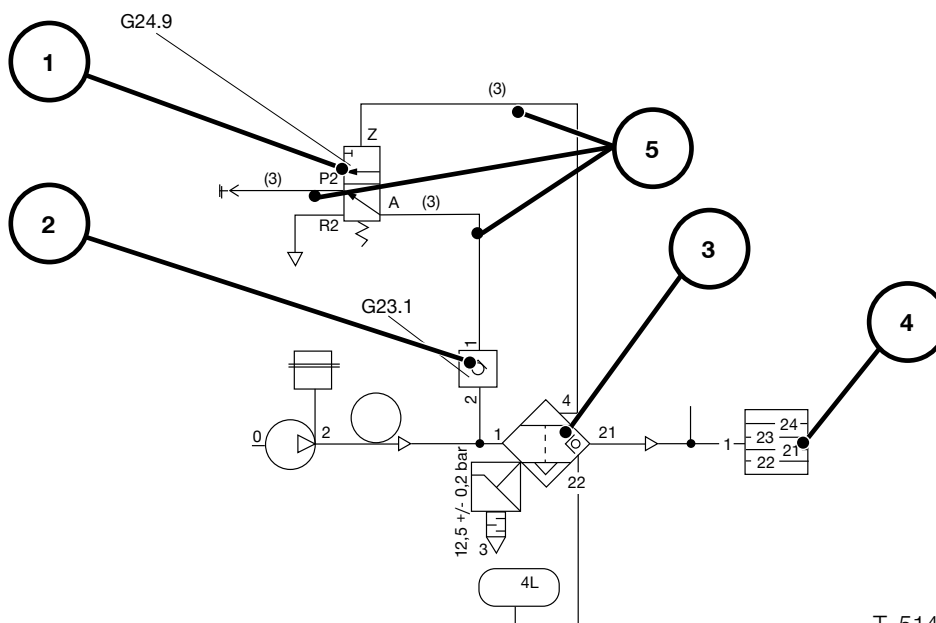
Variant 1:

This version is possible only with a heated air dryer.

Positions (1, 2) in Fig. 51-III and the external filler coupling have to be retrofitted to the vehicle.

The external filler coupling is connected to P2 (3/2-way valve that has to be retrofitted) in Fig. 51-III.

Fig. 51-III: Variant 1



T_514_000001_0001_G

- 1) 3/2-way valve (switching valve)
- 2) Check valve
- 3) Air dryer (in scope of vehicle ex works)
- 4) Multi-circuit protection valve (in scope of vehicle ex works)
- 5) Compressed-air pipe with minimum diameter of 9 x 1.5 PA11/12 PHLV

Table 17-III: Spare parts required for retrofiting

Pos. no.	Part	Designation	MAN item no.
1	3/2-way valve	G24.9	81.52170-6157
2	Check valve	G23.1	81.52120-6004

Pipes must be installed as per MAN standard M3061.

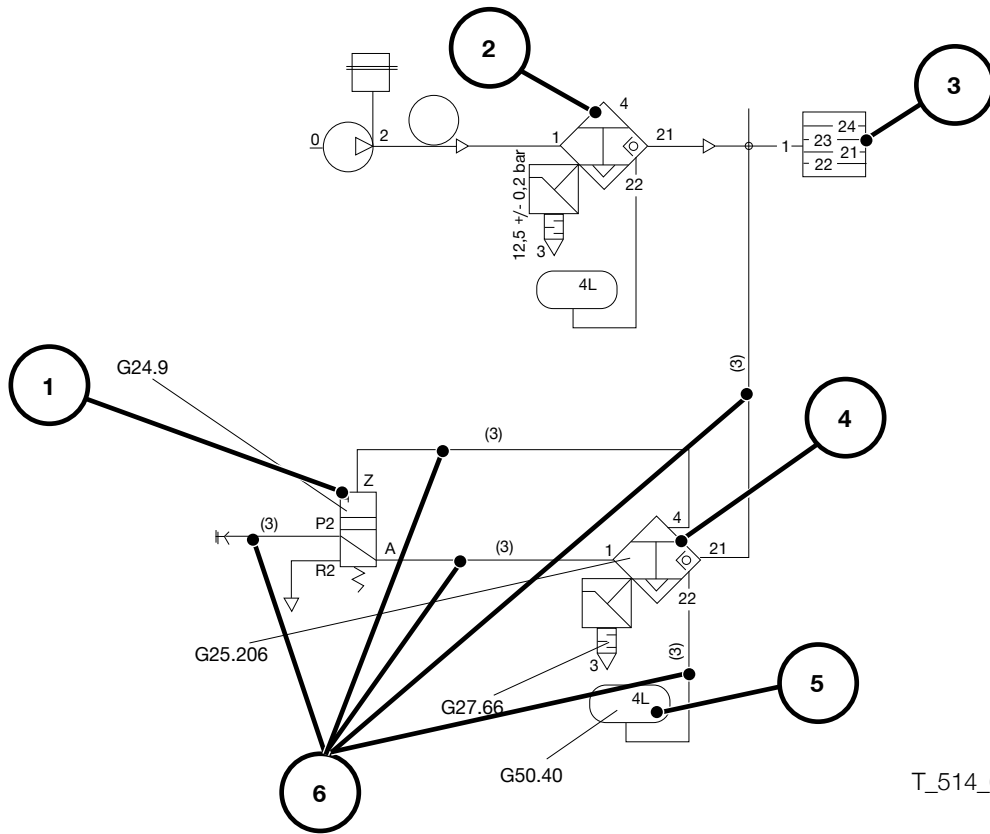
Important notice

For design reasons, feed pressure must be at least 13 bar to enable regeneration of the air dryer (Pos.3 in Fig. 51-III). If the feed pressure is lower than the air dryer's cut-off pressure, regeneration of the air dryer is not possible and moist air will enter the compressed-air braking system.

Variant 2:

Positions (1, 4, 5 and noise damper G27.66) in Fig. 52-III and the external filler coupling have to be retrofitted to the vehicle. The external filler coupling is connected to P2 in Fig. 52-III.

Fig. 52-III: Variant 2



T_514_000002_0001_G

- 1) 3/2-way valve (switching valve) (supplementary scope)
- 2) Air dryer (in scope of vehicle)
- 3) Multi-circuit protection valve (in scope of vehicle)
- 4) Air dryer (supplementary scope)
- 5) Compressed-air tank (supplementary scope)
- 6) Compressed-air pipe with minimum diameter of 9 x 1.5 PA11

Table 18-III: Spare parts required for retrofitting

Pos. no.	Part	Designation	MAN item no.
1	3/2-way valve	G24.9	81.52170-6157
2	Air dryer (8.5 bar cut-off pressure)	G25.206	81.52102-6117
5	Compressed-air tank	G50.40	81.51401-0194
	Noise damper	G27.66	81.52101-6264

Pipes must be installed as per MAN standard M3061.

Important notice

For design reasons, feed pressure must be at least 9 to 10 bar to enable regeneration of the air dryer (Pos.4 in Fig. 52-III). The air dryer that has to be retrofitted in addition must have a cut-off pressure of at least 8.5 bar.

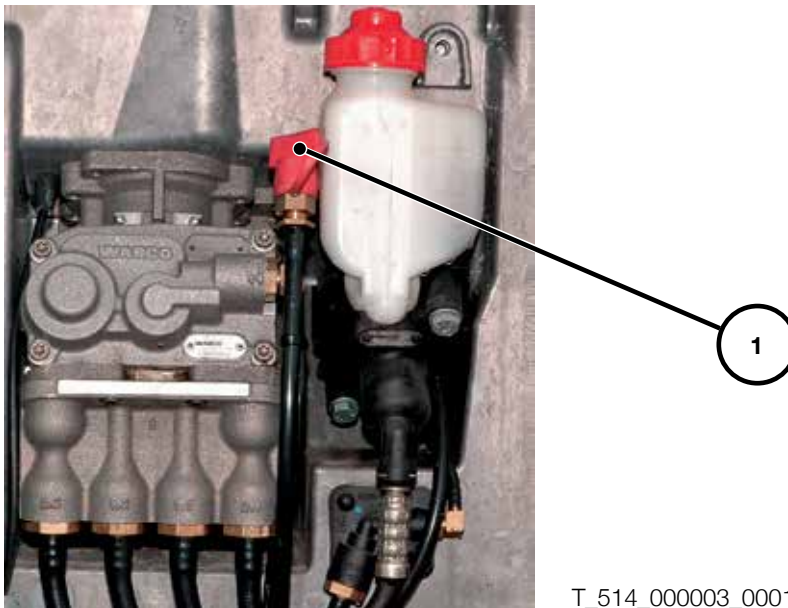
If the feed pressure is lower than the air dryer's cut-off pressure, regeneration of the air dryer is not possible and moist air will enter the compressed-air braking system.

Note:

In order to connect a compressed-air hose for external filling in the event of a breakdown, there is a compressed-air connection with valve (MAN order code –Front compressed-air filler connection) located beneath the front flap (Pos.1, Fig. 53-III).

Further information can be found in the vehicle's operating instructions.

Fig. 53-III: External filler connection located on a connection plate on the frame



T_514_000003_0001_G

This compressed-air connection (Pos. 1 in Fig. 53-III) may only be used for

- filling the compressed-air system in the case of a lack of reservoir pressure or
- emergency release of the combination brake cylinder

This connection must not be used for continual external air supply.

The compressed air that is fed to this connection fills all the braking circuits but is no longer filtered and dried by the vehicle's air dryer.

Consequently, soiling and condensation can enter the compressed-air system.

Compressed air fed via this connection must meet the requirements set down in ISO 8573 - 1 : 2010 [7:7:4]. In the event of this quality class not being achieved, increased wear and leakage from the compressed-air components must be reckoned with.

6.4 Exhaust system

6.4.1 Modifications to the exhaust routing

Information

In general, modifications to the exhaust system are to be avoided. Various factory options are available for the TGL/TGM and body builders should check to see if these can be used. Information on availability for the corresponding vehicle can be obtained from your closest MAN sales branch.

If it is still not possible to avoid making modifications the following requirements must be met:

- The outflow of exhaust gases must not be inhibited in any way.
- The backpressure in the exhaust must not be allowed to vary.
- All statutory regulations relevant to noise and emissions must be fulfilled.
- When modifications are made to the exhaust system and routing, care must be taken to ensure that the exhaust-gas stream is not directed at any part of the vehicle. The direction of the exhaust outlet must point away from the vehicle (observe regulations in the respective country - in Germany, these are the Road Traffic Licensing Regulations (StVZO)).
- All regulations pertaining to the components in question issued by professional associations or similar bodies must also be fulfilled (e.g. surface temperature in the vicinity of handles/grips)
- In the case of modified exhaust systems, MAN cannot
 - guarantee compliance with the above-mentioned and other regulations. Responsibility for this remains with the company performing the modification. This also applies to regulations pertaining to on-board diagnosis systems (OBD).
 - provide any information about changes in fuel consumption or noise characteristics. In some circumstances, new noise-emission approval will be required. Components that have an effect on acoustics may not be modified. Non-compliance with noise limits voids type approval!
 - make any statement of compliance about prescribed exhaust-gas limits. An expertise on emissions may be necessary. Non-compliance with emission limits voids type approval!

Depending on the emission class, modifications to the exhaust system are possible. In this regard, the following instructions must be observed.

For vehicles up to and including the Euro 3 exhaust standard, the following apply in addition to the general specifications:

- When relocating the exhaust silencer it must be ensured that the original MAN bracket is re-used and that the basic installation position of components is unchanged.
- When relocating the exhaust piping or the exhaust silencer it must be ensured that the original locations of the sensors (temperature sensor, pressure sensor, lambda probe) are restored in order to prevent incorrect measurements
- Modifications to the factory-fitted MAN cable harness to the sensors are not permitted. If other cable harness lengths are required, order Genuine MAN cable harnesses from the MAN Spare-parts Service.
- For EMC reasons, CAN cables may not be untwisted.
- Conversion work or modifications to the exhaust-gas routing from the exhaust manifold to the metal hose (the flexible metal pipe between parts attached to the body and those attached to the frame) are not permitted.
- No blowing-out of cargo (e.g. bitumen) using exhaust gas - **danger of damage to the exhaust system and engine.**
- Never change the shape or area of pipework cross-sections. The original type of material must be used for pipes.
- Do not modify silencers (including the silencer housing): this voids type approval.
- Bending radii must be at least twice the pipe diameter; creases are not allowed.
- Only continuous bends are permitted, i.e. no mitre cuts.
- The function of components relevant to OBD may not be impaired. Manipulation of components relevant to OBD voids type approval!
- The notes and requirements set down in Chapter 1.4 "Fire protection" must be complied with.
- Relocating the components of the exhaust system is possible when original MAN exhaust pipes are used. The longest of a type approved exhaust system (e.g. raised exhaust system) is also the longest allowable exhaust system. Any further extension is only possible when a pressure and temperature loss can be excluded.

For vehicles up to and including Euro 4, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust standards:

Due to the formation of condensation and resultant incorrect measurement, the following must be taken into account if the location of the exhaust silencer is changed.

- The connection of the pressure-sensor line to the silencer must always point upwards. The following steel pipe must be installed so that it rises continuously to connect with the sensor. It must have a minimum length of 300 mm and a maximum length of 400 mm (including the flexible section).
The measurement line must be made from M01-942-X6CrNiTi1810-K3-8x1 D4-T3.
- In general, the installation position of the pressure sensor must be retained (connection at bottom).

For vehicles up to and including Euro 5, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust standards:

The lambda probe and temperature and pressure sensors are located in the front section of the exhaust manifold. For this reason, relocating the exhaust silencer is possible without any further routing of cables.

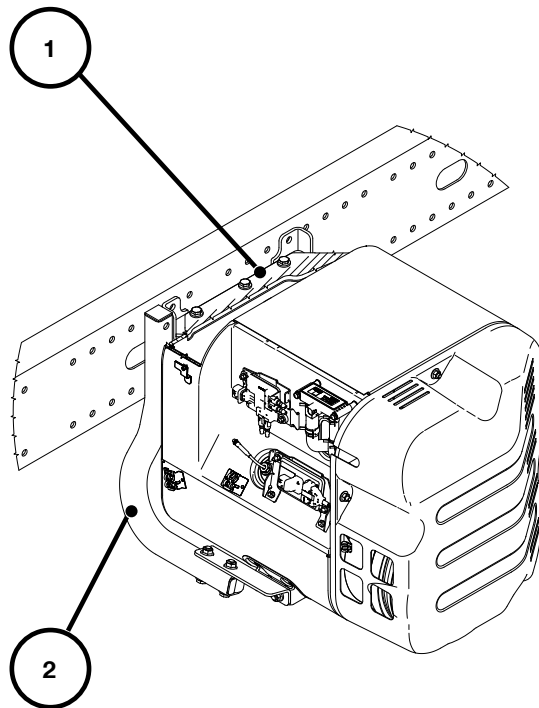
For vehicles up to and including Euro 6, the following apply in addition to the requirements of the lower exhaust standards:

Important notice

Due to the fact that exhaust-gas aftertreatment sensing is highly sensitive, all work must be carried out with the greatest care. The instructions in this section and in all other relevant sections must be strictly adhered to.

- When the exhaust silencer is relocated, the factory-fitted fastening must be retained, if necessary adapted (see Fig. 54-III: Euro 6 exhaust-silencer bracket).
- On vehicles in the TGL model range, the cross strut must be relocated at the same time.
- When the exhaust silencer is relocated to the frame bend, it must be fitted parallel to the longitudinal axis of the vehicle (e.g. by means of shims).

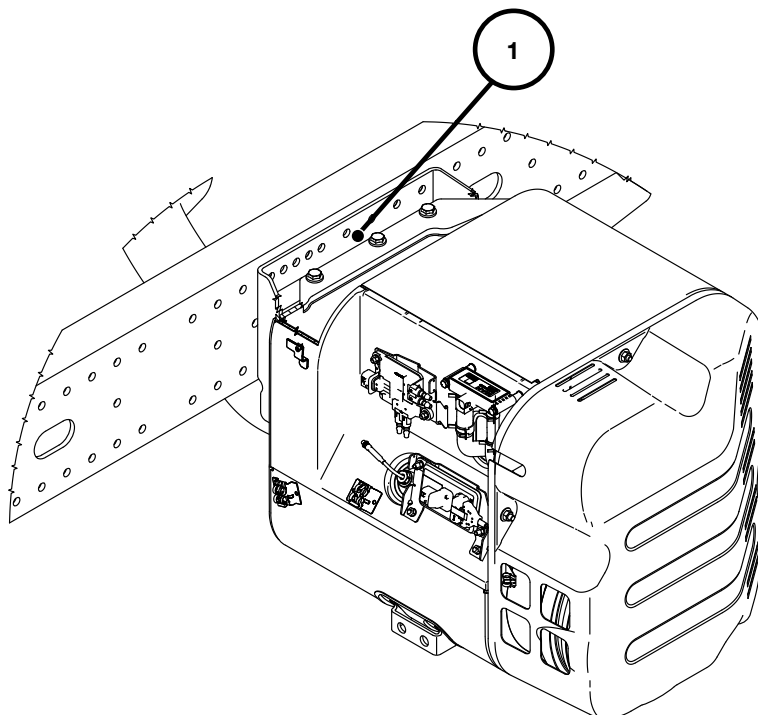
Fig. 54-III: Euro 6 exhaust-silencer bracket



T_151_000002_0002_G

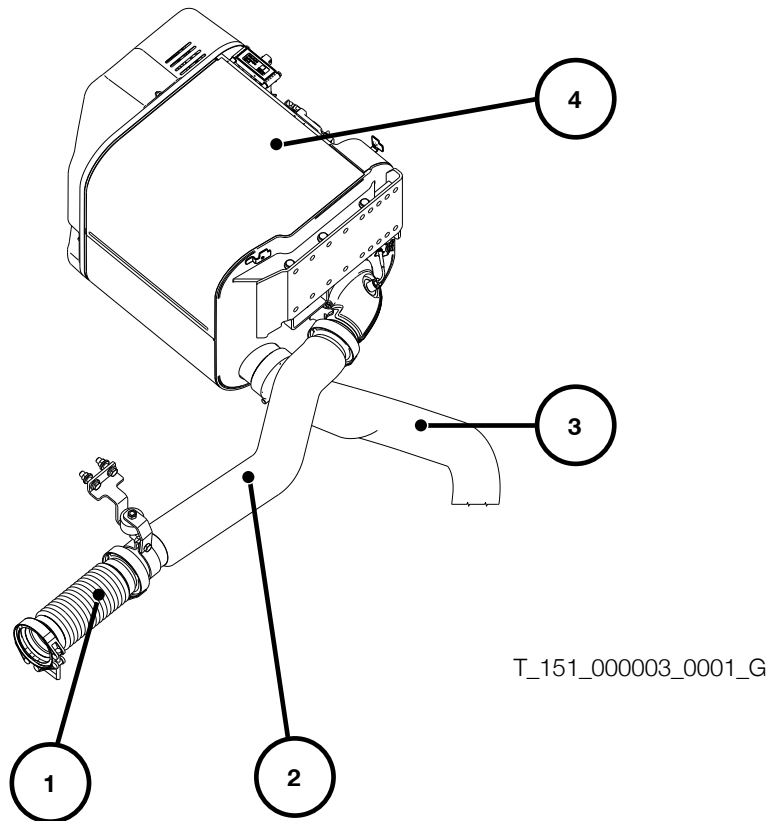
- 1) Exhaust-pipe bracket
- 2) Cross strut

Fig. 55-III: TGM without cross strut



T_152_000002_0003_G

- 1) Exhaust-pipe bracket

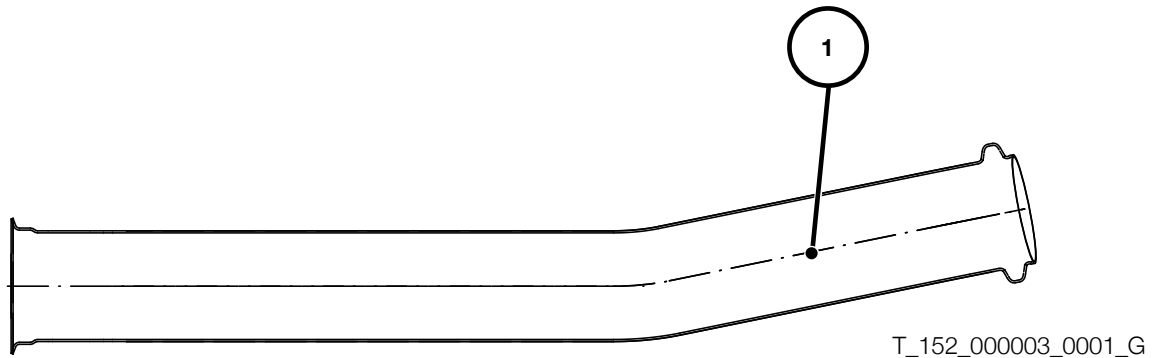
Fig. 56-III: Components of the exhaust-gas piping


- 1) Flexible metal hose
- 2) Exhaust pipe
- 3) Exhaust tailpipe
- 4) Exhaust silencer

The exhaust pipe may be lengthened in the section between the flexible metal hose and the silencer (see Fig. 56-III: Components of the exhaust-gas piping).

In this regard, the exhaust pipe between the flexible metal hose and the silencer may not exceed the following lengths (neutral axis), see Fig. 57-III: Neutral axis).

- TGL (4-cyl. engine): 1720 mm
- TGL (6-cyl. engine) and TGM: 1540 mm

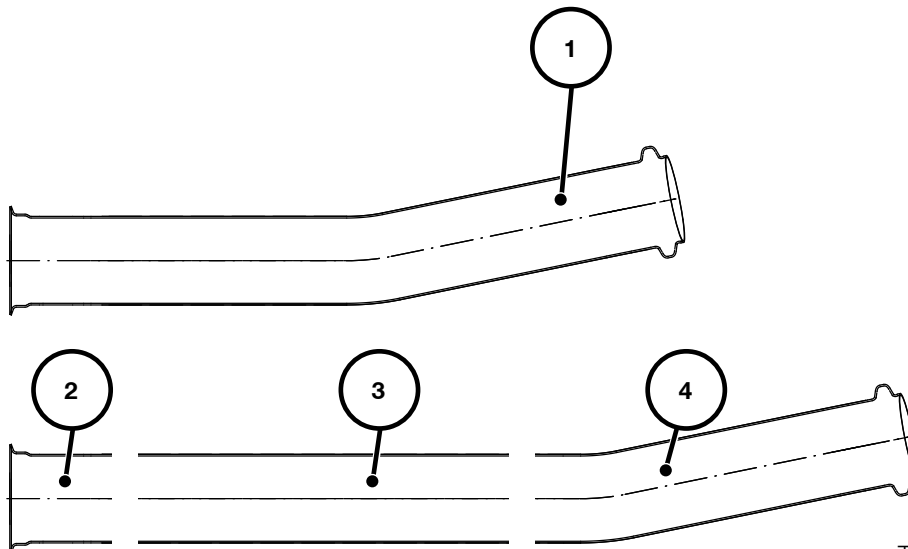
Fig. 57-III: Neutral axis


T_152_000003_0001_G

1) Neutral axis

In order to ensure that the exhaust system is leaktight, the following instructions must be adhered to.

- The connections at the ends of the exhaust pipe must be retained.
- In order to avoid welding distortion to the exhaust-pipe connections, a distance of approx. 100 mm between the connection and the joint must be maintained.
- Joints in the area of bends are not permitted.
- Joints in the area of changes to the cross-section are not permitted.
- Exhaust seals are not suitable for re-use. The seals must be replaced with new ones whenever the exhaust pipe is disassembled. TGL/M: 81.15901.0041).
- Exhaust-pipe clamps may not be bent open.

Fig. 58-III: Exhaust-pipe extension


T_152_000004_0001_G

- 1) Standard exhaust pipe
- 2) Exhaust-pipe connection - must be retained
- 3) Section of pipe for exhaust-pipe extension
- 4) Exhaust-pipe connection - must be retained

The factory-fitted exhaust system employs stainless steel, material no. 1.4301.
Only austenitic stainless steels may be used for exhaust-system piping (see Table 19-III).

Reason: if the otherwise commonly-used ferritic steels are used, the ammonia in the exhaust tract (reaction product from AdBlue) will cause corrosion.

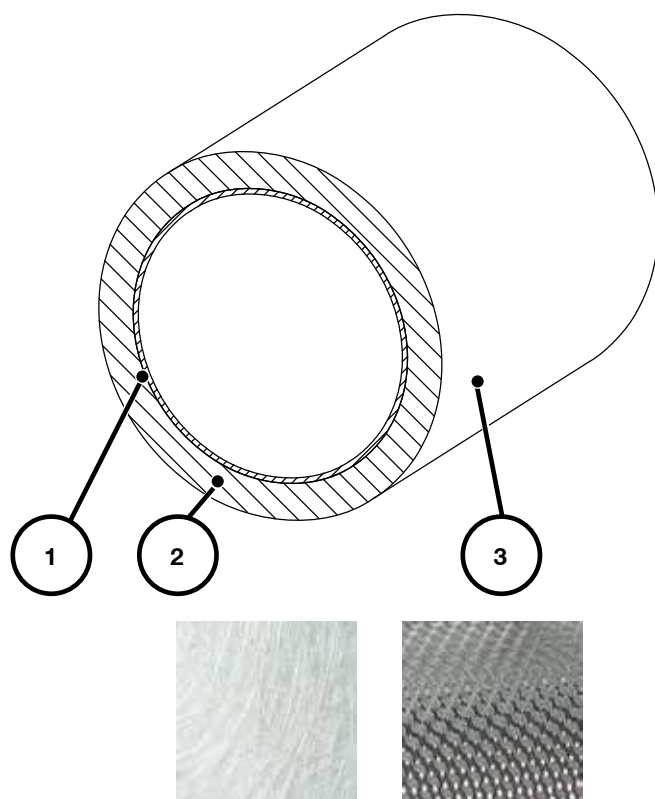
Stainless steel pipes must be welded using inert gas shielded arc welding (observe the steel manufacturer's instructions) with the work carried out by qualified and authorised personnel.

Table 19-III: Overview of the austenitic stainless steels as per DIN 17440 to be employed

Designation	Material number
X 5 CrNi 18 10	1.4301
X 2 CrNi 19 11	1.4306
X 2 CrNiN 18 10	1.4311
X 6 CrNiTi 18 10	1.4541
X 6 CrNiNb 18 10	1.4550
X 5 CrNiMo 17 12 2	1.4401
X 2 CrNiMo 17 13 2	1.4404
X 6 CrNiMoTi 17 12 2	1.4571
X 2 CrNiMoN 17 13 3	1.4429
X 2 CrNiMo 18 14 3	1.4435
X 5 CrNiMo 17 13 3	1.4436
X 2 CrNiMoN 17 13 5	1.4439

The exhaust pipe must be completely insulated up to the silencer. The insulation consists of a fibreglass needle mat and stainless-steel foil, which have to meet the following requirements.

- Fibreglass needle mat
 - Type of glass: 100 % E-glass
 - Temperature resistance: up to 600 degrees
 - Non-flammable (DIN 4102)
 - Weight: 1500 g/m² (ISO 3374)
 - Thickness: 10 mm (DIN EN ISO 5084, test area = 25 cm², test pressure = 10 g/cm²)
 - Width: 1000 mm (DIN EN 1773)
- Macrostructured nubbed steel ("NOSTAL")
 - Stainless steel 1.4301
 - Thickness of material 0.3 mm
 - Thickness of structure 1.5 mm

Fig. 59-III: Exhaust pipe with insulation


T_152_000001_0001_G

- 1) Exhaust pipe
- 2) Fibreglass needle mat
- 3) Macrostructured nubbed steel

Damage to the exhaust-pipe insulation is to be avoided. In the event of major damage, it may be necessary to replace the exhaust pipe.

Important notice

- Sensors and measuring instruments in the silencer may not be modified.
- When the exhaust silencer has been relocated it must be ensured that no units are warmed by exhaust gas and that exhaust gas is not discharged in the direction of any units.
- When relocating the exhaust silencer it is necessary to adapt the piping and cable harnesses (see Section 6.4.2 "Modifications to the AdBlue system").

Bodies must be built in such a manner that the service apertures on the exhaust silencer are accessible. It must be possible to remove and replace the filter element.

The exhaust silencer in the fire-brigade variant is rotated forwards by 90 degrees. Enough clearance (approx. 400 mm) must be provided in order to enable removal of the soot particulate filter from the exhaust silencer. Alternatively it must be possible to disassemble the exhaust silencer for servicing purposes.

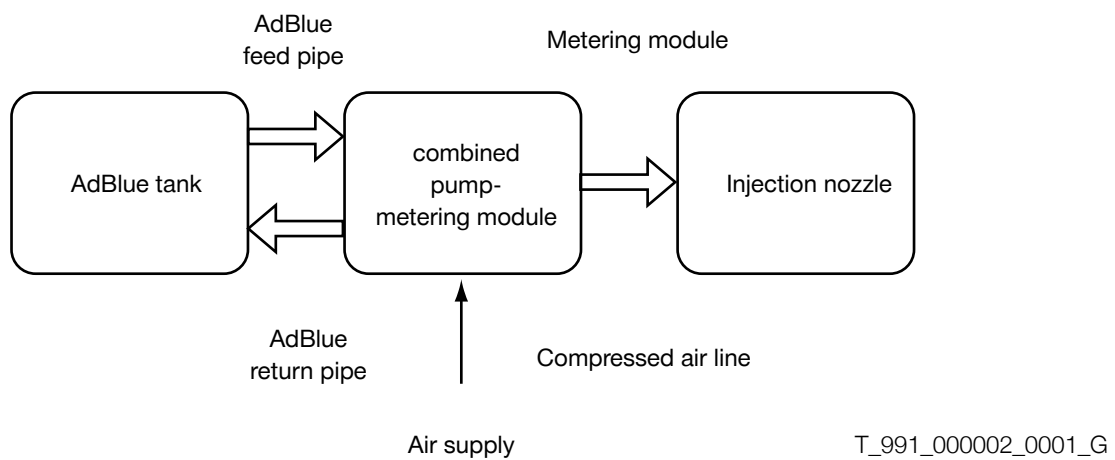
6.4.2 AdBlue-System

In the TGL and TGM series, AdBlue is employed for exhaust gas aftertreatment, from the Euro 6 emission standard upwards. The main components of the system are the AdBlue tank, supply module and metering module (Fig. 60-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 6 vehicles).

6.4.2.1 Basic principles and structure of the AdBlue system

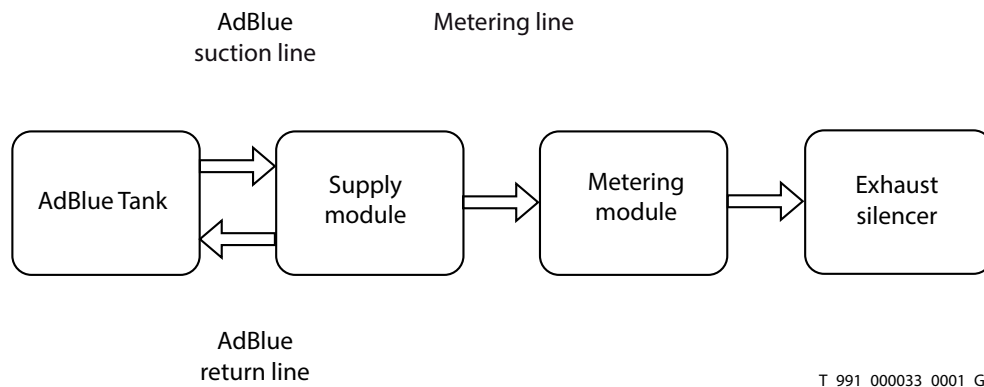
The supply module pumps AdBlue to the metering module, which is responsible for feeding the AdBlue into the exhaust silencer. The AdBlue reacts with the exhaust gases, reducing the amount of nitrogen oxide they contain.

Fig. 60-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 6 vehicles



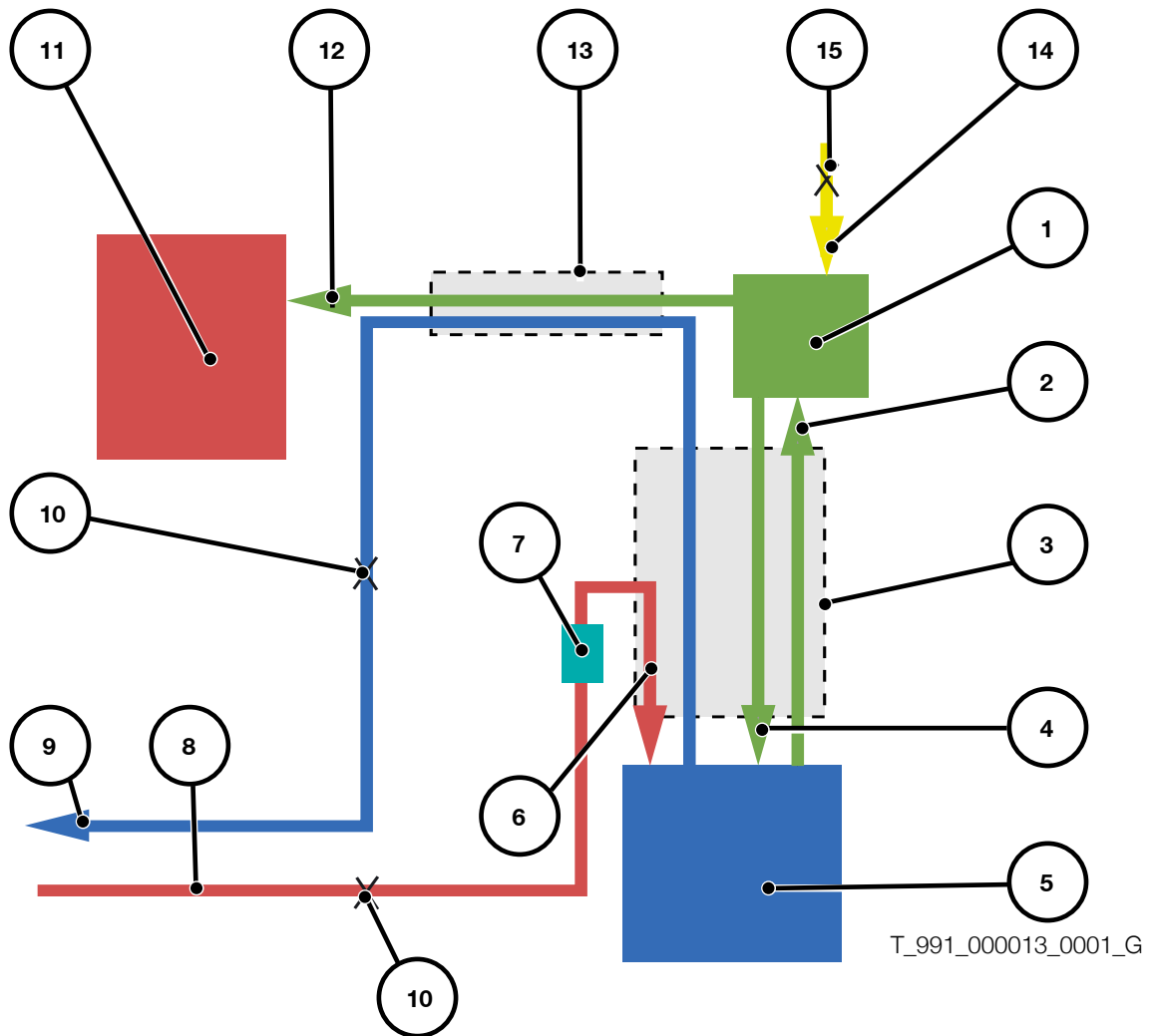
Euro 6 vehicles with SCRonly engines feature an AdBlue system similar in design. The supply module and metering module are separate units; therefore the system does not require a compressed-air connection. The metering module is mounted directly on the exhaust silencer.

Fig. 61-III: Schematic structure of the AdBlue system in Euro 6 vehicles with SCRonly engines



The components of the AdBlue system are connected to one another by a line set. This line set contains AdBlue lines as well as heating-water lines. The lines are partly surrounded with insulation to protect those lines carrying AdBlue from the cold.

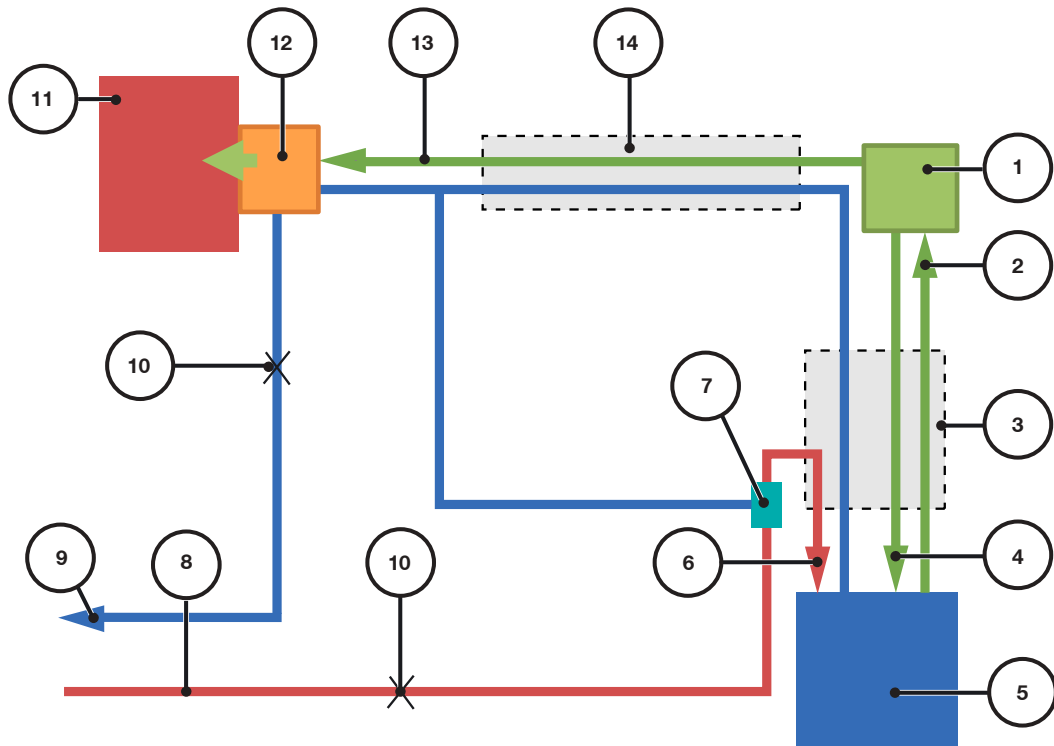
Warm coolant is additionally branched off from the engine in heating water lines in order to keep the system operational even at low temperatures (see Fig. 62-III: Schematic diagram of the AdBlue system line routing for emission standard Euro 6 or Fig. 63-III: Schematic diagram of the AdBlue system line routing for emission standard Euro 6 and SCRonly technology).

Fig. 62-III: Schematic diagram of line routing in Euro 6 AdBlue system


T_991_000013_0001_G

- 1) AdBlue supply module
- 2) AdBlue supply line from AdBlue tank to supply module
- 3) Insulation of line set
- 4) AdBlue return line from supply module to AdBlue tank
- 5) AdBlue tank
- 6) Heating-water supply line from water shut-off valve to AdBlue tank
- 7) Water shut-off valve near AdBlue tank
- 8) Heating-water supply line from cab heating connection to water shut-off valve
- 9) Heating-water return line from AdBlue tank to engine
- 10) Point of separation at which it is permissible to separate the heating-water line
- 11) Exhaust silencer
- 12) Metering line from supply module to Exhaust silencer
- 13) Insulation of line set
- 14) Compressed-air line
- 15) Point of separation in compressed-air line

Fig. 63-III: Schematic diagram of the AdBlue system line routing for Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology



T_991_000024_0001_G

- 1) AdBlue supply module
- 2) AdBlue - supply line from AdBlue tank to supply module
- 3) Insulation of line set
- 4) AdBlue return line from supply module to AdBlue tank
- 5) AdBlue tank
- 6) Heating water supply line from water shut-off valve to AdBlue tank
- 7) 3/2-way valve near AdBlue tank
- 8) Heating water supply line from cab heating connection to water shut-off valve
- 9) Heating water return line from AdBlue tank to engine
- 10) Point of separation at which it is permissible to separate heating water line
- 11) Exhaust silencer
- 12) Metering module (cooled with coolant)
- 13) Metering line from metering module to exhaust silencer
- 14) Insulation of line set

Notes on the AdBlue system

AdBlue (DIN 70070) is the trade name for an aqueous, synthetically manufactured 32.5% urea solution that is used for exhaust gas after treatment in an SCR (selective catalytic reduction) catalytic converter.

AdBlue is non-poisonous but has a highly corrosive effect on non-stainless steels and non-ferrous metals (e.g. copper seals or electrical contacts). Similarly, plastics not resistant to AdBlue are negatively affected (e.g. electric leads or tubing). Any AdBlue that escapes must therefore be soaked up immediately and the affected area cleaned with warm tap water.

Important notice

Risk of component damage from ingress of dirt.

If contaminants find their way into the AdBlue tank, components of the exhaust gas cleaning system and injection system could fail (e.g. injector nozzles could become blocked).

When working on the AdBlue tank, observe strict rules of cleanliness. Cover or seal all the openings on the AdBlue system.

MAN recommends using plugs for the AdBlue system (MAN item no.: 80.99607-6092)

The stipulations in the repair manuals of MAN Truck & Bus AG on the MAN After Sales Portal (ASP*): www.asp.mantruckandbus.com must be considered. Registration is required.

Important notice

Under all circumstances, AdBlue must be prevented from entering the coolant circuit - for example through transposing the lines - as engine damage results.

Modifications to the AdBlue system

Due to the very sensitive sensing of the exhaust gas aftertreatment, all work must be completed with great care and strict adherence to the points that follow in this and all other relevant chapters is required.

A check must be made in advance to establish whether existing MAN variants of the AdBlue system can be used.

The following points must be observed when working on AdBlue systems:

- All conversion measures must be performed by personnel with appropriate training.
- Subsequent to all work on the supply module, the necessity of starting up the module in accordance with the repair manual must be determined, particularly in cases where the module has been relocated or replaced.
- The supply module may only be relocated within the limits set down in the module's installation overview (see Fig. 64-III: Euro 6 supply module installation overview).
- It is imperative to ensure that the lines are correctly connected. If AdBlue enters the cooling system there is a risk of damage to the engine.
- The heating water supply line to the heater valve may not be bundled together with the other lines
- Lines may not be kinked and must be routed with adequately sized radii. Routing may not lead to the formation of syphons.
- AdBlue lines connected to the supply module must be routed away and downwards.
- Plugs on the lines may not be re-used. As a basic principle, new MAN-approved plugs must be used and tightened with the approved clamps.
- The fir-tree may not be greased when pressed into the line.
- AdBlue freezes at -11°C . If the insulation is removed - even only partially - from the line set, insulation against the cold as effective as the standard insulation must be fitted.
- Existing heating lines may not be removed.
- As a basic principle, the routing of the heater pipes, in particular heating of the AdBlue lines to the exhaust silencer, must be retained.
- The ends of the insulation must be closed off by means of suitable adhesive tape.
- The AdBlue system, in particular any plugs that have just been pressed in, must be checked to ensure that it is leaktight.

6.4.2.2 AdBlue line set

The AdBlue line set carries heating water (tapped from the engine-coolant circuit) and AdBlue. This section describes the points to be observed when adapting the line set. The maximum permissible lengths of the individual lines define the limits to which components of the AdBlue system may be relocated.

If components of the AdBlue system are relocated, it may be necessary to adapt individual lines in the AdBlue line set. Below is a description of line implementation and of which lines are affected.

A description of line adaptation can be found in the sub-section headed "Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set".

Description of lines in vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

- AdBlue supply and return lines, AdBlue metering line
- Dimensions 3.2 x 2.65 mm, made from EPDM, hose colour black, lettering white
- Heating-water return line from water shut-off valve to AdBlue tank and heating-water return line
- Dimensions 6 x 3 mm, made from EPDM, hose colour black, lettering white
- Heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve
- Dimensions 9 x 1.5 mm, made from polyamide, pipe colour black, lettering white

Minimum bending radii

- Heating-water line made from polyamide: minimum 40 mm
- Heating-water line made from EPDM: minimum 35 mm
- AdBlue line made from EPDM: minimum 17 mm
- Bundled line sets: minimum 35 mm

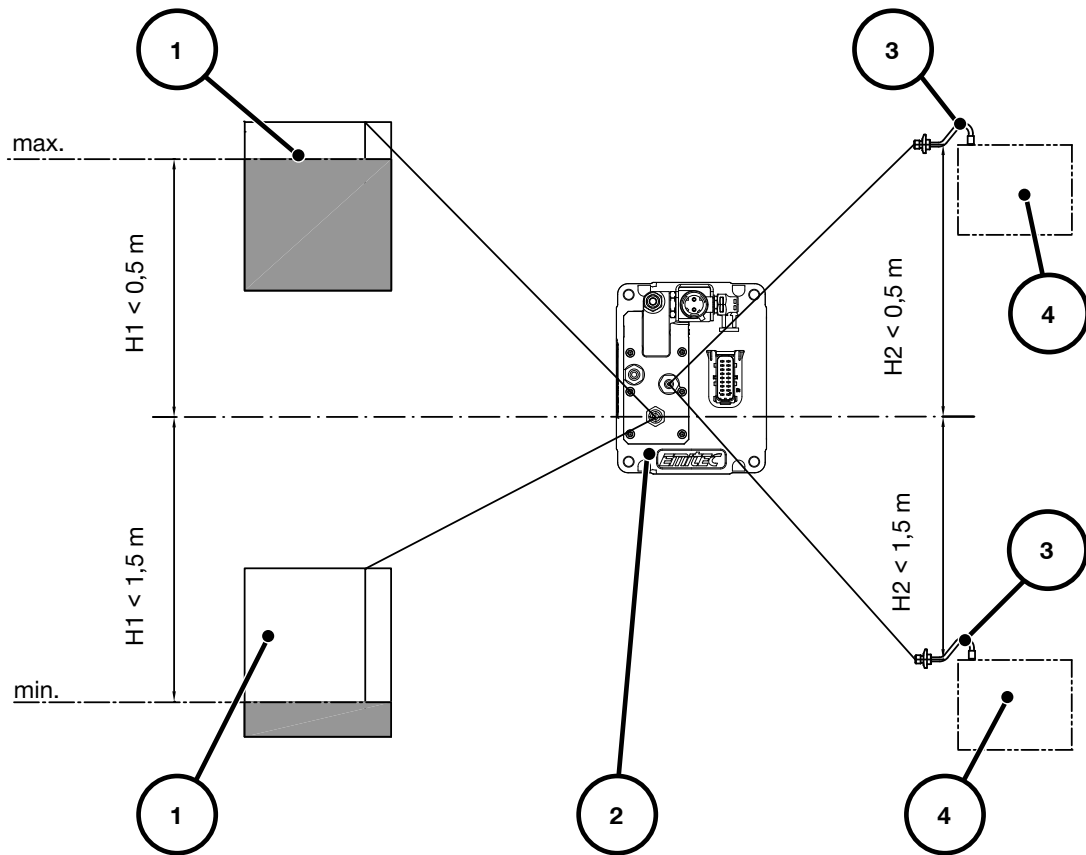
Maximum lengths of hose pipes in AdBlue line sets:

Metering line (between supply module and exhaust silencer):

- max. 1500 mm
- It is recommended that the line descends towards the exhaust silencer along its entire length.
- Deposits may form in the line if it rises.

Lines between supply module and AdBlue tank:

- max. 3,000 mm (only where lines are routed horizontally).
- A difference of + 500 mm / - 1500 mm in height is permissible
- (see Fig. 64-III: Euro 6 supply module, overview of installation)

Fig. 64-III: Euro 6 supply module, overview of installation


T_991_000005_0001_G

- 1) AdBlue tank
- 2) Supply module
- 3) Urea nozzle
- 4) Exhaust silencer

Description of lines in vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard with SCRonly technology:

- The AdBlue suction line from the AdBlue tank to the supply module is bundled, together with a heating water line, to a line set, is covered with corrugated tube and sealed with spring clips at the ends.
- The AdBlue return line from the supply module to the AdBlue tank is bundled, together with a heating water line, to a line set, is covered with corrugated tube and sealed with spring clips at the ends.
- The AdBlue pressure line from the supply module to the metering module is bundled, together with a heating water line, to a line set, is covered with corrugated tube and sealed with spring clips at the ends.
- Modifications to these line sets are not permitted.
- Heating water supply line from engine to water shut-off valve
- Heating water return line from point of separation at the exhaust silencer to engine
 - in vehicles up to 04/2018
Dimensions: 8 x 1 mm, polyamide material
 - in vehicles as of 04/2018
Dimensions: 12.5 x 1.25 mm, polyamide material
- Other heating water supply lines
 - Dimensions: 8 x 1 mm, polyamide material

Minimum bending radii:

- AdBlue pipe sets : minimum 90 mm
- Polyamide heating water lines 8 x 1 mm : minimum 40 mm
- Polyamide heating water lines 12.5 x 1.5 mm: minimum 60 mm

Maximum lengths of lines in the AdBlue line set:

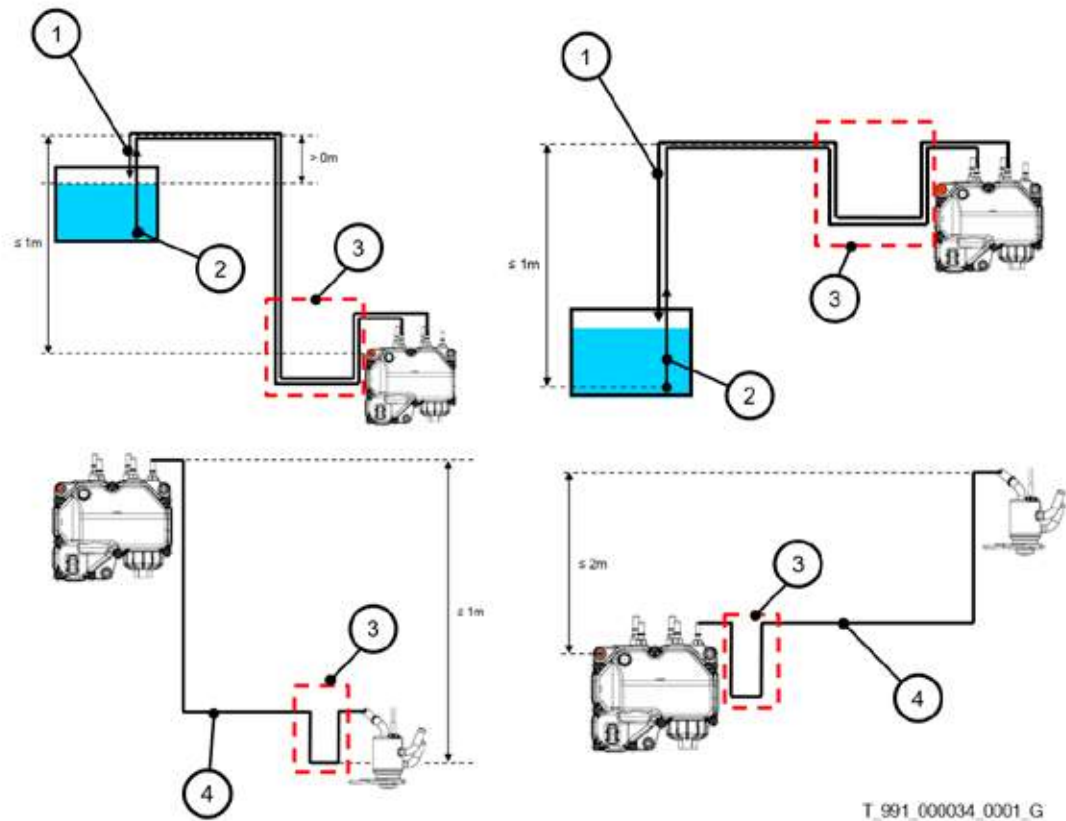
Line sets that carry AdBlue must not be changed. MAN (for address see „Publisher“ above) offers line sets in varying lengths. Information and overview drawings are available from MAN.

Metering line (between supply module and exhaust silencer):

- in vehicles with the supply module installed at the AdBlue tank (short suction line and return line), the maximum length of the polyamide part is 2.4 m.
- in vehicles with the supply module installed at the AdBlue tank (TGL with L/LX/crew cab), all available polyamide parts can be used.
- Metering line must be directed downwards and away from the supply module. Subsequent ascent after a siphon is permitted.

Lines between supply module and AdBlue tank:

- Avoid modifications to the routing of the line between supply module and AdBlue tank
- Should modifications to the line routing be necessary, the following points should be observed:
 - Do not exceed or drop below the heights specified in the installation overview (see Fig. 65-III)
 - Suction line and return line must be directed downwards and away from the supply module. Subsequent ascent after a siphon is permitted.

Fig. 65-III: Installation overview for supply module for Euro 6 with SCR only technology


- 1) Backflow line
- 2) Suction line
- 3) Siphon
- 4) Pressure line

Notes on adapting the line set when relocating the AdBlue tank and supply module:

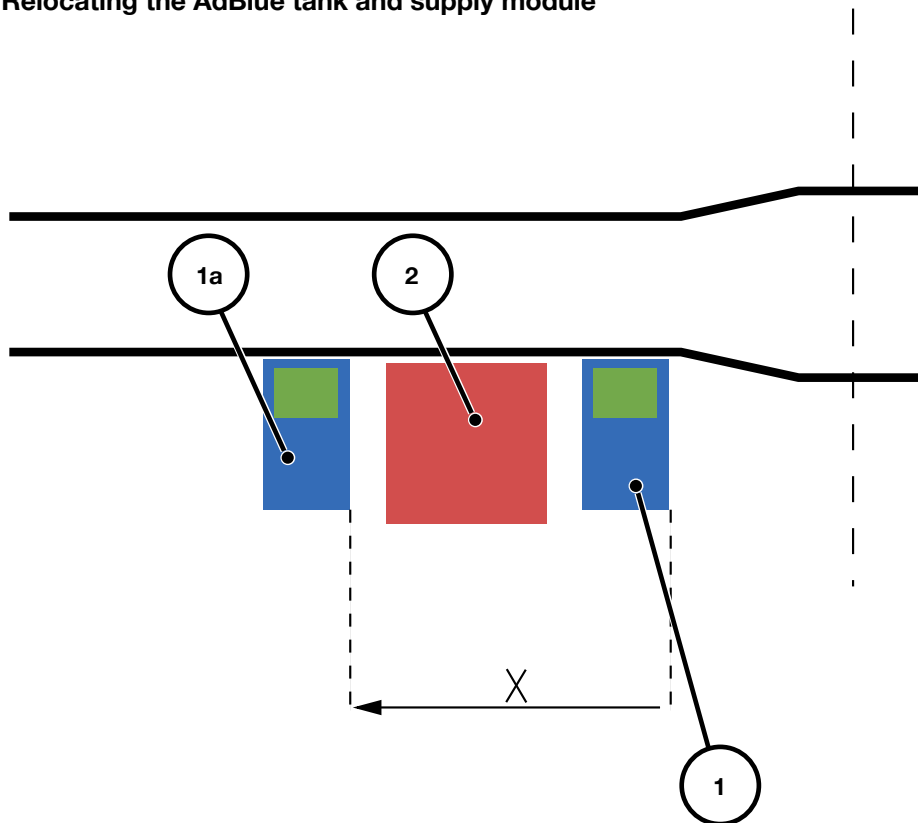
In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

- Relocating the AdBlue tank as described in Section 6.4.2.3 “AdBlue tank”
- Necessary adaptations to the line set
 - Heating-water lines from engine (supply and return)
 - Compressed-air line to supply module
 - Metering line to exhaust silencer (except when section to exhaust silencer remains unchanged)
 - Sheathing by means of Co-flex corrugated tubing system or shortening of existing zip material
- A description of line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.
 - Information on adapting the electrical cable harness can be found in Section 6.4.2.5, “AdBlue cable harness”.

In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology:

- Relocating the AdBlue tank, as described in Chapter 6.4.2.3 “AdBlue tank”
- necessary adaptations to the line set
 - Heating water lines from engine (supply and return lines).
 - Metering line to silencer (except when section to exhaust silencer remains unchanged). Selection of existing line sets. An overview drawing is available from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above)
- The AdBlue tank and supply module need to be relocated together if they are installed in the vehicle as a single unit
 - A description of the heating water line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending/shortening AdBlue and heating water lines”
 - Information on adapting the electrical cable harness can be found in Chapter 6.4.2.5 “AdBlue cable harness”

Fig. 66-III: Relocating the AdBlue tank and supply module



- 1) AdBlue tank and supply module in standard location
- 1a) Relocated AdBlue tank and supply module
- 2) Exhaust silencer
- X) Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

T_991_000006_0001_G

Notes on adapting the line set when relocating the exhaust silencer:

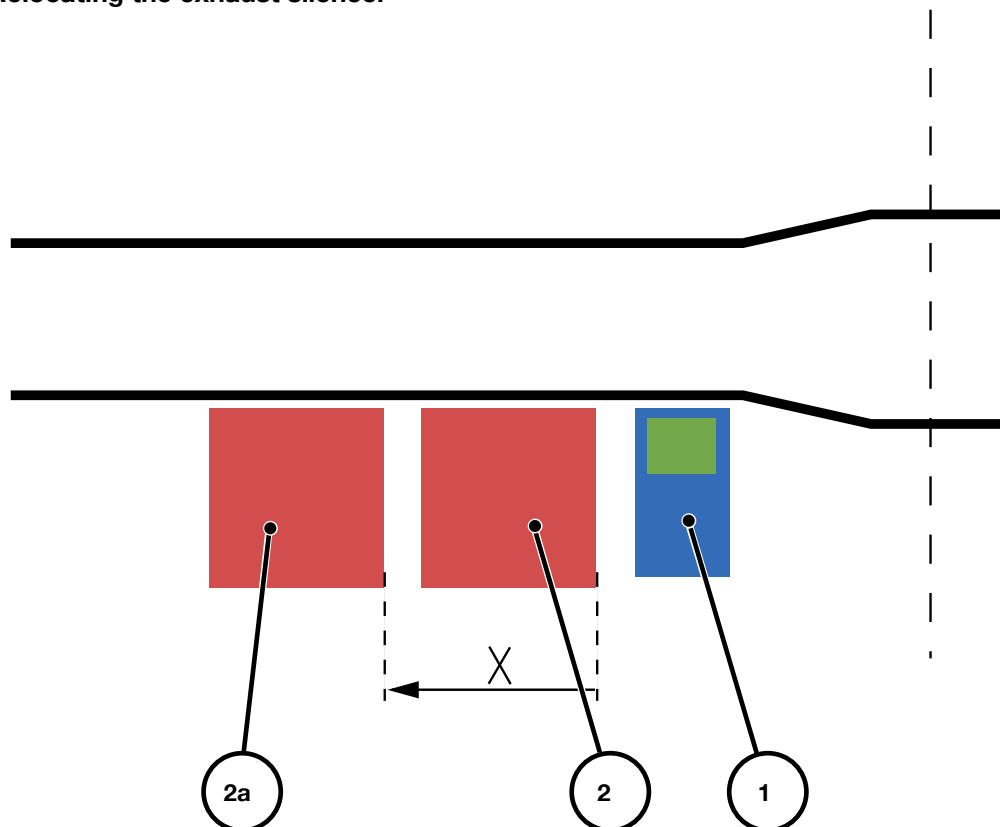
In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

- Relocating the exhaust silencer as described in Section 6.4.2
- Necessary adaptations to the line set
 - Shorten or construct a new metering line from supply module to exhaust silencer.
 - Shorten or construct a new heating-water line to heat the metering line.
 - Sheath the above-mentioned existing lines up to the steel pipe on the exhaust silencer with Co-flex double-walled corrugated tubing system or shorten the existing zip material.
- A description of line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.
- Information on adapting the electrical cable harness can be found in Section 6.4.2.5, “AdBlue cable harness”.

In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology

- Relocating the exhaust silencer, as described in Chapter 6.4.2
 - necessary adaptations to the line set
 - o Metering line to exhaust silencer (except when section to exhaust silencer remains unchanged). Selection of existing line sets. An overview drawing is available from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above)
 - A description of the heating water line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending/shortening AdBlue and heating water lines”
 - Information on adapting the electrical cable harness can be found in Chapter 6.4.2.5 “AdBlue cable harness”

Fig. 67-III: Relocating the exhaust silencer



T_991_000007_0001_G

- 1) AdBlue tank and supply module
- 2) Exhaust silencer in standard location
- 2a) Relocated exhaust silencer
- X) Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

Notes on adapting the line set when relocating the exhaust silencer, AdBlue tank and supply module:

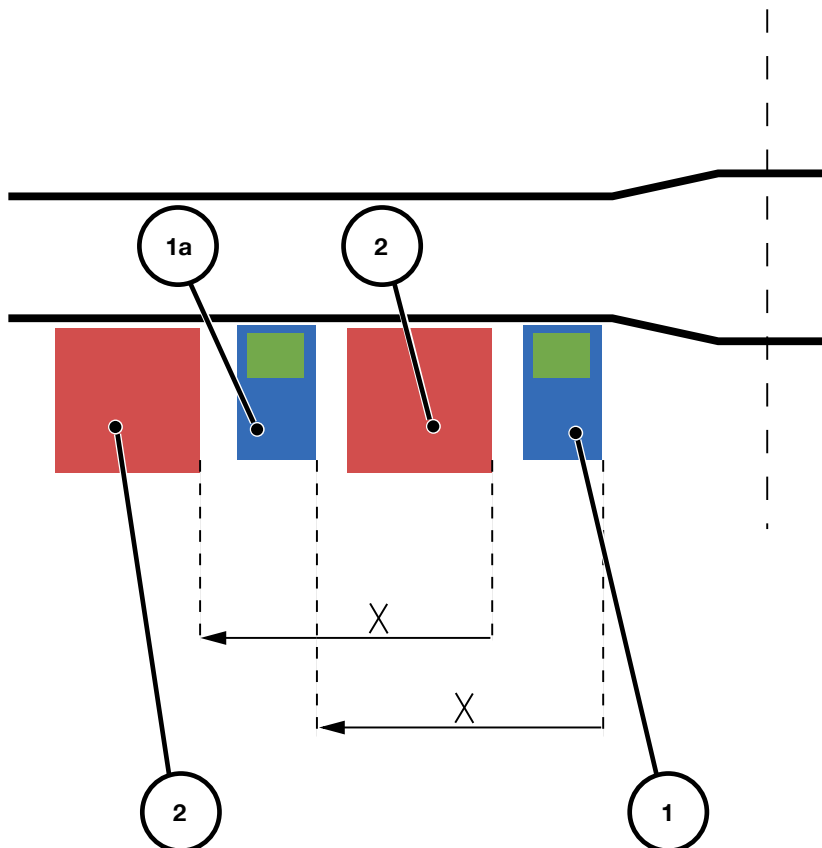
In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

- Relocating the exhaust silencer as described in Section 6.4.2
- Relocating the AdBlue tank as described in Section 6.4.2.3 “AdBlue tank”
- Necessary adaptations to the line set
 - Heating-water lines from engine (supply and return)
 - Compressed-air line to supply module
 - Sheathing by means of Co-flex corrugated tubing system or shortening of existing zip material
- A description of line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set”.
- Electric wiring can be extended at the point of separation (X 3212) with the engine control unit see Section 6.4.2.5 “AdBlue cable harness” (point of separation a).

In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology:

- Relocating the exhaust silencer, as described in Chapter 6.4.2
- Relocating the AdBlue tank, as described in Chapter 6.4.2.3 “AdBlue tank”.
- necessary adaptations to the line set
 - Heating water lines from engine (supply and return lines)
- A description of the heating water line extension can be found in the sub-section headed “Extending/shortening AdBlue and heating water lines”.
- Electric wiring can be extended at the point of separation (X 3212) with the engine control unit, see Chapter 6.4.2.5 “AdBlue cable harness” (point of separation a)

Fig. 68-III: Relocating the exhaust silencer, AdBlue tank and supply module



T_991_000008_0001_G

- 1) AdBlue tank and supply module in standard location
- 1a) Relocated AdBlue tank and supply module
- 2) Exhaust silencer in standard location
- 2a) Relocated exhaust silencer
- X) Distance by which unit is moved; maximum lengths must be observed

Extending / shortening the AdBlue and heating-water lines:

Below is a description of which parts are necessary in order to construct individual lines from the AdBlue line set. The parts can be ordered from the MAN Spare-parts Service.

The individual parts are listed in Section 6.4.2.6 "Parts list". When constructing individual lines, the maximum line lengths specified above must be adhered to.

Additional notes on adapting line sets

In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

- Additional points of separation in the lines of the AdBlue line set are not permitted.
- AdBlue lines must be constructed in a single piece from plug to plug.
- Lines can be obtained by the metre from the MAN Spare-parts Service.
- Do not disassemble the heating-water supply-line plug to the water shut-off valve (Fig. 69-III Connection of heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve). Extension of heating-water supply line only in the area of the polyamide pipe from engine to water shut-off valve.

Fig. 69-III: Connection of heating-water supply line to water shut-off valve



T_154_000023_0001_G

Parts kits for constructing individual lines

- Parts kit for constructing a metering line
 - Metering line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0092)
 - VOSS straight plug (on exhaust silencer) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6036)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on supply module) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6037)
 - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)
- Parts kit for constructing an AdBlue supply line
 - AdBlue line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0092)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6042)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on supply module) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6041)
 - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)
- Parts kit for constructing an AdBlue return line
 - AdBlue line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0092)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on supply module) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6042)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6041)
 - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700004)

III. Chassis

- Parts kit for constructing a heating-water supply line
 - Heating line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0090)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on water shut-off valve) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6015)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6035)
 - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700014)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating-water return line
 - Heating line (by the metre) – (MAN item no.: 04.27405.0090)
 - VOSS straight plug (on engine) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6026)
 - VOSS elbow plug (on AdBlue tank) – (MAN item no.: 81.98180.6035)
 - Oetiker clamps – (Oetiker no.: 16700014)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating line to the water shut-off valve
 - Heating line – polyamide pipe, dimensions 9 x 1.5
 - Straight connector – (MAN item no.: 81.98181.0201)

- Parts kit for constructing a compressed-air line to the water shut-off valve
 - Compressed-air line – polyamide pipe as per DIN 74324 Part 1 or MAN standard M 3230 Part 1
 - Straight connector – (MAN item no.: 81.98181.6043)

- Parts kit for constructing sheathing / insulation
 - Double-walled Co-flex corrugated tubing
 - or zip material (can only be assembled using special tool)

In vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology:

Line sets that carry AdBlue must not be changed. MAN (for address see „Publisher“ above) offers line sets in varying lengths. Information and overview drawings are available from MAN.

Heating water lines that are not routed into line sets can be shortened and extended.

With this in mind, MAN also offers ready-to-use lines in varying lengths. Information and overview drawings are available from MAN.

In vehicles produced prior to 04/2018, the heating water supply line running from the engine to the water shut-off valve and the heating water return line from the point of separation at the silencer to the engine are polyamide pipes and 8 x 1 mm in size. In vehicles produced after 04/2018, a polyamide pipe 12.5 x 1.25 mm in size is used instead. It is possible to convert to the larger cross-section, but bear in mind that both pipes need to be adapted.

- Parts kit for constructing a heating water supply line from the engine to the water shut-off valve
 - For conductor cross-section of 8 x 1 mm
 - Heater pipe (by the metre) – polyamide pipe in acc. with company standard M3319-A-8x1
 - VOSS plug, straight (two-sided) – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6072)

 - For conductor cross-section of 12.5 x 1.25 mm
 - Heater pipe (by the metre) – polyamide pipe in acc. with DIN 73378
 - VOSS plug, straight (two-sided) – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6016)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating water return line from the point of separation at the exhaust silencer to the engine
 - For conductor cross-section of 8 x 1 mm
 - Heater pipe (by the metre) – polyamide pipe in acc. with company standard M3319-A-8x1
 - VOSS plug, straight – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6072)
 - VOSS plug, straight – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6032)

 - For conductor cross-section of 12.5 x 1.25 mm
 - Heater pipe (by the metre) – polyamide pipe in acc. with DIN 73378
 - VOSS plug, straight – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6016)
 - VOSS plug, straight – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6092)

- Parts kit for constructing a heating water supply line from the water shut-off valve to the metering module
 - For conductor cross-section of 8 x 1 mm
 - Heater pipe (by the metre) – polyamide pipe in acc. with company standard M3319-A-8x1
 - VOSS angled connector – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6076)
 - VOSS plug, straight – (MAN item number: 81.98180.6032)
 - VOSS T-connector – (MAN item number: 81.98180.0070)

6.4.2.3 AdBlue tank

This section describes the points to be observed when modifying the AdBlue tank. When relocating AdBlue tanks, the line lengths specified in Section 6.4.2.2 “AdBlue line set” must be adhered to.

Installing a larger AdBlue tank

MAN offers variously sized AdBlue tanks for every model range as equipment variants ex works. Retrofitting a larger AdBlue tank is possible if MAN has approved it for the respective model range. In such cases, professional and correct modification by trained personnel is assumed.

If there is a change in volume to the AdBlue tank, then parameterisation via a MAN service outlet is necessary.

Comply with the MAN repair guidelines.

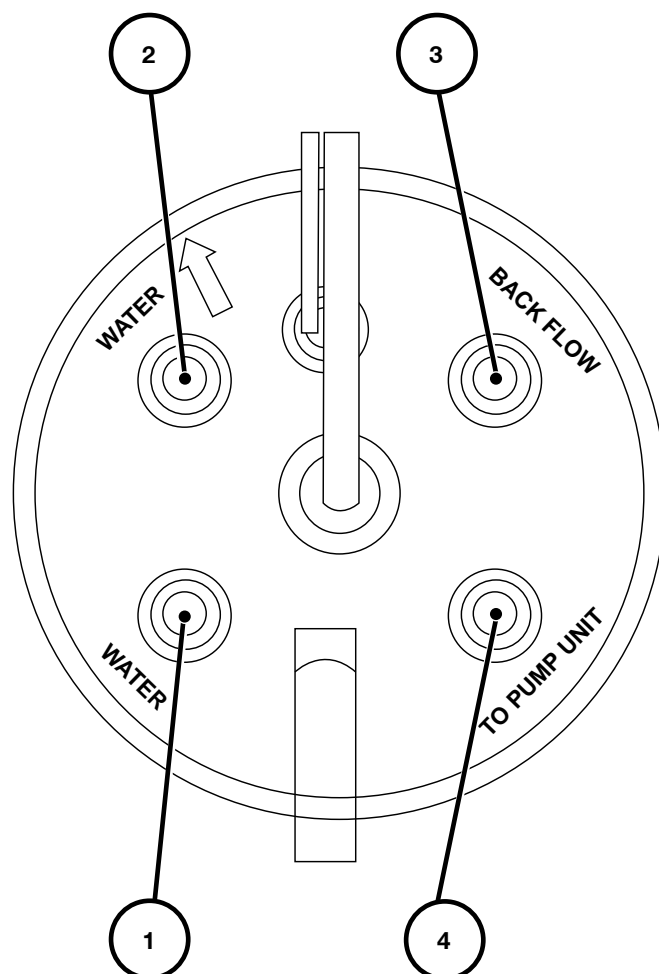
Relocating the AdBlue tank

Depending on the body concept it may be necessary to relocate the AdBlue tank. The section below describes the points to be observed in this regard.

When the AdBlue tank is relocated the original bracket must be employed. If the AdBlue tank is relocated to the frame bend, any possible tilt must be compensated for by spacer sleeves, for example.

AdBlue tanks are equipped with four connections for lines: two (supply and return) for heating water and two (supply and return) for AdBlue. The lines are individually identified as described in the sub-sections below.

Before the vehicle is commissioned it is imperative to make sure that all the lines are correctly connected. If AdBlue enters the coolant it will cause damage to the engine (Fig. 70-III Line connections on the AdBlue tank).

Fig. 70-III: Line connections on the AdBlue tank


T_991_000014_0001_G

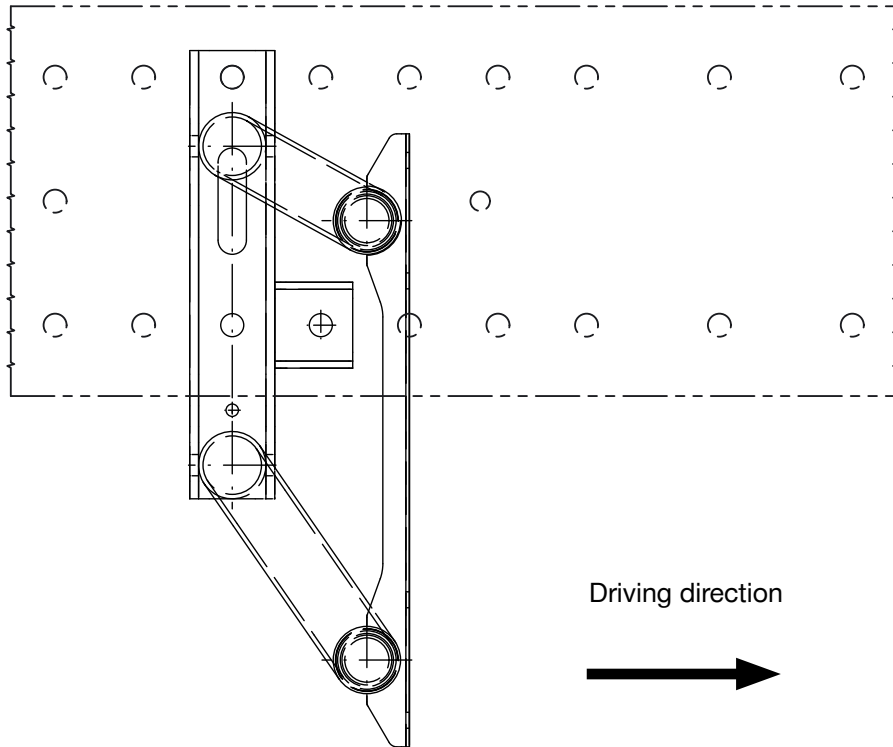
- 1) Heating-water supply
- 2) Heating-water return
- 3) AdBlue return
- 4) AdBlue supply

A description of line adaptation can be found in the sub-section headed „Extending / shortening AdBlue and heating-water lines in the line set“.

The AdBlue tank is fitted on a bracket together with the supply module. Ex works, this bracket is also used for fastening the front mudguard. If the AdBlue tank is relocated it is necessary to attach a new bracket to the corresponding mudguard.

Mudguard pipe-brackets available from the MAN Spare-parts Service may be used for this purpose (Fig. 71-III: Mudguard pipe-bracket). Installation space of approximately 40 mm must be provided for the mudguard pipe-bracket.

Fig. 71-III: Mudguard pipe-bracket



T_612_000001_0001_G

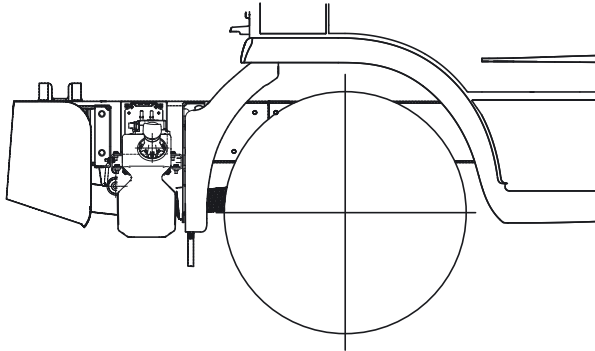
6.4.2.4 AdBlue supply module

This section describes the positions in which the supply module is fitted by the factory and what points must be observed when relocating the supply module.

In the TGL and TGM model ranges, the supply module is fitted by the factory on the same bracket as the AdBlue tank.

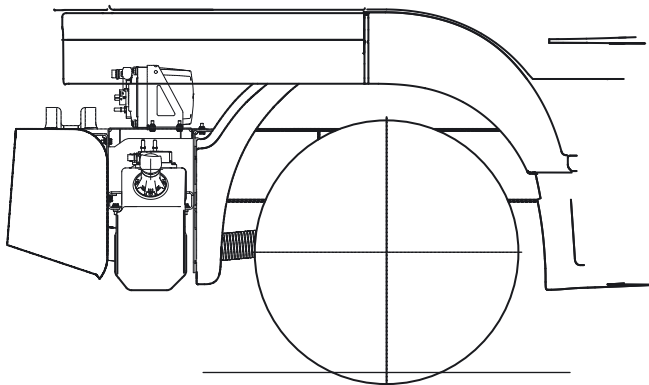
The standard locations are shown in Fig. 72-III to Fig. 74-III below.

Fig. 72-III: Supply module lateral on frame, TGL: C cab, TGM: C/L/LX cab



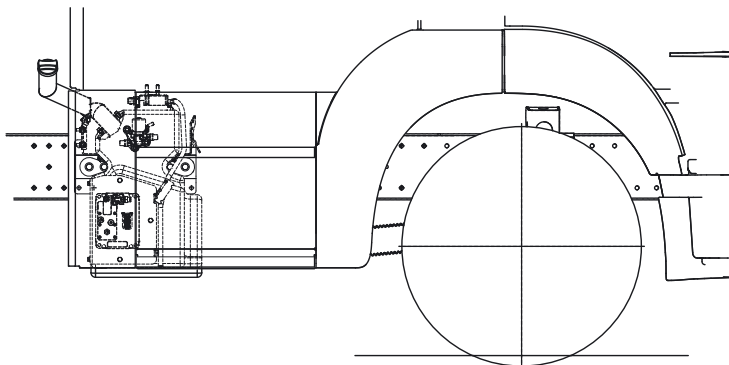
T_154_000006_0001_G

Fig. 73-III: Supply module above frame top edge, TGL: L/LX cab



T_154_000007_0001_G

Fig. 74-III: Supply module on crew cab



T_154_000008_0001_G

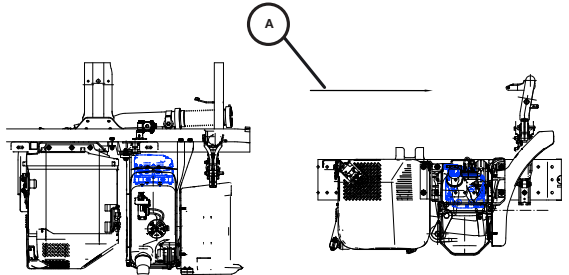
If the supply module is relocated separately from the AdBlue tank, the bodybuilder must provide a bracket for the supply module equivalent to the standard bracket.

Vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology

This section describes the positions in which the supply module is installed ex works and what points must be observed when moving the supply module.

The standard positions are shown below in Fig. 75-III to Fig. 77-III:

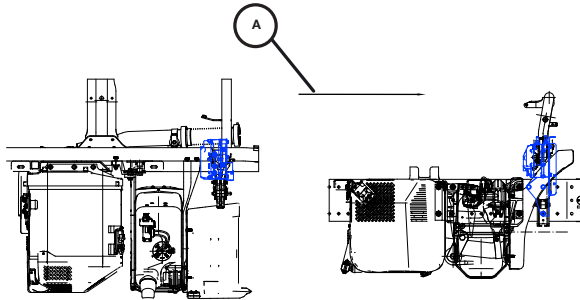
Fig. 75-III: Supply module transverse on frame, TGL: C cab, TGM: C/L/LX cab



T_154_000024_0001_G

A) Direction of travel

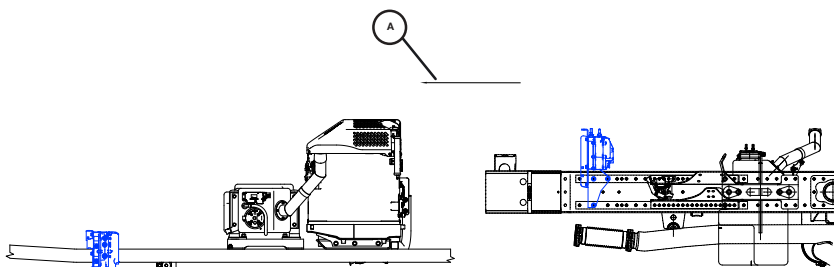
Fig. 76-III: Supply module above top edge of frame, TGL: L/LX cab



T_154_000025_0001_G

A) Direction of travel

Fig. 77-III: Supply module in crew cab



T_154_000026_0001_G

A) Direction of travel

If the supply module is relocated separately from the AdBlue tank, a bracket comparable to a standard product must be developed by the modifier for the supply module. The alignment of the supply module must not be changed.

6.4.2.5 AdBlue cable harness

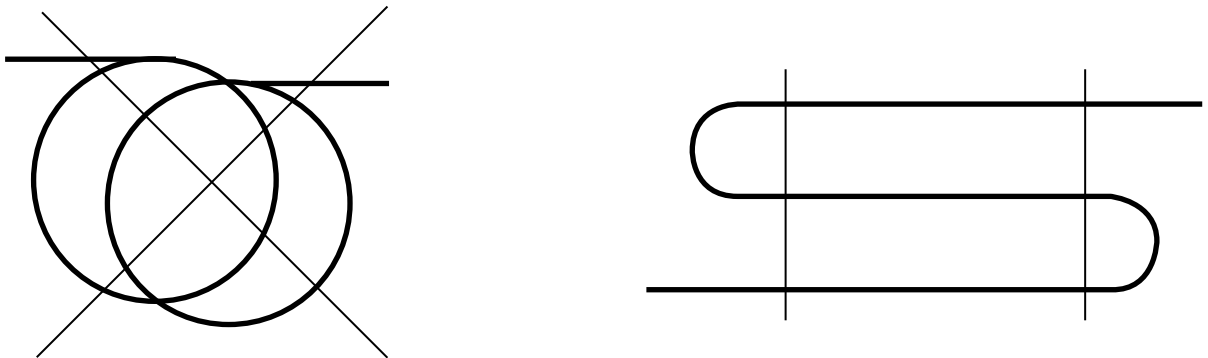
When modifications are made to the AdBlue system it may be necessary to adapt the cable harness.

This section describes the cable harness, possible points of separation and the plug connectors to be used.

The following must be observed for all cable routing:

- Overlengths must not be laid in coil-like rings but only in loops to the side of the cable harness (see Fig. 78-III: Cable routings).

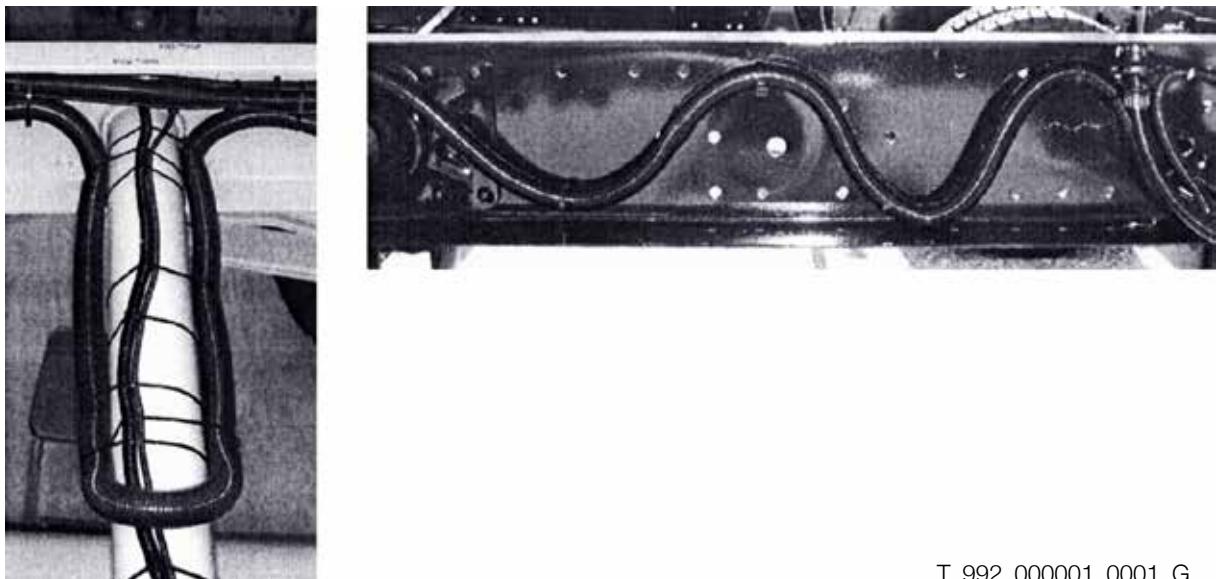
Fig. 78-III: Cable routings



T_998_000003_0001_G

- The cable harness must be secured in such a manner that no movement relative to the frame can occur (danger of chafing). (Fig. 79-III: Routing examples).

Fig. 79-III: Routing examples

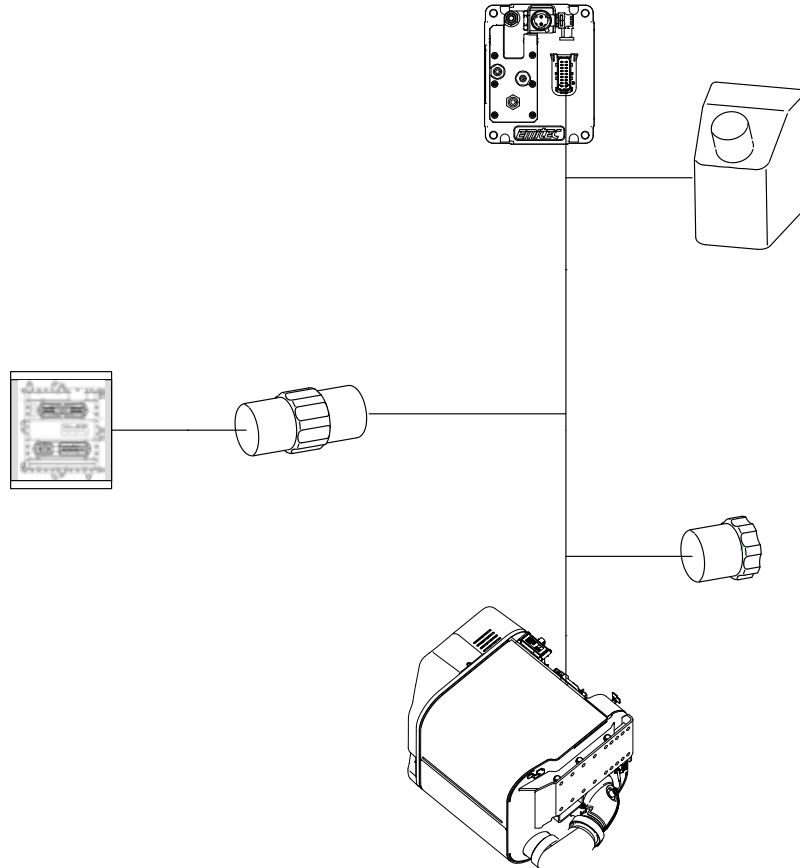


T_992_000001_0001_G

Below is a schematic diagram of the original MAN cable harness (Fig. 80-III: Schematic diagram of cable harness).

Vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

Fig. 80-III: Schematic diagram of cable harness

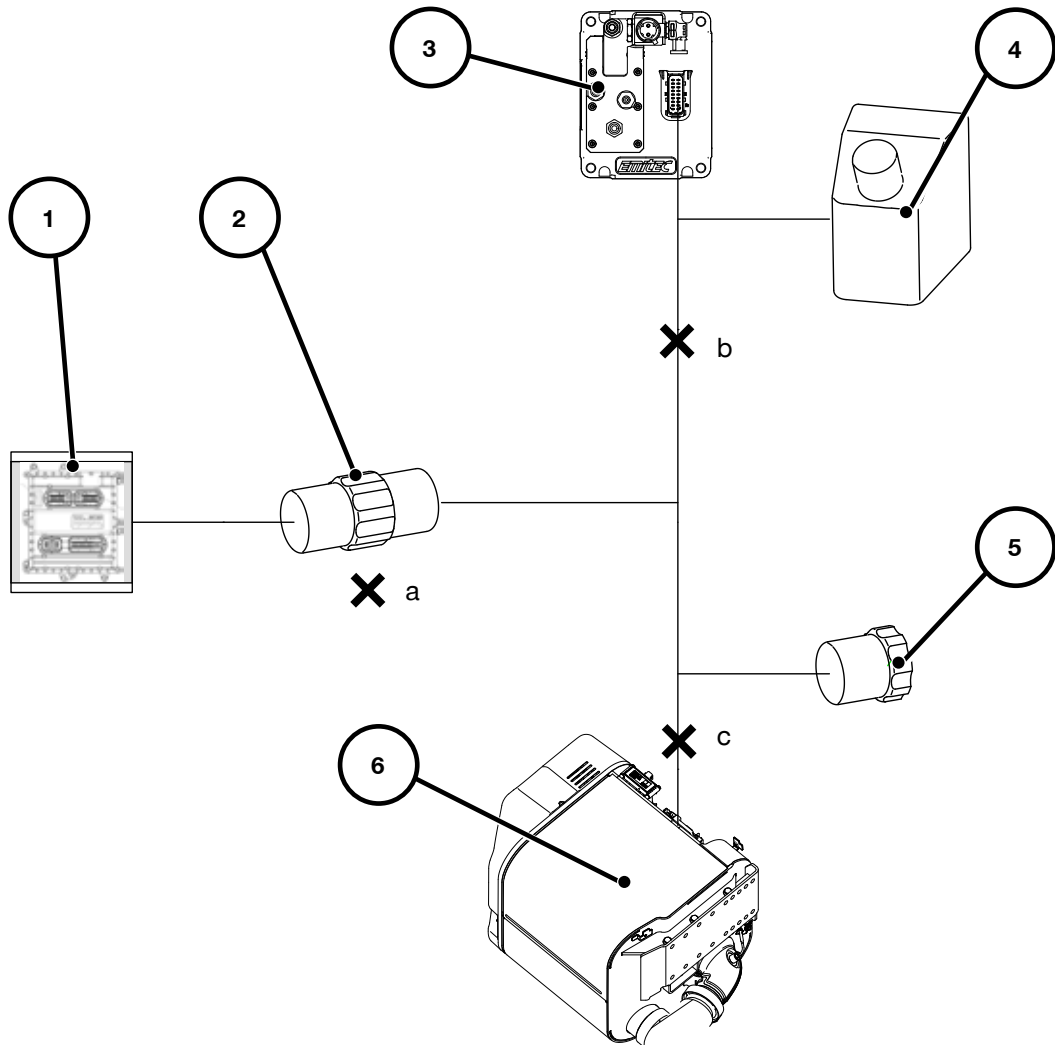


T_991_000015_0001_G

There are permissible options for adapting the cable harness between the engine cable harness and the supply module and exhaust silencer.

One option is to use the longest Genuine MAN cable harness available (MAN item no.: 85.25423.6059, obtainable from the MAN Spare-parts Service). Overlengths can be routed on the chassis frame as described below. Professional and correct installation is assumed in every case.

A second option is to separate the cable harness at the points shown below. Suitable plugs are available from the MAN Spare-parts Service for adapting the lengths of the cable harnesses.

Fig. 81-III: Points of separation


T_991_000019_0001_G

- 1) EDC
 - 2) Point of separation X 3212
 - 3) Supply module
 - 4) AdBlue tank
 - 5) Cable connector to ground
 - 6) Exhaust silencer
- a), b), c) Points of separation

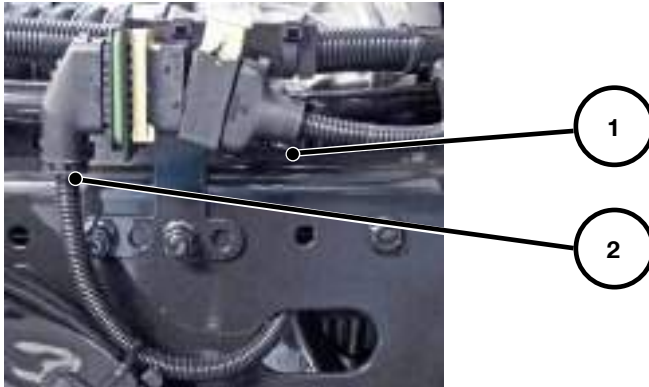
A list of the respective plug connectors with the requisite parts and pin-outs can be found below.

Point of separation a):

- Extension of cable harness on plug connector X3212 on EDC
 - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
 - Remove the plug from the socket on the engine cable harness and insert the extension cable (see Table 20-III: Plug connector X3212 on engine cable harness)

Fig. 82-III: Plug connector X3212 on EDC

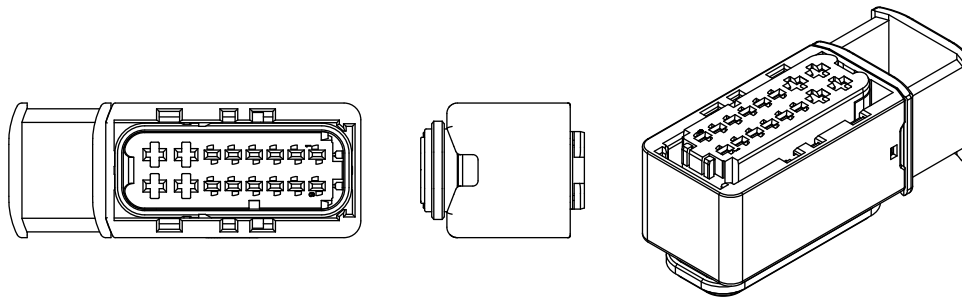
Point of separation between exhaust-cable harness X3212 - bodybuilder's solution 12 + 4-pole BF17 - SF17.



- 1) BF17 Socket housing
- 2) SF17 Pin housing

Table 20-III: Plug connector X3212 on EDC

Socket housing BF17 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0303



Material for BF17 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	BF17	81.25475-0303	Socket housing
1	AW99	81.25433-0293	Corrugated tubing adapter 180°
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR59	81.25433-0176	Slip-in reducer 17-13
10	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
1	DL25	82.25435-0090	Single-lead seal
2	DL26	07.91163-0077	Single-lead seal
1	DL27	07.91163-0065	Single-lead seal
2	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
12	XU61-1<0	07.91201-6025	Contacts (individual goods)
1	XH22-1<0	07.91201-0656	Contacts (individual goods)
2	XH22-2<5	07.91201-0657	Contacts (individual goods)

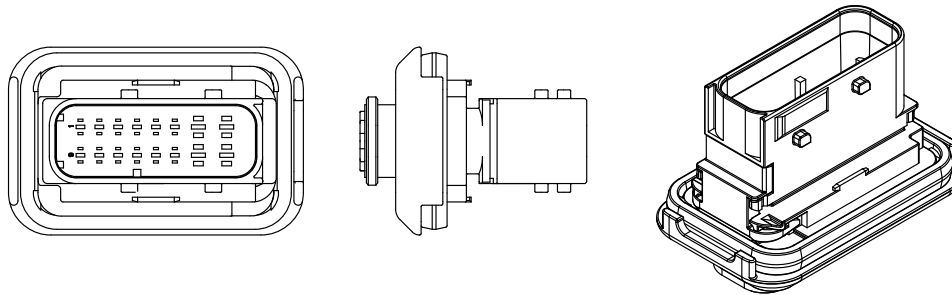
Table 20-III: Plug connector X3212 on EDC - continued

BF17 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90127	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
2	90126	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
3	90147	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
4	90128	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
5	90311	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
6	90321	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
7	90004	1,5	XH22-2<5	DL26
8	31000	1,5	XH22-2<5	DL26
9	15038	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
10	90011	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
11	191	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
12	192	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
13	90008	1	XU61-1<0	DL40
14	31000	1	XU61-1<0	DL40
15	90011	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL25
16	not used	-	-	DL27 (blind plug)

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
1	07.08302-1191	Line FLRYW-2X 0.75-GE-OR-191-192
9	07.08181-0343	Line FLRY-0.75-GEOR
1	07.08181-0576	Line FLRY-1-BRGE
1	07.08181-0506	Line FLRY-1-GE
1	07.08181-0776	Line FLRY-1.5-BRGE
1	07.08181-0706	Line FLRY-1.5-GE
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 10 dia.

Table 20-III: Plug connector X3212 on EDC - continued

Pin housing SF17 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0336



Material for SF17 pin housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	SF17	81.25475-0336	Pin housing
1	AWA2	81.25433-0299	Corrugated tubing adapter 90°
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR59	81.25433-0176	Slip-in reducer 17-13
10	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
1	DL25	82.25435-0090	Single-lead seal
2	DL26	07.91163-0077	Single-lead seal
1	DL27	07.91163-0065	Single-lead seal
2	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
12	XG61-1<0	07.91202-1000	Contacts (individual goods)
1	XG22-1<0	07.91202-0671	Contacts (individual goods)
2	XG22-2<5	07.91202-0672	Contacts (individual goods)
1	GV60	81.25475-0339	Locking slide

SF17 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90127	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
2	90126	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
3	90147	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
4	90128	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
5	90311	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
6	90321	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
7	90004	1,5	XG22-2<5	DL26
8	31000	1,5	XG22-2<5	DL26
9	15038	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
10	90011	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
11	191	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
12	192	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
13	90008	1	XG61-1<0	DL40
14	31000	1	XG61-1<0	DL40
15	90011	0,75	XG22-1<0	DL25
16	not used		XG61-1<0	DL27 (blind plug)

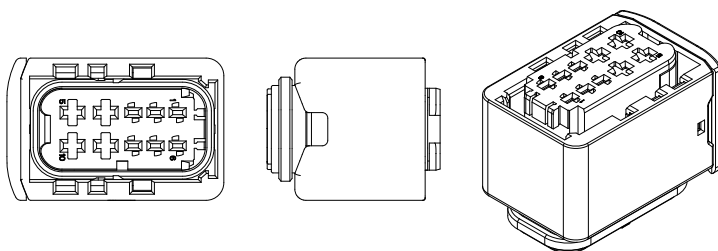
Point of separation b):

- Extension of cable harness to supply module and AdBlue tank
 - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
 - Separate the cable harness at the interface described and construct a cable using the plug and socket described below.
 - (see Table 21-III Plug connector on AdBlue tank and supply module)
 - Insert the extension in the cable harness

Table 21-III: Plug connector on AdBlue tank and supply module

Point of separation between exhaust-silencer cable harness bodybuilder's solution 10(6+4)-pole BF31 - SF31 with pinning adapter in cable harness - branch "Y" and supply module - tank sensor.

Socket housing BF31 MAN item no.: not available / TE Connectivity no.: 1-1564514-1



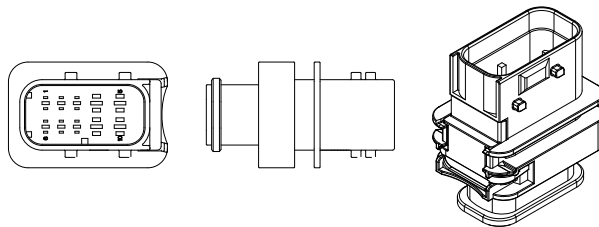
Material for BF31 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
	BF31	81.25475-0334	Socket housing
1	AW94	81.25433-0292	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW13
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer NW13 - NW10
1	AR47	81.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer NW10 - NW8.5
6	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact (individual goods)
1	XH20-1<0	07.91201-0637	Contact (individual goods)
2	XH20-2<5	07.91201-0638	Contact (individual goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	DL25	82.25435-0090	Sealing element
2	DL26	07-91163-0077	Sealing element
1	DL27	07.91163-0065	Blind plug

BF31 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	1,5	XH20-2<5	DL26
5	90008	1	XH20-1<0	DL25
6	90311	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	90321	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	15038	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
9	90004	1,5	XH20-2<5	DL26
10	not used	-	-	DL27 (blind plug)

Table 21-III: Plug connector on AdBlue tank and supply module - continued

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
1	07.08302-1191	Line FLRYW-2X 0.75-GE-OR-191-192
1	07.08181-0385	Line FLRY-0.75-BROR
3	07.08181-0343	Line FLRY-0.75-GEOR
1	07.08181-0506	Line FLRY-1-GE
1	07.08181-0776	Line FLRY-1.5-BRGE
1	07.08181-0706	Line FLRY-1.5-GE
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 8.5 dia.

Socket housing SF31 MAN item no.: not available / TE Connectivity no.: 1-1564516-1



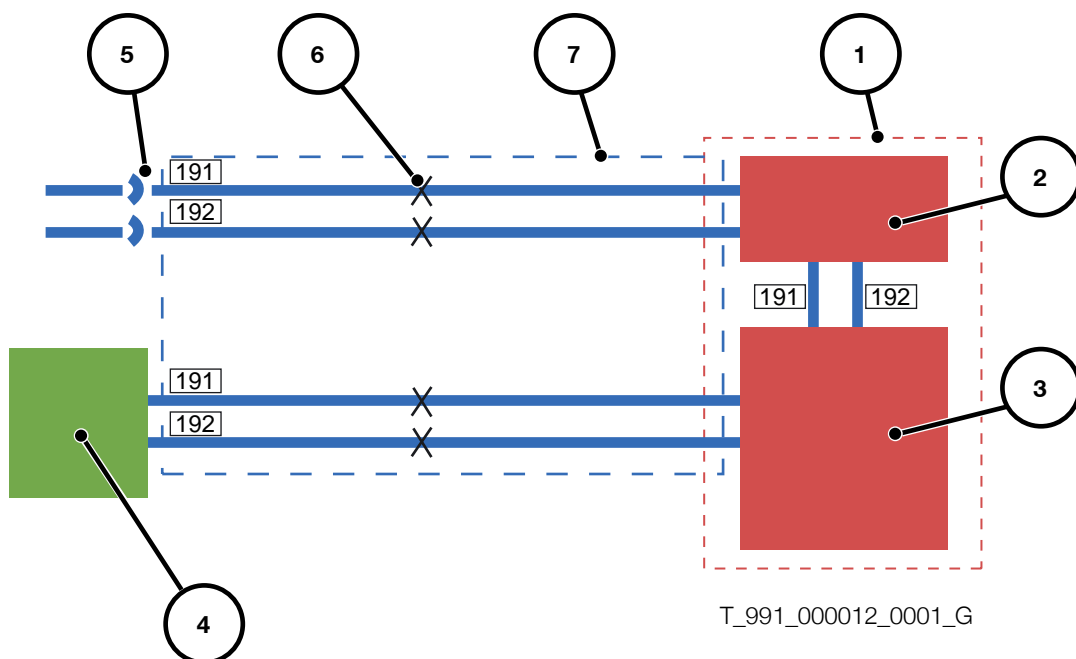
Material for SF31 pin housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	SF31	81.25475-0335	Pin housing
1	AW94	81.25433-0292	Adapter HDSCS D-180° - NW13
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer NW13 - NW10
1	AR47	81.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer NW10 - NW8.5
1	GV59	81.25475-0338	Locking slide size: "D" yellow
6	XG60-1<0	07.91201-0216	Contact (volume goods)
1	XG20-1<0	07.91202-0603	Contact (individual goods)
2	XG20-2<5	07.91202-0604	Contact (individual goods)
6	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	DL25	82.25435-0090	Sealing element
2	DL26	07-91163-0077	Sealing element
1	DL27	07.91163-0065	Blind plug

SF31 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
2	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
3	31000	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	1,5	XG20-2<5	DL26
5	90008	1	XG20-1<0	DL25
6	90311	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
7	90321	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
8	15038	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
9	90004	1,5	XG20-2<5	DL26
10	not used	-	-	DL27 (blind plug)

Point of separation c):

- Extension of cable harness to exhaust silencer
 - Construct the extension by means of the following cables, plug and socket.
 - Separate the cable harness at the interface described and construct a cable using the plug and socket described below.
 - (see Table 22-III: Plug connector on exhaust silencer)
 - When pinning-out plug and socket, ensure that the CAN lines are not transposed.
 - Separate and mark each CAN line individually because line 191 and line 192 are both present twice at this point of separation. (see Fig. 83-III: CAN data bus lines at the point of separation on the exhaust silencer).
 - Insert the extension in the cable harness.

Fig. 83-III: CAN data bus lines at the point of separation on the exhaust silencer



- 1) Exhaust silencer
- 2) NO_x sensor
- 3) Thermocouple with evaluation electronics
- 4) AdBlue supply module
- 5) Point of separation on EDC
- 6) Cable-harness points of separation
- 7) Cable-harness sheathing

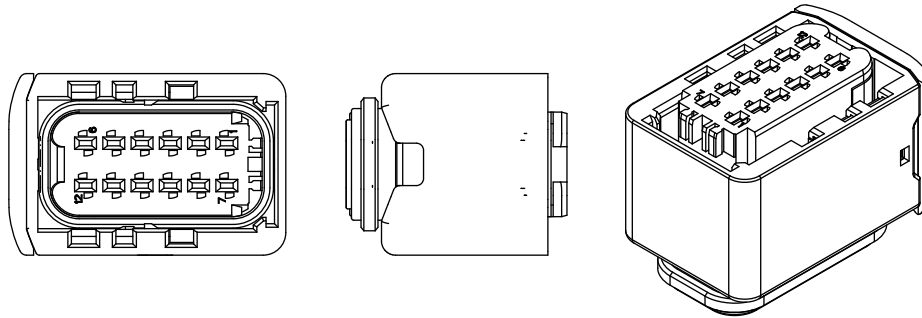
Table 22-III: Plug connector on exhaust silencer

Point of separation between exhaust-silencer cable harness and exhaust-silencer socket (BF15) and plug (SF15) – 12-pole.

Important:

When pinning out plug and socket, ensure that the CAN lines 191 and 192 on Pins 1 and 2 are not transposed with CAN lines 191 and 192 on Pins 11 and 12!

Socket housing BF15 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0283



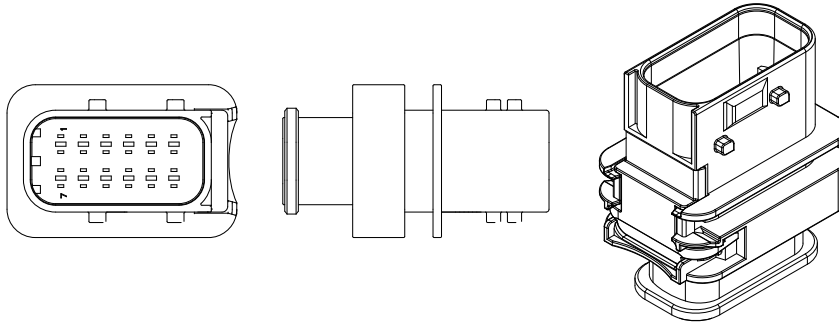
Material for BF15 socket housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	BF15	81.25475-0283	Socket housing
12	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact 0.75 mm ²
12	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	AW94	81.25433-0292	Corrugated tubing adapter NW13
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer NW13-NW10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer NW10-NW8.5

BF15 socket housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	90126	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	90147	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	90128	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	90127	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
9	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
10	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
11	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
12	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11

Material for cable set		
Qty.	MAN part no.	Material / line
1	07.08302-1191	Line FLRYW-2X 0.75-GE-OR-191-192
8	07.08181-0343	Line FLRY-0.75-GEOR
2	07.08181-0385	Line FLRY-0.75-BROR
1	04.37135-9938	Corrugated tube 8.5 dia.

Table 22-III: Plug connector on exhaust silencer - continued

Point of separation between exhaust-silencer cable harness and exhaust-silencer plug (SF15) – 12-pole.

Pin housing SF15 MAN item no.: 81.25475-0285


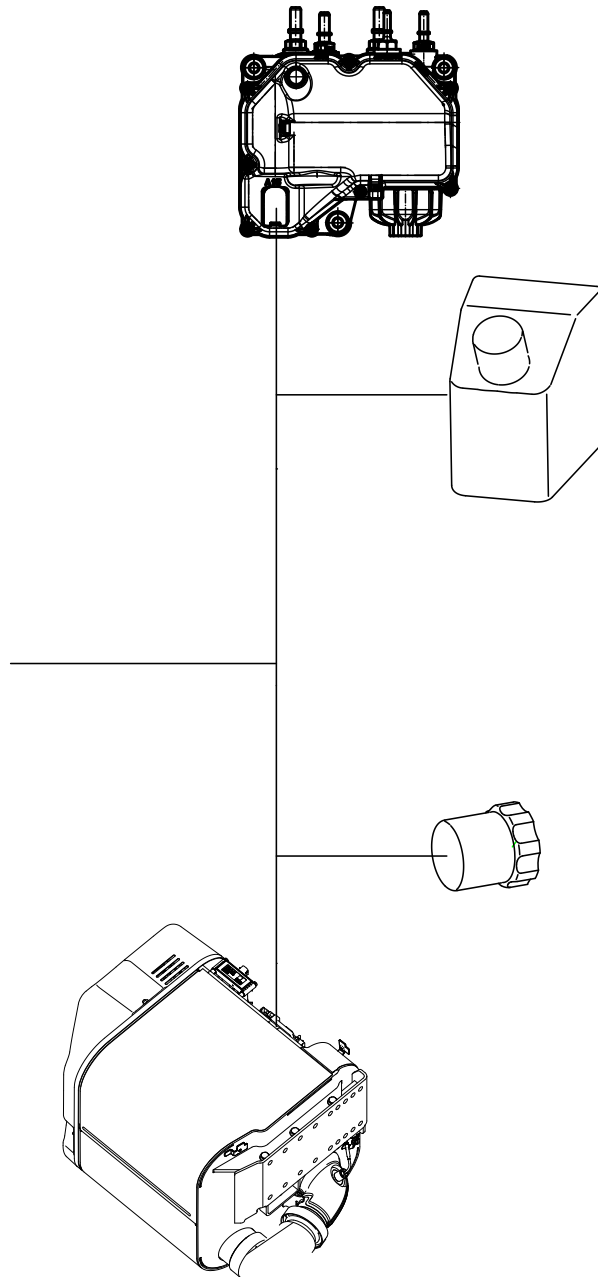
Material for SF15 pin housing			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN part no.	Part designation
1	SF15	81.25475-0285	Pin housing
12	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Contact 0.75 mm ²
12	DL11	07.91163-0069	Sealing element
1	AW94	81.25433-0292	Corrugated tubing adapter NW13
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer NW13-NW10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer NW10-NW8.5

SF15 pin housing pin-out				
PIN	Manager	Cross-section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	90126	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	90147	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	90128	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	90127	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
9	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
10	31000	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
11	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
12	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11

Vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology

Below is a schematic diagram of the original MAN cable harness(Fig. 84-III Schematic diagram of cable harness)

Fig. 84-III: Schematic diagram of cable harness

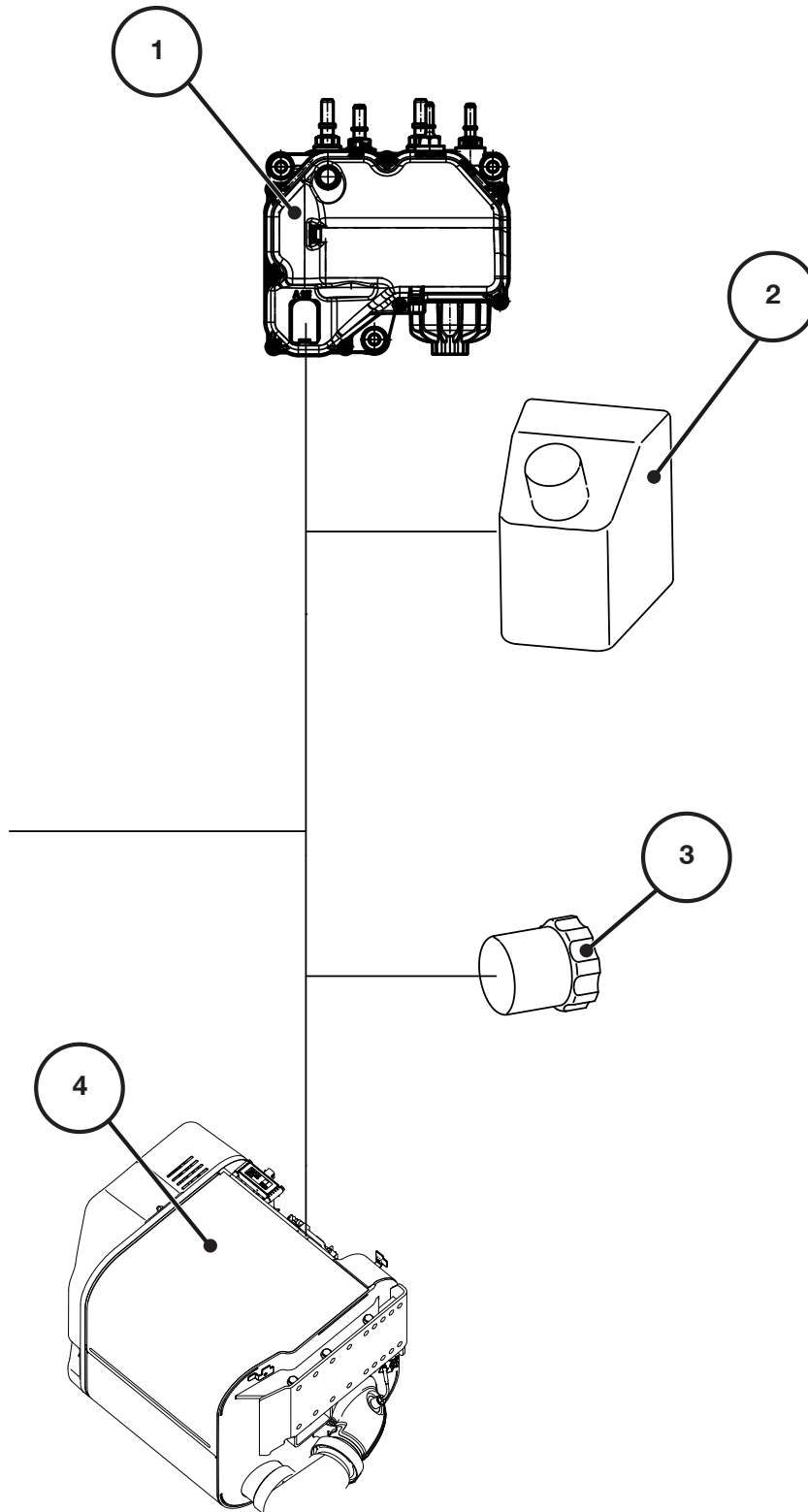


T_991_000025_0001_G

In vehicles with SCRonly technology, the exhaust gas cable harness has been integrated into the main cable harness.

To adapt the electrical cable harness, it is possible to use the points of separation at the exhaust silencer, AdBlue supply module and AdBlue tank units. Suitable plugs are available from the MAN Spare Parts service for adapting the lengths of the cable harnesses.

Fig. 85-III: Points of separation



T 991 000026 0001 G

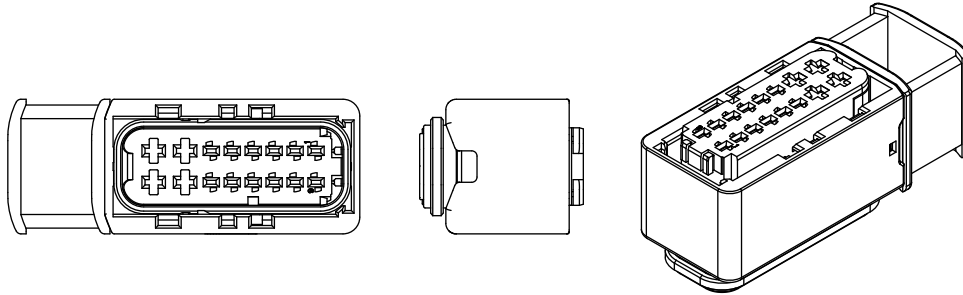
- 1) Supply module
- 2) AdBlue tank
- 3) Cable connector to earth
- 4) Exhaust silencer

A list of the respective plug connectors with the requisite parts and pin-outs can be found below.

Table 23-III: Plug connector on exhaust silencer

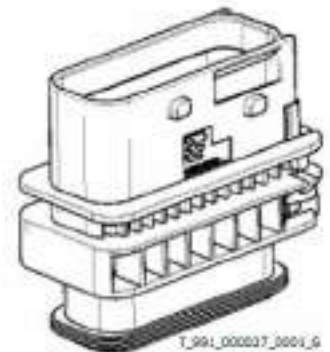
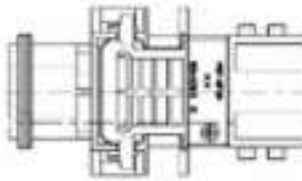
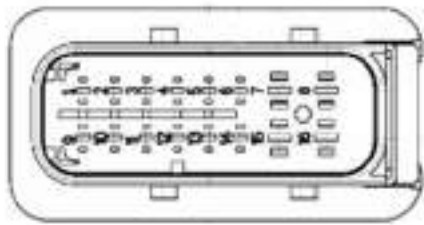
Point of separation at exhaust cable harness to exhaust silencer plug (SF15) – 12-pin

BF 17 socket housing MAN item number: 81.25475-303



Exhaust silencer			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	BF17	81.25475-0303	Steckgehäuse
1	AW99	81.25433-0293	Wellrohradapter gerade
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Einlegereduzierung 13-10
1	AR62	81.25424-0043	Reduzierstück 17-13
11	DL11	07.91163-0069	Einzeladerabdichtung
4	DL27	07.91163-0065	Einzeladerabdichtung
1	DL40	07.91163-0086	Einzeladerabdichtung
12	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Steckhülse

BF 17 socket housing pin-out exhaust silencer				
PIN	Calble	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90127	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
2	90126	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	90147	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	90128	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
5	90327	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
6	90326	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
7	Free			DL27 (blind plug)
8	Free			DL27 (blind plug)
9	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
10	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
11	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
12	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
13	90011	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
14	31000	1,00	XU60-1<0	DL40
15	Free			DL27 (blind plug)
16	Free			DL27 (blind plug)

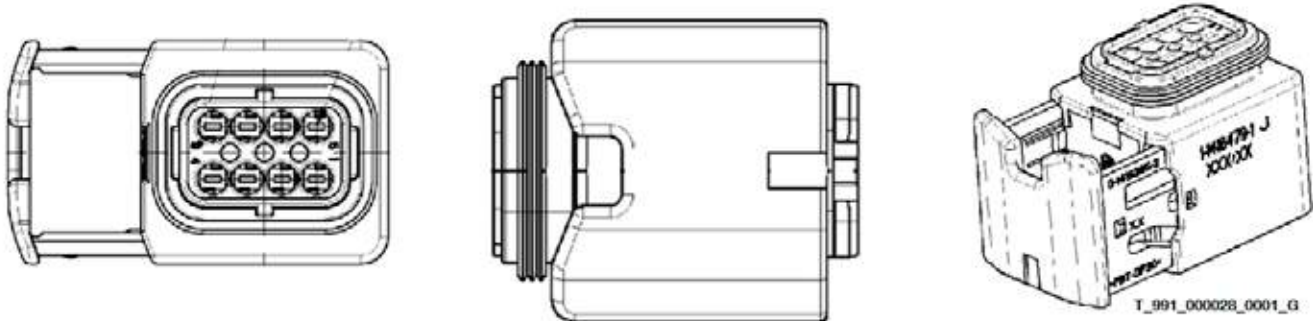
Table 24-III: Mating plug connector on exhaust silencer
SF 17 pin housing MAN item number: 81.25475-0397


Exhaust silencer (mating connector)			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	SF18	81.25475-0397	Plug housing
1	AW99	81.25433-0293	Corrugated tubing adapter, straight
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR62	81.25424-0043	Reducing coupling 17-13
4	DL10	07.91163-0068	Single-lead seal
11	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
1	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
12	XG61-1<0	07.91202-1000	Blade terminal

SF18 pin housing pin-out exhaust silencer				
PIN	Cable	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90127	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
2	90126	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
3	90147	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
4	90128	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
5	90327	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
6	90326	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
7	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
8	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
9	192	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
10	191	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
11	192	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
12	191	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
13	90011	0,75	XG61-1<0	DL11
14	31000	1,00	XG61-1<0	DL40
15	frei			DL10 (Blindstopfen)
16	frei			DL10 (Blindstopfen)

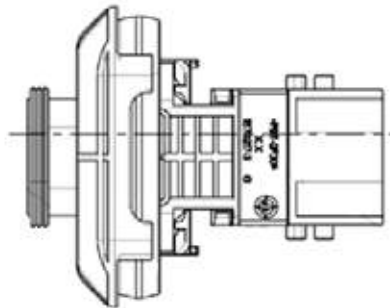
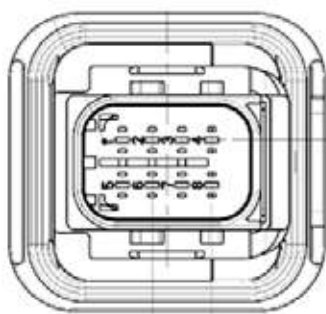
Table 25-III: Plug connector on AdBlue tank pick-up

BF 14 socket housing MAN item number: 81.25475-0282



AdBlue tank pick-up			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	BF14	81.25475-0282	Plug housing
1	AWA3	81.25433-0297	Angle adapter, 90°
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer 10-8.5
2	DL10	07.91163-0068	Single-lead seal
4	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
2	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
6	XU60-1<0	07.91201-6020	Socket

BF14 socket housing pin-out AdBlue tank pick-up				
PIN	Cable	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90008	1	XU60-1<0	DL40
2	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	1	XU60-1<0	DL40
5	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
6	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
7	191	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11
8	192	0,75	XU60-1<0	DL11

Table 26-III: Mating plug connector on AdBlue tank pick-up
SF14 socket housing MAN item number: 81.25475-0299


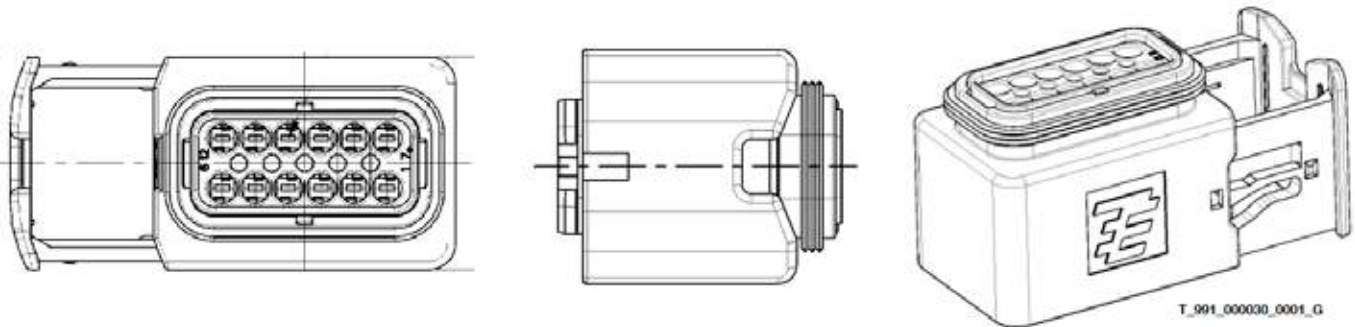
AdBlue tank pick-up (mating connector)			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	SF14	81.25475-0299	Plug housing
1	AWA3	81.25433-0297	Angle adapter, 90° *
1	AW99	81.25433-0293	Corrugated tubing adapter, straight *
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer 10-8.5
2	DL10	07.91163-0068	Single-lead seal
4	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
2	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
6	XG60-1<0	07.91201-0255	Blade terminal

* optional

SF14 socket housing pin-out AdBlue tank pick-up				
PIN	Cable	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	90008	1	XG60-1<0	DL40
2	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
3	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
4	31000	1	XG60-1<0	DL40
5	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
6	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
7	191	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
8	192	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11

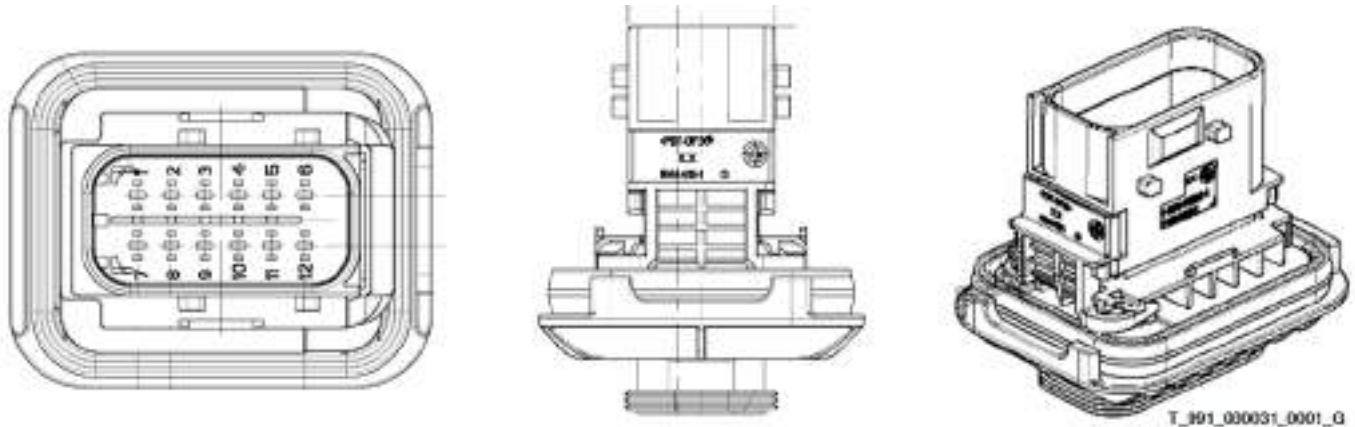
Table 27-III: Plug connector on AdBlue supply module

BF16 socket housing MAN item number: 81.25475-0284



Supply module			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	BF16	81.25475-0284	Plug housing
1	AWA1	81.25433-0298	Angle adapter, 90°
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer 10-8.5
4	DL10	07.91163-0068	Single-lead seal
4	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
4	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
4	XU61-1<5	07.91201-6030	Socket (individual goods)
4	XU61-1<0	07.91201-6025	Socket

BF14 socket housing pin-out supply module				
PIN	Cable	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
2	90521	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
3	90523	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
4	90522	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
5	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
6	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
7	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
8	90525	1,5	XU61-1<5	DL40
9	90524	1,5	XU61-1<5	DL40
10	90520	0,75	XU61-1<0	DL11
11	90531	1,5	XU61-1<5	DL40
12	90532	1,5	XU61-1<5	DL40

Table 28-III: Mating plug connector on AdBlue supply module
SF16 socket housing MAN item number: 81.25475-0462


Supply module (mating connector)			
Qty.	MAN code	MAN item number	Part designation
1	SF21	81.25475-0462	Pin housing with flange
1	AWA1	81.25433-0298	Angle adapter, 90° *
1	AW99	81.25433-0293	Corrugated tubing adapter, straight *
1	AR17	81.25433-0118	Slip-in reducer 13-10
1	AR47	88.25433-0006	Slip-in reducer 10-8.5
4	DL10	07.91163-0068	Single-lead seal
4	DL11	07.91163-0069	Single-lead seal
4	DL40	07.91163-0086	Single-lead seal
4	XG60-1<5	07.91202-1200	Blade terminal (volume goods)
4	XG60-1<0	07.91201-0255	Blade terminal

*optional

SF14 pin housing pin-out supply module				
PIN	Cable	Cross section mm ²	Contact	Sealing element
1	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
2	90521	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
3	90523	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
4	90522	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
5	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
6	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
7	Free			DL10 (blind plug)
8	90525	1,5	XG60-1<5	DL40
9	90524	1,5	XG60-1<5	DL40
10	90520	0,75	XG60-1<0	DL11
11	90531	1,5	XG60-1<5	DL40
12	90532	1,5	XG60-1<5	DL40

6.4.2.6 Parts list

Vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard:

Table 29-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines

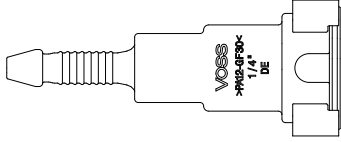
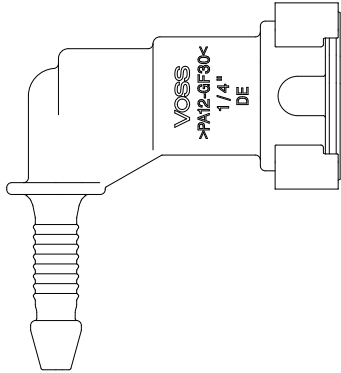
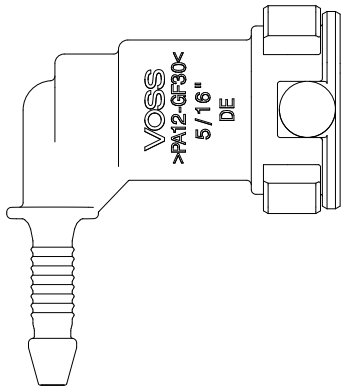
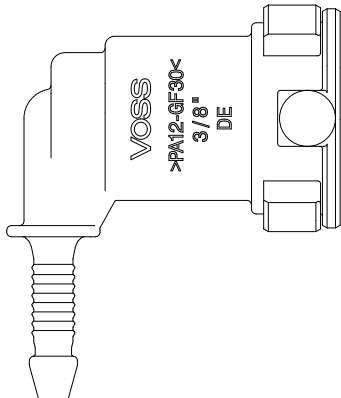
Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
 <p>Voss straight plug illustration showing a threaded end and a connector end. The connector end is labeled with 'VOSS >PA12-GF30< 1/4" DE'.</p>	81.98180.6036	TGL TGM	Voss straight plug SAE 1/4" NW3	AdBlue lines
 <p>Voss elbow plug illustration showing a 90-degree elbow. The connector end is labeled with 'VOSS >PA12-GF30< 1/4" DE'.</p>	81.98180.6037	TGL TGM	Voss elbow plug SAE 1/4" NW3	AdBlue lines
 <p>Voss elbow plug illustration showing a 90-degree elbow. The connector end is labeled with 'VOSS >PA12-GF30< 5/16" DE'.</p>	81.98180.6042	TGL TGM	Voss elbow plug SAE J 2044 5/16" NW3	AdBlue lines
 <p>Voss elbow plug illustration showing a 90-degree elbow. The connector end is labeled with 'VOSS >PA12-GF30< 3/8" DE'.</p>	81.98180.6041	TGL TGM	Voss elbow plug SAE J 2044 3/8" NW3	AdBlue lines

Table 29-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines - continued

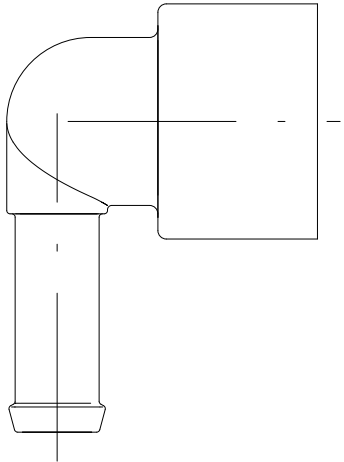
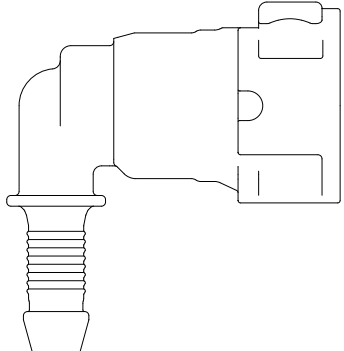
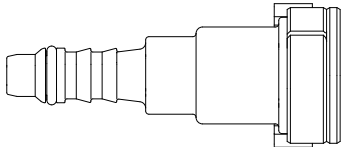
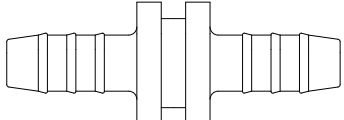
Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98180.6015	TGL TGM	Elbow plug PS3 NW 12	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6035	TGL TGM	Voss elbow plug SAE 9,89 NW6	Heating-water lines
	81.98180.6026	TGL TGM	Voss straight plug SAE J 2044 5/16" NW6	Heating-water lines
	81.98181.0201	TGL TGM	Connector for polyamide pipe 9 x 1,5	Heating-water lines

Table 29-III: Overview of individual parts for extending lines - continued

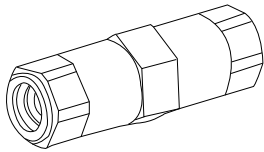
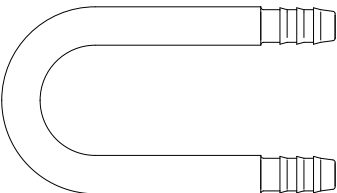






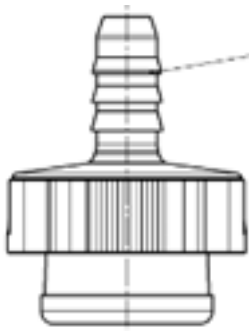
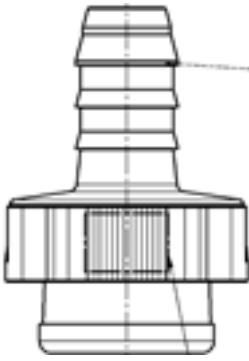


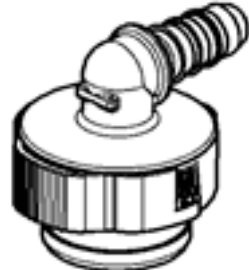

Illustration	MAN part no.	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98181.6043	TGL TGM	plug connector for polyamide pipe 6 x 1	Compressed-air line to supply module
	VOSS-Nr. 5481021600	TGL TGM	180° pipe elbow	Heating-water lines
	OETIKER-Nr. 16700004	TGL TGM	Stepless ear clamp	AdBlue lines
	51.97440-0171	TGL TGM	Stepless ear clamp	Heating-water lines
			Sheathing, Co-flex Type Typ 26/32	Insulation on line sets
	04.27405.0090	TGL TGM	6 x 3 EPDM hose	Heating-water lines
	04.27405.0092	TGL TGM	3,2 x 2,65 EPDM hose	AdBlue lines
	04.35160.9709		Polyamide pipe as per DIN 74324 9 x 1,5	Heating-water lines

Table 30-III: Vehicles with Euro 6 emission standard and SCRonly technology

Figure	MAN item number	Series	Designation	Use
	81.98180.6072	TGL TGM	Voss plug, straight SV246 NX NG12 NW6	Heating water lines- Polyamide pipe 8x1
	51.98180.6016	TGL TGM	Voss plug, straight SV246 NX NG12 NW10	Heating water lines Polyamide pipe 12,5x1,25
	81.98180.6032	TGL TGM	Voss plug, straight SAE J2044 5/16" NW6	Heating water lines Polyamide pipe 8x1
	81.98180.0070	TGL TGM	Voss T-piece SV246 NG8 NW6 NW6	Heating water lines Polyamide pipe 8x1
	81.98180-6076	TGL TGM	Voss angled connector SV246 NX NG12 NW6 90°	Heating water lines Polyamide pipe 8x1
	81.98180-6092	TGL TGM	Voss plug, straight SAE J2044 5/16" NW10	Heating water lines- Polyamide pipe 12,5x1,25

6.5 Gearbox and propshafts

6.5.1 Basic principles

The gearbox converts the engine torque and speed to meet the momentary demand for tractive force. Propshafts are installed to transmit the engine output from the gearbox to the transfer case and/or the final drives. Their movable splines compensate for vertical movements of the axles.

Warning notice

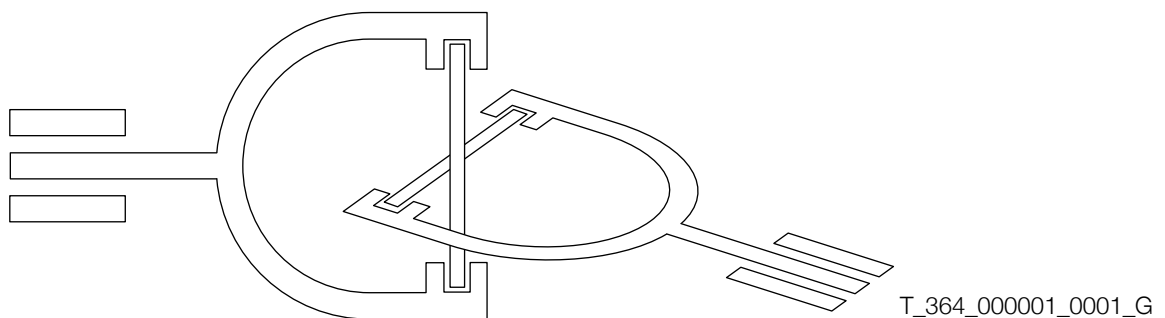
Propeller shafts close to where persons move or work must be encased or covered. Depending on the local legislation in the country of assignment the assembly of a safety attachment or arrester bracket can be necessary for the shaft.

Propshafts are implemented in various ways.

Single joint

When a single cardan joint, universal joint or ball joint (see Fig. 86-III) is rotated uniformly whilst bent it results in a non-uniform movement on the output side. This non-uniformity is often referred to as cardan error. Cardan error causes sinusoidal-like fluctuations in rotational speed on the output side. The output shaft leads and lags the input shaft. Despite constant input torque and input power, the output torque of the propshaft fluctuates according to the lead or lag.

Fig. 86-III: Single joint



T_364_000001_0001_G

The acceleration and delay occurring twice for each rotation mean that this kind of propeller shaft cannot be used for attachment to a power take-off.

A single joint is feasible only if it can be proven without doubt that because of the:

- mass moment of inertia,
- Speed
- angle of deflection,

the oscillations and loads are of minor significance.

Propeller shaft with two joints

The non-uniformity of a single joint can be compensated by joining two single joints to produce a propeller shaft. However, full compensation of the movement can be achieved only if the following conditions are met.

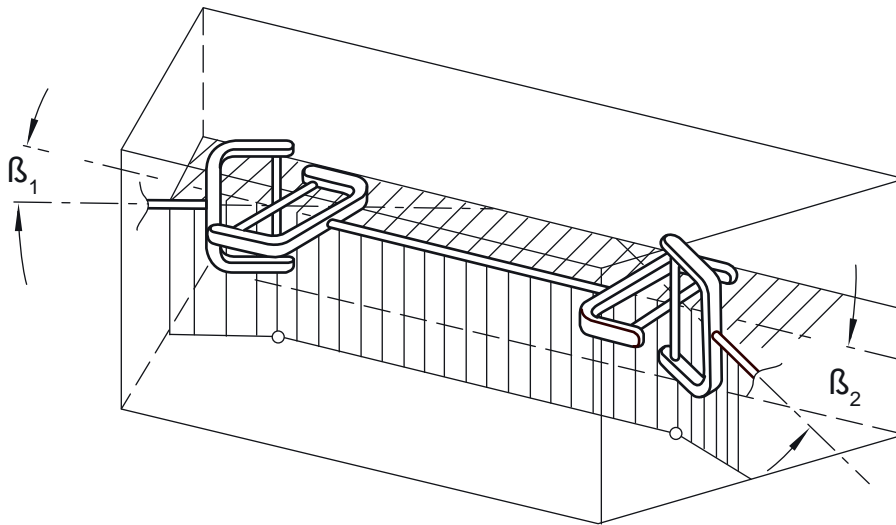
- Both joints must have the same angle of deflection, i.e. $\beta_1 = \beta_2$
- The two inner joint forks must be on the same plane.
- The input and output shafts must also be in the same plane, see Fig. 87-III and Fig. 88-III.

All three conditions must always be met simultaneously to compensate cardan error. These conditions are met in dependence on the propshaft configuration. Possible propshaft configurations are described in Chapter III, Section 6.5.2.

6.5.2 Propshaft configurations

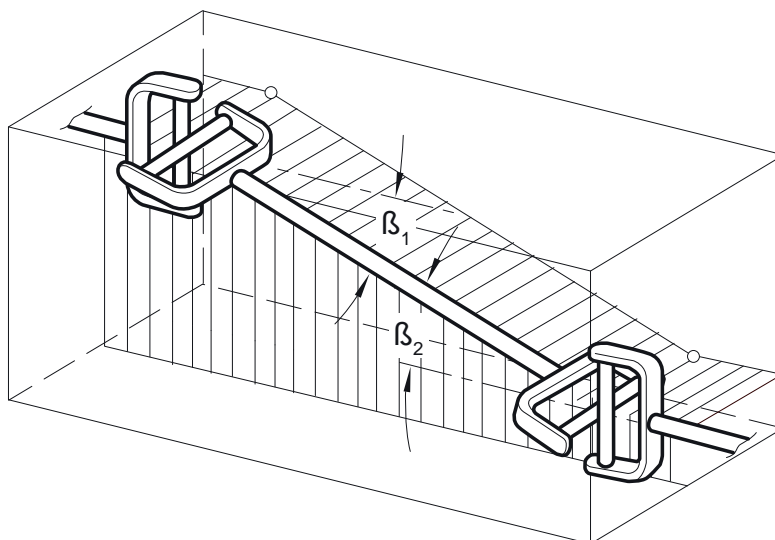
Well-known propshaft configurations are the so-called Z and W configurations (see Fig. 87-III and Fig. 88-III) as well as the three-dimensional configuration (see Fig. 89-III).

Fig. 87-III: W configuration of propeller shaft



T_364_000002_0001_G

Fig. 88-III: Z configuration of propeller shaft



T_364_000003_0001_G

The conditions (cf. Chapter III, Section 6.5.1) for full compensation of movement are met by the so-called Z and W configurations.

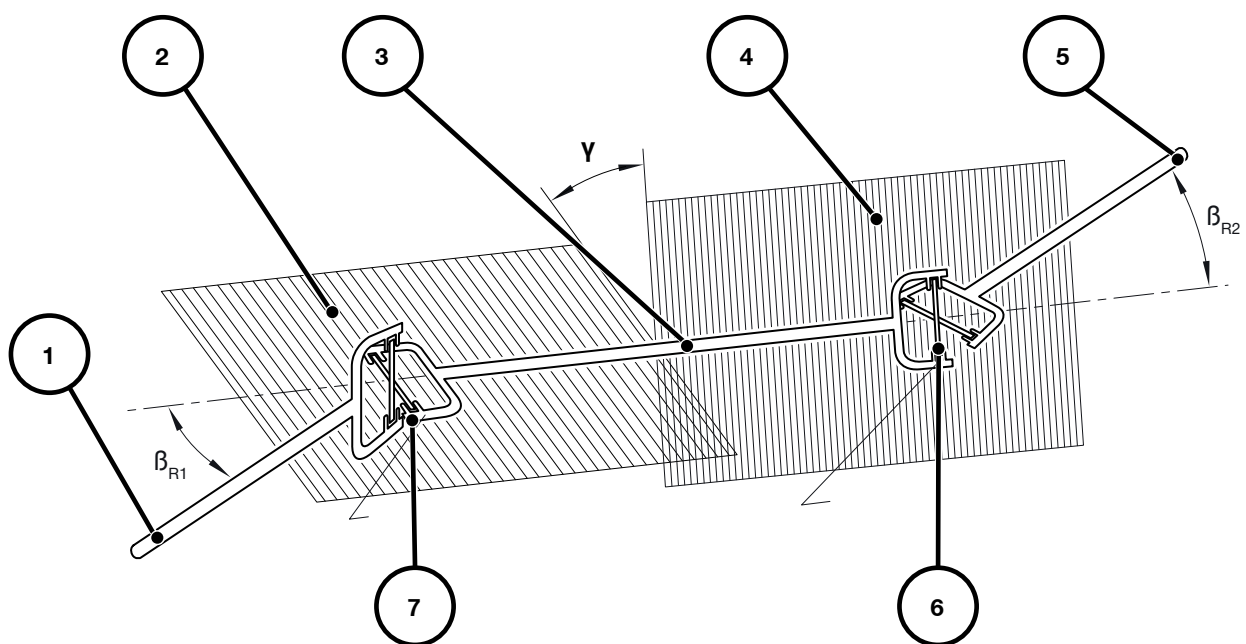
The common deflection plane that exists here may be freely rotated about the longitudinal axis. The use of the W-arrangement should be avoided in practice.

The exception is the three-dimensional propshaft configuration, see Fig. 89-III.

A three-dimensional configuration is given if the input and output shafts are not on the same plane. The input and output shafts cross offset from one another in space.

There is no common plane, so an offset of the inner joint forks by an angle “ γ ” is necessary to compensate speed fluctuations (see Fig. 89-III).

Fig. 89-III: Three-dimensional propeller shaft



T_364_000004_0001_G

- 1) Shaft 1
- 2) Plane 1 (formed by Shaft 1 and Shaft 2)
- 3) Shaft 2
- 4) Plane 2 (formed by Shaft 2 and Shaft 3)
- 5) Shaft 3
- 6) Fork in Plane 2
- 7) Fork in Plane 1
- γ Offset angle

A further condition is that the resulting three-dimensional angle β_{R1} on the input shaft must be exactly the same as the three-dimensional angle β_{R2} on the output shaft.

Therefore:

$$\beta_{R1} = \beta_{R2}$$

Where:

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_{R1} &= \text{Resulting three-dimensional angle of Shaft 1} \\ \beta_{R2} &= \text{Resulting three-dimensional angle of Shaft 2} \end{aligned}$$

The resulting three-dimensional deflection angle β_R is a function of the vertical and horizontal deflection of the propshafts and is calculated as:

Formula 02-III: Resulting three-dimensional deflection angle

$$\tan^2 \beta_R = \tan^2 \beta_v + \tan^2 \beta_h$$

The necessary offset angle „ γ “ is a product of the horizontal and vertical deflection angles of the two joints:

Formula 03-III: Offset angle γ

$$\tan \gamma_1 = \frac{\tan \beta_{h1}}{\tan \beta_{v1}} ; \quad \tan \gamma_2 = \frac{\tan \beta_{h2}}{\tan \beta_{v2}} \quad \gamma = \gamma_1 + \gamma_2$$

Where:

$$\begin{aligned} \beta_R &= \text{Resulting three-dimensional deflection angle} \\ \beta_v &= \text{Vertical deflection angle} \\ \beta_h &= \text{Horizontal deflection angle} \\ \gamma &= \text{Offset angle} \end{aligned}$$

Please note that:

In three-dimensional deflection of the propeller shaft with two joints there is only a requirement for the same resulting three-dimensional deflection angles, so theoretically any number of configurations can be formed by combining the vertical and horizontal deflection angle.

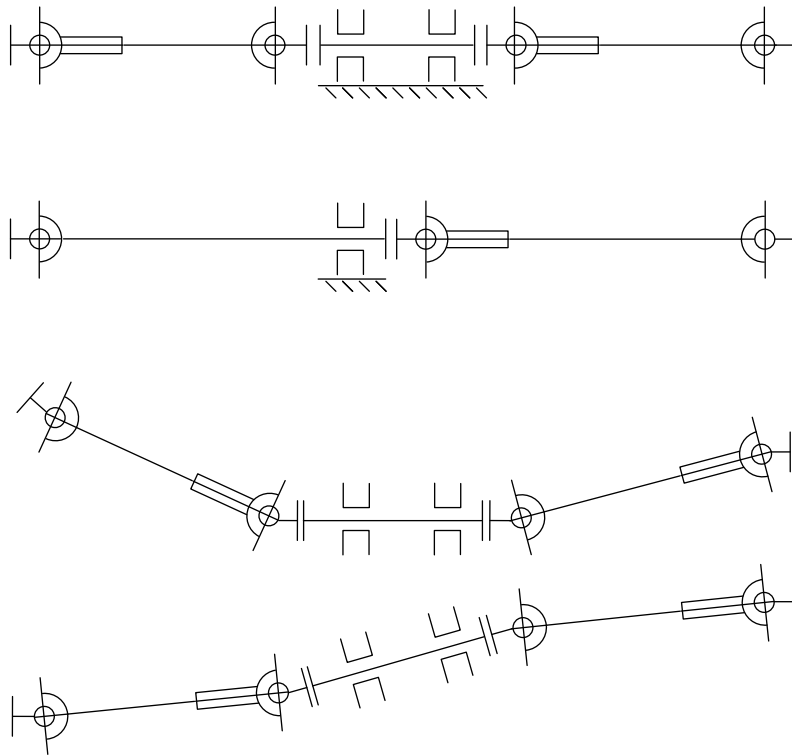
We recommend that the manufacturers' advice be sought for determining the offset angle for a three-dimensional propshaft configuration.

Propeller shaft train

If a design dictates the need for more length, it is possible to implement a propeller shaft train comprising two or more shafts. Fig. 90-III illustrates basic forms of a propeller shaft train in which the position of the joints and drivers relative to one another was randomly chosen.

Drivers and joints have to be harmonized for kinematic reasons. In matters concerning propshaft train design, the propshaft manufacturers should be consulted.

Fig. 90-III: Propshaft train



T_364_000005_0001_G

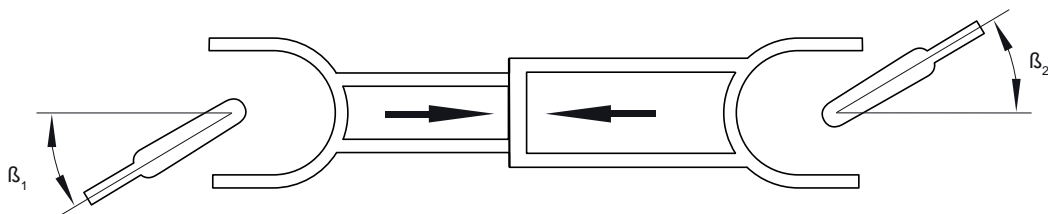
6.5.3 Forces in the propshaft system

Deflection angles in propeller shaft systems inevitably produce additional forces and moment. If a telescoping propshaft is extended or compressed whilst under load further additional forces will be introduced.

Dismantling the propshaft, twisting the two halves of the shaft and then putting them back together again will not compensate for uneven movement but is more likely to exacerbate the problem. Trial and error of this kind can damage propshafts, bearings, joints, main shaft profile and sub-assemblies.

So it is essential to observe the markings on the propeller shaft. The marks must be aligned when the joints are fitted (see Fig. 91-III).

Fig. 91-III: Markings on propeller shaft



T_364_000006_0001_G

Do not remove any balancing plates, and do not confuse propeller shaft parts, otherwise the imbalance will appear again.

If one of the balancing plates is lost or propshaft parts are replaced, the propshaft must be re-balanced.

Despite careful design of a propeller shaft system there may still be vibrations that can result in damage if their cause is not eliminated. Suitable measures must be used to cure the problem such as installing dampers, the use of constant velocity joints or changing the entire propshaft system and the mass ratios.

6.5.4 Modifying the propshaft configuration

As a rule, bodymakers modify the propeller shaft system when:

- modifying the wheelbase as a retrofit operation
- attaching pumps to the propeller shaft flange of the power take-off.

It is important to note that:

- The maximum deflection angle of each propshaft of the driveline when loaded may be 7° on each plane.
- If a propeller shaft is lengthened, the entire propeller shaft train must be newly configured by a propeller shaft producer.
- Modifications to the propshaft such as extensions may only be carried out by authorised workshops
- Every propeller shaft must be newly balanced before installation.
- Allowing the propshaft to hang on one side when fitting or removing it may lead to the shaft becoming damaged.
- A clearance of at least 30 mm must be maintained.

When assessing the minimum clearance, the raising of the vehicle and associated movement of the axle due to the extension of the springs and resulting change in position of the propshaft must be taken into consideration.

6.5.5 Fitting other manual or automatic gearboxes and transfer cases

Fitting manual or automatic gearboxes not documented by MAN is not possible because of the absence of an interface with the driveline CAN. If non-documented manual or automatic gearboxes are fitted malfunctions may occur in safety-relevant electronic systems. Fitting a third-party transfer box (e.g. for use as a power take-off) influences the electronic circuitry of the power train.

On vehicles fitted with mechanical gearboxes it may, under certain circumstances, be possible to adapt the system by parameterisation. Consult MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) before any work is commenced. As a basic principle, installation in vehicles fitted with MAN TipMatic/ZF ASTRONIC (e.g. ZF12AS gearbox) is not permitted.

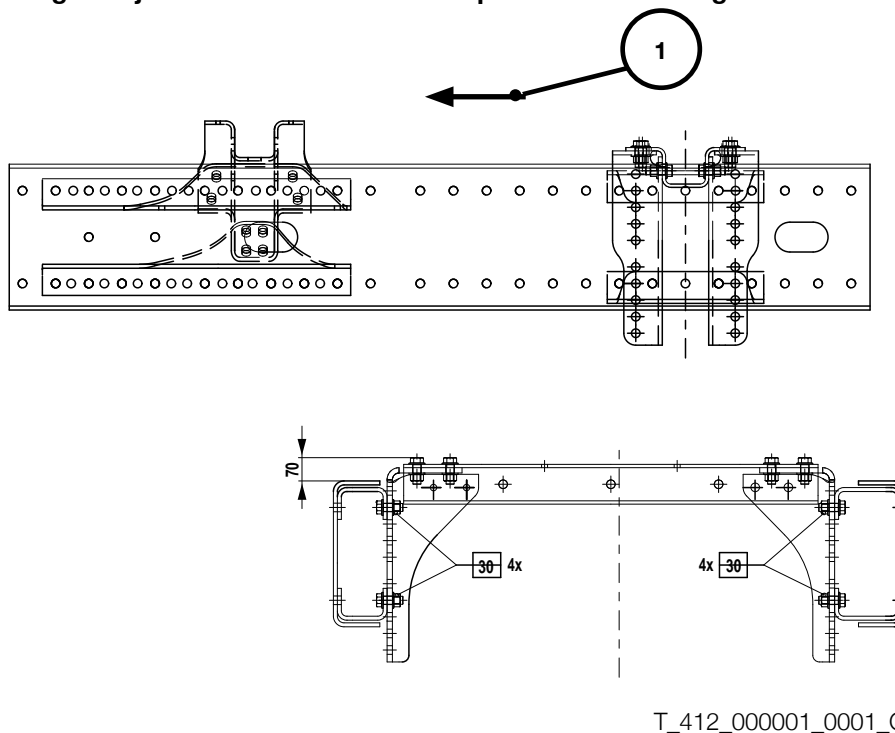
6.6 PTOs

Power take-offs connect the vehicle’s engine with the units to be driven, for example compressors or hydraulic pumps. The power take-offs that may be used on MAN vehicles are described in the supplementary booklet entitled “Power take-offs”.

Further assistance for the selection and design of power take-offs can be found under “Gearbox/power take-offs” in MANTED (www.manted.de, registration required).

If one or more PTOs is/are fitted to the gearbox ex-works, then the first frame cross member behind the gearbox is adjustable in height (see Fig. 92-III). This allows the installation of the propshafts on the power take-off to take the maximum permissible deflection angle into account. In its installed position on series-production vehicles the cross member, including bolt head, protrudes above the frame top edge by 70 mm. This height-adjustable cross member can be retrofitted at a later date (e.g. when retrofitting a power take-off).

Fig. 92-III: Height-adjustable cross member for power take-off on gearbox



1) Direction of travel

The operation of units by means of the vehicle’s engine can have a considerable effect on fuel consumption. It is therefore expected that the company carrying out the work implements a design that facilitates the lowest possible fuel consumption.

6.7 Brake system

6.7.1 Basic principles

Warning notice

The brake system is among the most important safety components on a truck. No changes may be made to any part of a braking system including the lines except by appropriately trained persons. After any change a complete visual, auditory, functional and efficiency test of the complete brake system is to be performed.

6.7.2 Installing and fastening brake lines

The relevant notes in Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.2 "Routing lines" are to be observed when routing and fastening lines.

6.7.3 ALB, EBS brake system

EBS makes it unnecessary for the bodymaker to inspect the ALB (automatic load-dependent brake system), and no adjustment is possible.. Inspection may possibly be required as part of a routine check of the brake system. Should such an inspection of the brake system become necessary then a voltage measurement using the MAN-cats[®] diagnosis system or a visual check of the angle of the linkage at the axle-load sensor must be carried out.

The EBS of vehicles fitted with air suspension uses the axle-load signal transmitted by the ECAS via the CAN data bus. If conversions are carried out it must be ensured that this axle-load information is not affected. Never pull out the plug on the axle-load sensor. Before exchanging leaf springs, e.g. replacing them with springs for a different load, it should be checked with the MAN Service workshop whether reparameterisation of the vehicle is necessary in order to be able to set the ALB correctly.

6.7.4 Retrofitting continuous brakes

Fitting continuous brake systems (retarders, eddy current brakes) that have not been documented by MAN is fundamentally not possible.

Interventions in the electronically controlled brake system (EBS) and the vehicle's on-board brake and driveline management system, which would be required in order to fit non-MAN continuous brakes, are not permitted.

7.0 Running gear

7.1 General

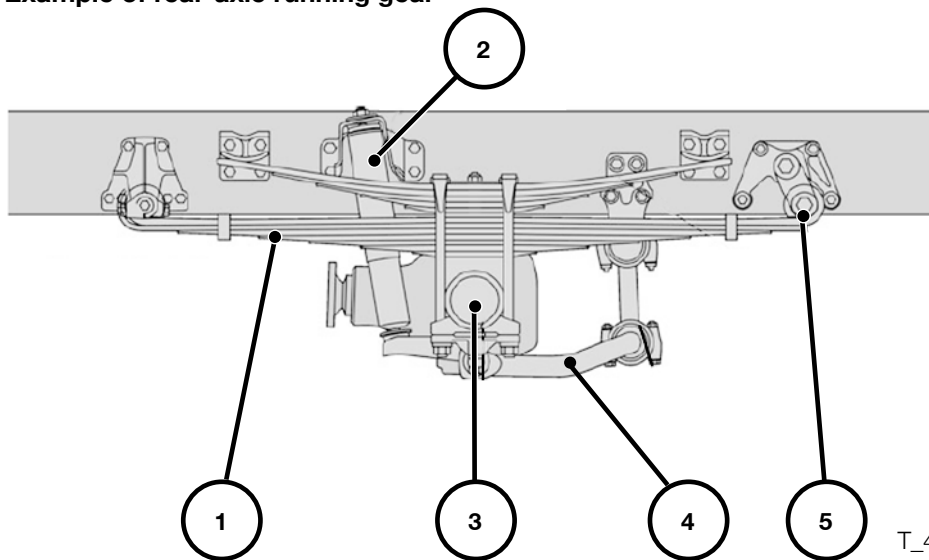
Running gear in the context of these guidelines refers to the totality of parts forming the connection between the chassis frame and the wheels.

The running gear consists of:

- Axles with wheel bearings
- Steering
- Springs
- Vibration dampers
- Axle-guide elements
- Stabilisers

It serves to determine the direction of travel and tracking, the transmission of weight, tracking, acceleration and deceleration forces as well as to compensate for the changes in distances, forces and movements that occur during driving operation.

Fig. 93-III: Example of rear-axle running gear



T_430_000001_0001_G

- 1) Trapezoidal springs (spring assembly)
- 2) Vibration damper
- 3) Axle
- 4) Stabiliser
- 5) Spring shackle

7.2 Modifications to the running gear

Interventions in the axle assemblies and individual parts thereof (e.g. steering components, arms, springs, absorbers) as well as their mountings and fixations to the frame are not permissible.

Additionally, it is forbidden to create new assembly groups out of the above-mentioned individual parts.

No parts of the suspension or spring leaves may be modified or removed. It is not permitted for suspension types or systems to be fitted on one and the same axle.

If the suspension system on one axle is changed (from leaf spring to air, for example), then approval must be obtained from MAN (for address, see "Publisher" above).

Before conversion, verifiable documents must be sent to MAN. The company carrying out the conversion is responsible for the design, demonstrating sufficient strength and reviewing changes to handling characteristics.

7.3 Equipment-related notes

A range of chassis options providing beneficial characteristics for different bodies is available for MAN vehicles. Check availability in advance with the nearest sales branch.

The equipment described below is recommended in particular for bodies with high centres of gravity.

Stabilisers

Stabilisers reduces rolling exhibited by the fitted vehicle, thereby improving handling. For example, a rolling motion of the body causes the stabiliser to be subjected to torsion. The reaction torques that occur counteract the rolling torque.

The stabilisers on the front and rear axles are available under sales codes 362AA and 363AA.

Stabilisation package

The stabilisation package for bodies with a high centre of gravity includes reinforced shock absorbers and reinforced stabilisers on the front and rear axle. The reinforced components reduce rolling motion and improve vibration damping. Handling is improved. The package is available under the sales code 362CE.

Reinforced chassis

The reinforced chassis for bodies with high centres of gravity (code 362CF) includes reinforced shock absorbers and special air-suspension bellows on the rear axle. The spring rate of the air-suspension bellows and the damping rate are tailored specifically for the needs of high-load deployment. The adapted components reduce rolling motion and improve vibration damping. Handling is improved.

8.0 Electrical/electronic system (on-board network)

8.1 General

MAN vehicles employ many electronic systems for controlling, regulating and monitoring vehicle functions. Full networking of the equipment fully guarantees that sensor readings can be processed to the same extent by all control units. This reduces the number of sensors, leads and connectors, and consequently means fewer error sources.

Network leads in a vehicle are recognizable because they are twisted. Several CAN bus systems are used in parallel and this enables them to be optimally adapted to perform their respective tasks. All data bus systems are reserved for exclusive use by the MAN vehicle electronics system; access to these bus systems is prohibited, with the exception of the bodybuilder CAN bus.

The “Electrical/electronic systems” chapter cannot present exhaustive information on all questions arising in connection with the on-board network of a modern commercial vehicle. Further information on individual systems can be found in the respective repair manuals. Repair manuals are supplied by the Spare-parts Service. Technical information can also be obtained from the MAN After Sales Portal (www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required). The portal provides access to service and repair manuals, the MAN diagnostic system, circuit diagrams, standard times and Service Bulletins.

Electrical and electronic systems and wiring incorporated in a commercial vehicle comply with the respective national plus European standards and directives, regarded as a minimum requirement. MAN standards are often considerably more stringent than national and international standards. As a result, many electronic systems have been adapted and expanded.

In some cases, for reasons of quality or safety, MAN stipulates the condition that MAN standards are used. This is then stated in the corresponding sections. Bodybuilders can obtain the MAN standards from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu, registration required). There is no automatic exchange service.

8.1.1 Electromagnetic compatibility

Due to the interaction between the different electrical components, electronic systems, the vehicle itself and the environment, the electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) must be tested. All systems in MAN vehicles must meet the requirements set down in MAN standard M3285, obtainable from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

On delivery ex works, MAN vehicles meet the requirements set down in ECE R10 in the valid version at the time of delivery. All equipment (definition of equipment as in 89/336/EEC) that is installed in the vehicle by the bodybuilder must meet the corresponding statutory regulations and be labelled accordingly (E label as per ECE R10, as applicable). The bodybuilder is responsible for the EMC of its components and/or systems.

After installing such components and/or systems, the bodybuilder remains responsible for ensuring that the vehicle still meets the current statutory requirements. Freedom from feedback between the body-side electrics/electronics and those of the vehicle must be ensured, especially where body-side interference could affect the operation of on-board units for road toll logging, telematics equipment, telecommunications systems or other equipment fitted to the vehicle.

8.1.2 Static discharge

The body manufacturer must ensure that electrostatic discharge is avoided by means of retrofitting appropriate devices or with the use of appropriate measures.

8.1.3 Radio equipment and aerials

All equipment installed on the vehicle must comply with current statutory requirements. All radio equipment (e.g. radio units, mobile telephones, navigation systems, on-board units for road toll logging etc.) must be properly equipped with external aerials.

In other words:

- Devices such as a radio remote control for body functions must not interfere with functions of the vehicle.
- Existing wiring must not be moved or used for additional purposes.
- Use as a power supply is not permitted (exception: approved MAN active antennas and their leads).
- Access must not be hindered to other vehicle components for maintenance and repair.
- If holes are drilled in the roof, these must be at the locations provided for in the MAN design, using approved installation materials (e.g. self-tapping screws, seals).

Antennas, leads, cables, sockets and plugs approved by MAN are obtainable through the spare parts service.

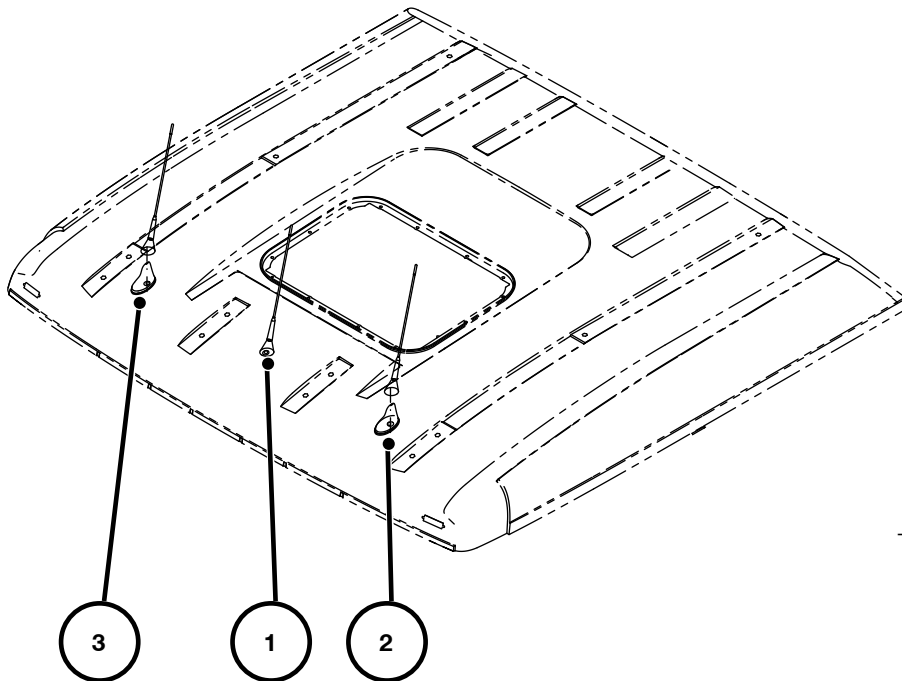
Annex I of EU Council directive 72/245/EEC in its version 2004/104/EC stipulates that possible locations of transmitting antennas, permissible frequency bands and transmitting power are to be published.

For the following frequency bands the proper fitting at the attachment points stipulated by MAN (see Fig. 94-III) on the cab roof is permitted.

Table 31-III: Frequency bands approved for roof attachment

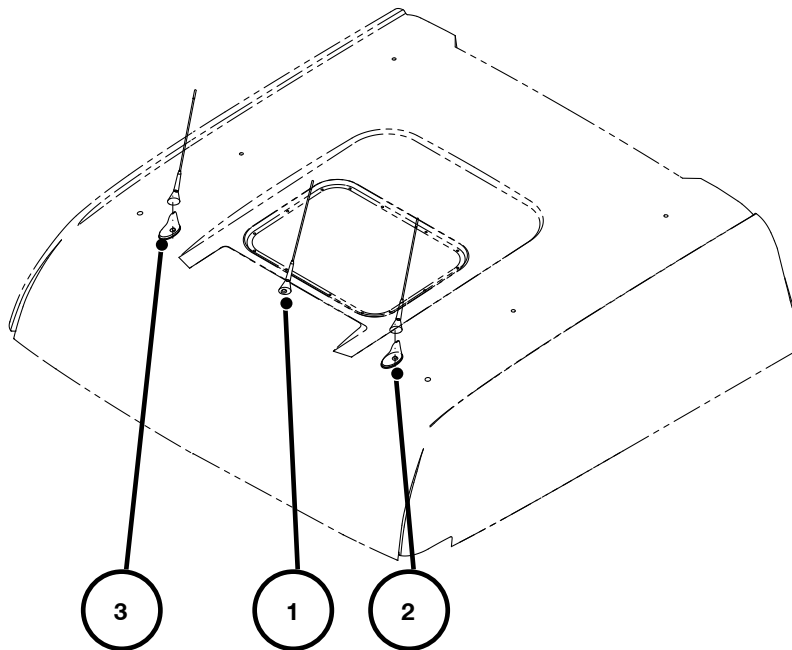
Frequency band	Frequency range	Max. transmitting power
Kurzwelle	< 50 MHz	10 W
4 m-band	66 MHz to 88 MHz	10 W
2 m-band	144 MHz to 178 MHz	10 W
70 cm band	380 MHz to 480 MHz	10 W
GSM 900	880 MHz to 915 MHz	10 W
GSM 1800	1.710,2 MHz to 1.785 MHz	10 W
GSM 1900	1.850,2 MHz to 1.910 MHz	10 W
UMTS	1.920 MHz to 1.980 MHz	10 W

Fig. 94-III: Schematic diagram of installation locations on cab roof



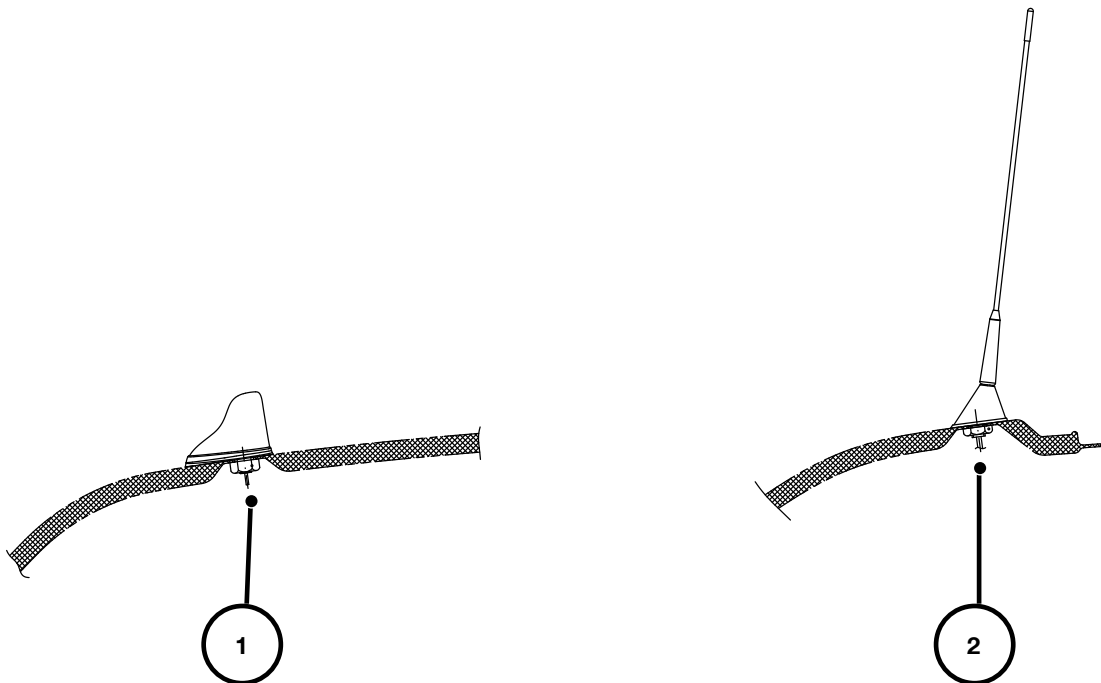
T_282_000001_0001_G

- 1) Installation location, Position 1
- 2) Installation location, Position 2
- 3) Installation location, Position 3

Fig. 95-III: Schematic diagram of installation locations on cab with high roof


T_282_000002_0001_G

- 1) Installation location, Position 1
- 2) Installation location, Position 2
- 3) Installation location, Position 3

Fig. 96-III: Diagram showing bolted connection


T_282_000003_0001_G

- 1) 81.28240.0151, tightening torque 6 Nm, transition resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$
- 2) 81.28200.8355, tightening torque 7 Nm \pm 0.5 Nm, transition resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$

Table 32-III: Overview of aerial equipment

Designation	Item no.	Position	Aerial, see electrical parts list
Aerial installation	81.28200.8365	Pos. 1	Radio aerial
Aerial installation	81.28200.8367	Pos. 1	Radio aerial + D and E networks
Aerial installation	81.28200.8369	Pos. 1	Radio aerial + D and E networks + GPS
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8370	Pos. 2	CB radio aerial
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8371	Pos. 3	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8372	Pos. 2	Trunked radio aerial
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8373	Pos. 3	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8374	Pos. 2	Radio aerial (2-m band)
Radio aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8375	Pos. 3	
Aerial installation, LHD	81.28200.8377	Pos. 3	GSM and GPS aerial for toll system
Aerial installation, RHD	81.28200.8378	Pos. 2	
Radio aerial installation, LHD	82.28200.8004	Pos. 2	CB-radio and radio aerial
Combined aerial installation, RHD	81.28205.8005	Pos. 3	GSM + D and E networks + GPS + CB-radio aerial
Combined aerial installation, LHD	81.28205.8004	Pos. 2	

8.1.4 Diagnostics concept and parameterisation using MAN-cats

MAN-cats is the MAN tool for diagnosis and parameterisation of electronic systems in vehicles. MAN-cats is used in all MAN Service outlets.

If the bodybuilder or the customer informs MAN of the intended use or the body type (e.g. for the intermediate speed control interface) when the vehicle is ordered, these can be incorporated into the vehicle at the factory using EOL (end-of-line) programming. If this variant is possible, under certain circumstances it may not be necessary to carry out parameterisation with MAN-cats.

MAN-cats must be then used if the parameters set in the vehicle are to be changed. For certain types of intervention in the vehicle systems the electronics specialists at MAN Service outlets are able to contact systems specialists at the MAN plant to obtain the appropriate releases, approvals and system solutions.

Important notice

For vehicle modifications that require approval or are relevant to safety, necessary adaptation of a chassis to the bodywork, conversion measures or retrofits, clarify with a MAN-cats specialist from the nearest MAN Service outlet before beginning whether the vehicle will require new parameterisation.

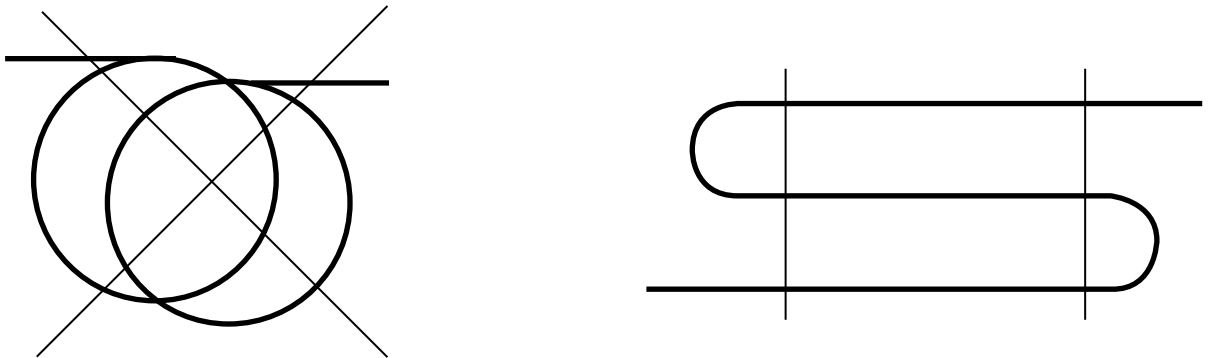
8.2 Cables

8.2.1 Routing cables

The following must be observed for all cable routing:

- Overlengths must not be laid in coil-like rings but only in loops to the side of the cable harness (see Fig. 97-III Cable routings.)

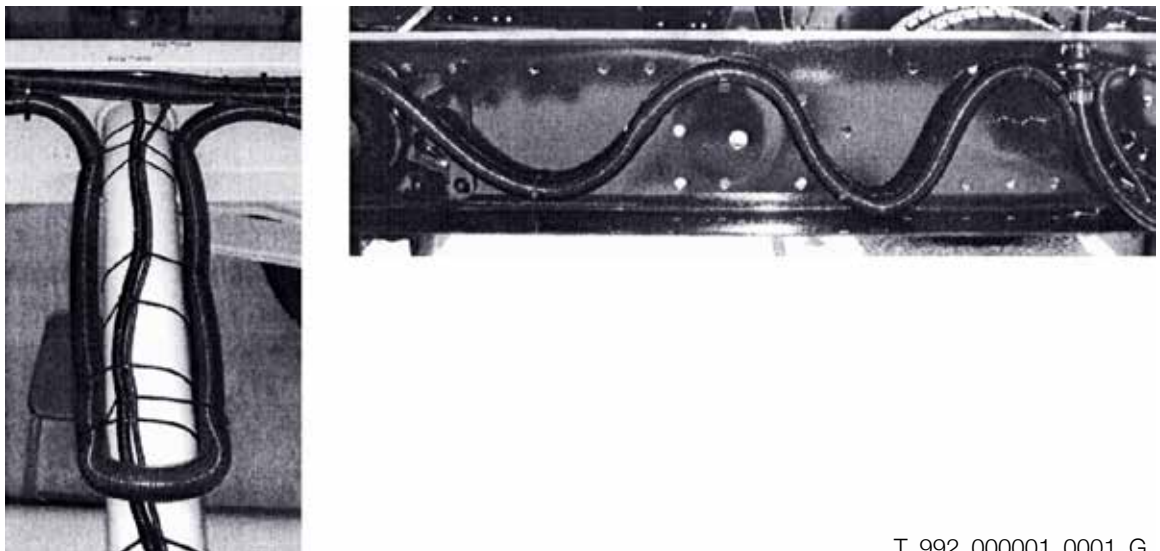
Fig. 97-III: Cable routings



T_998_000003_0001_G

- The cable harness must be secured in such a manner that no movement relative to the frame can occur, see Fig. 98-III: Routing examples).

Fig. 98-III: Routing examples



T_992_000001_0001_G

The relevant notes in Chapter III, Section 6.3.5.2 „Routing lines“ are to be observed when routing and fastening lines.

8.2.2 Ground cable

MAN frames are voltage-free in that neither the positive nor the ground cable is connected to it. Together with the positive cable, consumers must always have their own ground cables routed to them.

Ground points to which the bodybuilder can connect ground cables are located as follows:

- In the central electrics box
- Behind the combined instrument
- On the rear right-hand engine mount.

No more than a total of 10 A (actual current demand) may be tapped at the ground points behind the central electrics box and behind the combined instrument. Cigarette lighters and any extra sockets have their own power limitations, which can be found in the operating manual.

The bodybuilder's ground cable may as a general rule be connected to the common ground point at the engine and under the following conditions may be connected to the negative terminal of the batteries.

- The vehicle is equipped with an ground cable between engine and frame (standard from January 2010 production on).
- The battery terminal has sufficient room for connection of the ground cable.

Further information and instructions on connecting additional consumers can be found in Chapter III, Section 8.4 "Additional consumers".

8.2.3 Wiring harnesses for wheelbase extensions

When wheelbases are extended, control units and sensors associated with the rear axle also have to be relocated along with the axle.

As a basic principle, CAN wiring harnesses may never be cut and lengthened and for this reason, MAN offers cable-harness extensions each with a 1500 mm length of corrugated tubing. If these extensions are not sufficient, two of the cable harnesses described here can be connected in series. Only when the method described here is used can the movement of control units and sensors be considered as approved.

Control units and sensors associated with the rear axle

Basic equipment on all TG vehicles:

- EBS axle modulator (one module for all rear axles)
- Switch, check for parking brake

In the case of air suspension on the rear axle(s), the following are added:

- Displacement sensor (left and right)
- Valve block, ECAS

Depending on version and equipment, the following cabling is fitted

- Differential-lock plug connector

Cable extensions from the EBS axle-modulator to the sensors on the respective wheel (speed sensors, brake-lining wear sensors) are not necessary if the EBS axle-modulator module is relocated together with the rear axle.

Implementation

In some cases, cable extensions entail minor reworking of the original cable-harness plug. This is explained in detail below, where the small items that are necessary (e.g. plug housings, locking mechanisms and adapters) are referred to by their codes. Table 33-III lists a breakdown of the associated item numbers.

Table 33-III: Breakdown of codes for small items

Code	Designation	MAN part no.	Supplier	Supplier's item no.
AW64	Adapter	81.25433.0184	Schlemmer	7807 029 K
AW65	Adapter	81.25433.0182	Schlemmer	7807 025 K
BA20	Connector housing	81.25432.0337	Grote&Hartmann	18169 000 001
BA21	Connector housing	81.25432.0338	Grote&Hartmann	18170 000 001
BA28	Connector housing	81.25432.0347	Grote&Hartmann	18166 000 001
BA70	Connector housing	81.25432.0434	Grote&Hartmann	18385 000 001
BA71	Connector housing	81.25432.0433	Grote&Hartmann	18286 000 001
BA72	Connector housing	81.25432.0436	Grote&Hartmann	18284 000 001
BB68	Connector housing	81.25432.0435	Grote&Hartmann	18515 000 001
BB69	Connector housing	81.25432.0437	Grote&Hartmann	18516 000 001
BB70	Connector housing	81.25432.0438	Grote&Hartmann	18514 000 001
GV10	Locking slide	81.25435.0994	Grote&Hartmann	14816 660 636
GV12	Locking slide	81.25435.0996	Grote&Hartmann	14818 660 636
SS1	Shrink-fit hose	81.96503.0008	Raychem	RBK 85KT 107 A 0

Table 34-III: Cable-harness extensions

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGS TGX	EBS rear-axle modulator (Y264)	81.25453.6306 1 x 4-pole	Unplug the 4-pole green connector (BA 28) on frame cable harness from the EBS rear-axle modulator. Disassemble the lock (GV12), eject the contacts and push into a new housing (BB69) with identical pin socket collar. Re-assemble lock GV12. Connect with adapter 81.25433.0184 (AW64) corrugated tube and plug (BB69). Alternative: Attach existing housing and cable-harness extension with shrink-down plastic tube (e.g. SS1) to corrugated tube.
TGL TGM	EBS rear-axle modulator (Y264)	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Unplug the factory-fitted connecting cable from the axle modulator. Plug the extension into the connecting cable. Plug the extended harness into the axle modulator. Note: On the TGL and TGM the same adapter is used for extending cable harness 81.25453.6305 from: EBS axle modulator, differential lock, displacement sensors left and rights and ECAS valve block.
TGA TGS TGX	Parking brake warning lamp switch B369	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole DIN bayonet connection from parking brake warning lamp switch and lengthen using extension cable harness.
TGL TGM	Parking brake warning lamp switch B369	85.25413.6345 1 x 4-pole	

Table 35-III: Equipment-dependent cable-harness extensions

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGS TGX	Differential lock X637	81.25453.6307 1 x 4-pole	Separate at the point of separation X637 and insert extension in between.
TGL TGM	Differential lock S185	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	Same cable harness for extending EBS axle modulator, displacement sensors and ECAS valve block.

Table 36-III: Cable-harness extensions for air suspension on rear axles or on all axles

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Displacement sensor, rear axle, left B129, right B130	81.25453.6305 2 x 4-pole (one each on left and right). On TGA 4x2 tractor unit only one displacement sensor.	On the TGL and TGM the same adapter is used for extending cable harness 81.25453.6305 from: EBS axle modulator and differential lock.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Valve block ECAS Y132 Two-axle version, leaf/air	81.25453.6305 1 x 4-pole	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Valve block ECAS Y132/61 and Y132/62 Two-axle version, air/air	81.25453.6305 2 x 4-pole (per valve block)	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Valve block ECAS Y161/I and Y161/II > Two-axle version, leaf/air and air/air	81.25453.6305 2 x 4-pole (per valve block)	

Each of the speed and brake lining wear sensors itemised in Table 37-III below are plugged into the corresponding EBS axle modulator on the rear axles. The associated cabling does not need to be extended when extending the wheelbase because the axle modulator is moved together with the rear axle. For reasons of completeness and for special designs, extension cable harnesses for speed and brake lining wear sensors are nevertheless available.

Each of the speed and brake lining wear sensors itemised in Table 37-III below are plugged into the corresponding EBS axle modulator on the rear axles. The associated cabling does not need to be extended when extending the wheelbase because the axle modulator is moved together with the rear axle. For reasons of completeness and for special designs, extension cable harnesses for speed and brake lining wear sensors are nevertheless available.

Table 37-III: Cable-harness extensions for special cases

Series	Relocated unit / sensor	Item no. extension, qty.	Description / reworking
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Speed sensor, drive axle left B121	81.25453.6377 1 x 2-pole	Unplug 2-pole connector (grey BA20 left, black BA21 right) from EBS axle modulator on rear axle. Disassemble lock (GV10), eject contacts and push in a new housing with identical pin socket collar (BA70 left, BA71 right). Re-assemble lock (GV10). Connect using shrinkdown plastic tube (e.g. SS1), corrugated tube and plug (BA70/BA71). Alternative: Attach existing housing and cable-harness extension with shrinkdown plastic tube (e.g. SS1) to corrugated tube.
	Speed sensor, drive axle right B122	81.25453.6378 1 x 2-pole	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B335, left drive axle	81.25453.6387 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (black BA72 left, orange BB70 right) from EBS axle modulator on rear axle. Connect corrugated tube and connector with adapter 81.25433.0184 (AW64) and extend brake-lining wear sensor with extension 81.25453.6387 left / 81.25453.6388 right. Insert plug of extension (black left, orange right) into EBS axle modulator on rear axle.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B334 Right drive axle, applies to drive axle on 4x2, 6x2/2, 6x2-4, 6x2/4, rear drive axle on 4x4 and rear axle 1 for all other wheel configurations	81.25453.6388 1 x 4-pole	
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B335 Drive axle 2 rear left	81.25453.6387 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (black BA72 left, orange BB70 right) from brake-lining wear sensor distributor (left X2431, right X2432) and insert extension (81.25453.6387 left / 81.25453.6388 right) in-between.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B334 Drive axle 2 rear right, applies to the 2nd rear drive axle on 6x4, 6x6, 8x4, 8x6 and 8x8	81.25453.6388 1 x 4-pole	
TGA (TGL TGM) TGS TGX	Brake-lining wear sensor B530 Supplementary axle, rear left	81.25453.6385 1 x 4-pole	Unplug 4-pole connector (green BB69 left, grey BB68 right) from brake-lining wear sensor distributor, (left X2431, right X2432) and insert extension (81.25453.6385 left / 81.25453.6386 right) in-between. Last updated 5.2006: supplementary axles are in planning for TGL and TGM.
	Brake-lining wear sensor B529 Right rear supplementary axle, applies to leading/ trailing axle on 6x2/2, 6x2-4, 6x2/4	81.25453.6386 1 x 4-pole	

8.2.4 Cable harnesses for rear position lamps, additional rear position lamps, trailer sockets, side marker lamps and supplementary ABS sockets

The possible applications for these cable extensions are:

- cable-harness extension for rear position lamps and trailer sockets as a result of overhang extensions
- Connection of supplementary rear position lamps via T-distributor
- Connection of supplementary sockets via T-distributor – potential applications:
 - Installation of 15-pole and Type 24N/24S 7-pole sockets
 - Installation of sockets behind cab for semitrailer
 - Installation of trailer sockets on frame end
- Cable-harness extensions for side marker lights

To extend cable harnesses or fit supplementary lights/sockets, only the cable harnesses described here may be used so as to ensure the correct functioning of the CAN data network.

Table 38-III: Extension cable harnesses, rear position lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Extension cable harness for rear position lamps (per lamp)	1	81.25428.6975
	Extension cable harness for rear position lamps (per lamp)	1,5	81.25428.6982

Table 39-III: Extension cable harnesses for trailer sockets

Series	Designation	Plug colour	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL TGM TGS TGX	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Black	1	81.25428.6971
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Black	1,5	81.25428.6972
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Brown	1	81.25428.6973
	Extension cable harness for trailer socket	Brown	1,5	81.25428.6974

Pin-out depends on the plug colour of the cable harnesses:

Table 40-III: Assignment of socket to plug colour of the cable

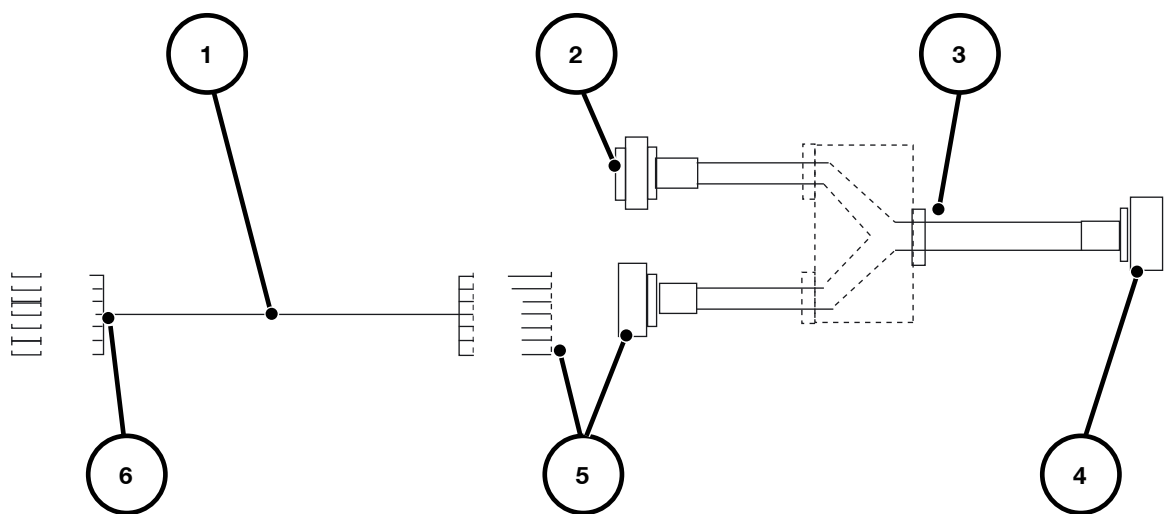
Socket	Use	Standard	plug
Type 24 N	24 V 7-pole N=normal	DIN ISO 1185	1 x black
Type 24 S	24 V 7-pole S=supplementary	DIN ISO 3731	1 x brown
15 pole	24 V 15-pin	DIN ISO 12098	1 x black + 1 x brown

Adapter cable harnesses (T-distributors) for rear position lamps and trailer sockets are available for fitting supplementary lights and trailer sockets. The functional principle is shown in Fig. 99-III.

Table 41-III: Adapter cable harnesses (T-distributors) for supplementary rear position lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA TGL	Adapter cable harness for rear position lamp	1,1	81.25432.6164
TGM TGS TGX	Adapter cable harness for rear position lamp	1,6	81.25432.6165

Fig. 99-III: Functional principle of T-distributor based on example of supplementary lamp



T_254_000001_0001_Z

- 1) Plug extension cable harness for rear position lamp
- 2) Plug in the previously used connecting cable for rear position lamp here.
- 3) Plug extension cable harness (T-distributor) for rear position lamp
- 4) into factory-fitted rear position lamp
- 5) Connect cables
- 6) Plug into supplementary rear position lamp

Table 42-III: Adapter cable harness (T-distributor) for additional trailer sockets

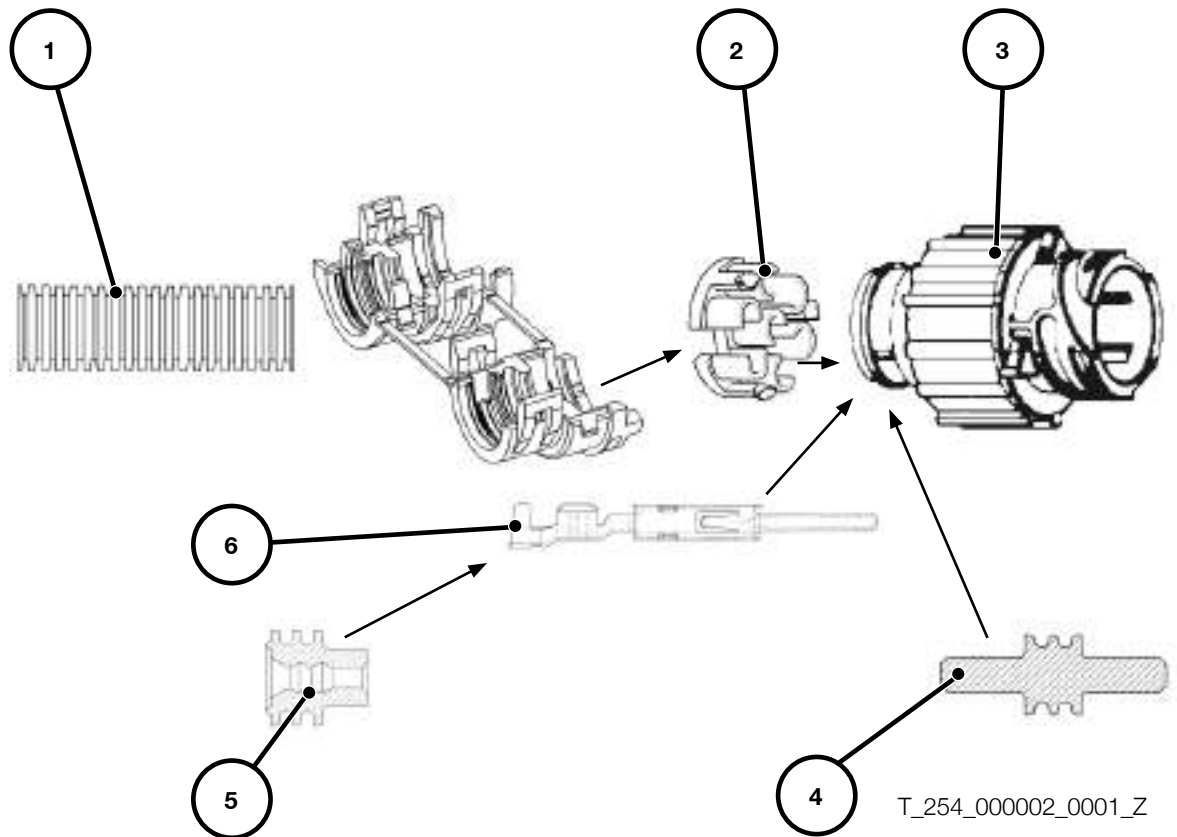
Adapter cable harness (T-distributor) for additional trailer sockets	Plug colour	Length in metres	MAN part no.
Adapter cable harness, symmetrical T-piece	Black	approx. 0.25	81.25432.6157
Adapter cable harness, symmetrical T-piece	Brown	approx. 0.25	81.25432.6160
Adapter cable harness, asymmetrical T-piece	Black	approx. 0.7	81.25432.6173
Adapter cable harness, asymmetrical T-piece	Brown	approx. 0.7	81.25432.6174

Depending on the body, it may also be necessary to relocate the side marker lamps (the statutory regulations applicable to lighting system are to be observed). If the connection cables are too short, cable-harness extensions in various lengths are available. Only original MAN side marker lamps using LED technology are permitted. Use of any other lamps will result in the partial operating permit for the lighting system to become invalid. Side marker lamps with incandescent bulbs will damage the central on-board computer.

Table 43-III: Extensions for side marker lamps

Series	Designation	Length in metres	MAN part no.
TGA	Cable-harness extension	0,5	81.25417.6685
TGL	Cable-harness extension	1,0	81.25417.6686
TGM	Cable-harness extension	2,0	81.25429.6294
TGS	Cable-harness extension	3,0	81.25429.6295
TGX	Cable-harness extension	3,0	81.25429.6295

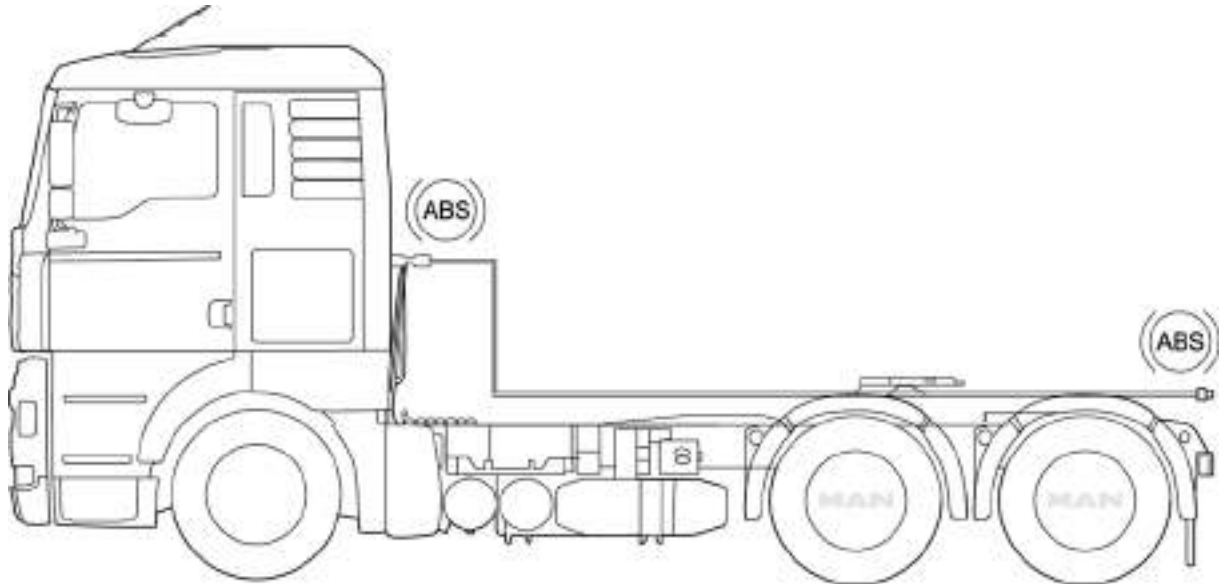
An adapter cable harness also enables individual cables to be tapped (e.g. to connect a supplementary number-plate light). Individual connectors with individual cables are to be made up using seal connectors, Fig. 100-III shows how to make up an individual connector.

Fig. 100-III: Making up an individual connector


- 1) Corrugated tube, size 10 (04.37135-9940) or size 8.5 (04.37135-9938), depending on the number of cables, and in the corresponding length
- 2) Secondary locking mechanism (81.25475-0106)
- 3) 7-pole connector (81.25475-0105)
- 4) Blanking seal for unused connector slots
- 5) Individual seals for lead cross-sections of between 0.52 and 12 (07.91163-0052)
Individual seals for lead cross-sections of between 0.52 and 2.52 (07.91163-0053)
- 6) Contact for lead cross-sections of 0,5² to 1² (07.91216-1226)
Contact for lead cross-sections of 0,5² to 2,5² (07.91216-1228)

Supplementary ABS sockets are available for alternating use as a socket behind the cab for semitrailer and as a trailer socket at frame end. However, this does not function with T-distributors but with an extension cable,, see Fig. 101-III.

Fig. 101-III: Use of ABS extension cable



T_524_000001_0001_G

Important:

Connect the ABS socket in accordance with use.

In this way the ABS socket may be mounted either behind the cab (tractor unit) or at the frame end (truck). The cable lengths available conform with the wheelbases of the respective MAN tractor units (see Table 44-III).

Table 44-III: ABS extension cables

Item no.	81.25453.6288	81.25453.6290	81.25453.6291	81.25453.6292
Cable length (total)	4.700mm	5.400 mm	6.100 mm	6.800 mm
Use Wheelbase R	Semitrailer tractor 4x2, 4x4 R <= 3.900	Semitrailer tractor 6x2 R <= 3.200+1.350	Semitrailer tractor 6x4, 6x6 R <= 3.600+1.350	Semitrailer tractor 6x4, 6x6 R <= 3.600+1.350

8.2.5 Supplementary wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings

Supplementary wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings that contain or describe body preparations can be obtained from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

The bodymaker is responsible for ensuring that the material they use, e.g. wiring diagrams and cable harness drawings, match the status of vehicle modification.

Refer to the repair manuals for further technical information. These can be obtained from the Spare-parts Service or from the MAN After Sales Portal (www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required).

8.2.6 Battery cable

The battery cable must not be extended in cases where the battery is relocated. A new cable in the required length must be ordered or made. The maximum length referred to below may not be exceeded in the process.

Direct tapping into the battery cable is not permitted by cutting open or by means of commercially available power distributors. The connection of additional loads is specified in Sections 8.2.2 and 8.4.

This applies both to the positive and ground cables.

The following must be observed when making or shortening the battery cable.

- MAN Genuine Spare Parts and the associated special tools must be used. They can be obtained from the Spare-parts Organisation.
- A hexagonal crimp must be used for crimping the cable lugs.

The following table lists the maximum lengths of the battery cable in relation to the cable cross-section. These maximum lengths may not be exceeded.

Table 45-III: Overview

Cable cross-section	Max. length	Shown in the drawing
50 mm ²	3550 mm	81.25452-6201
70 mm ²	6000 mm	81.25427-6002
95 mm ²	6700 mm	81.25405-8002

8.3 Interfaces on the vehicle, preparations for the body

No intervention in the on-board network is permitted except via the interfaces provided by MAN.

Signals must not be tapped from the CAN bus, the only exception being the bodybuilder's CAN bus (see TG interface of the control unit for external data exchange (custom module)).

The interfaces provided by MAN are fully documented in the sections below. Interfaces are, for example:

- Liftgate
- For start / stop device
- Intermediate speed control
- FMS interface
- Tapping into the engine-on signal
- Tapping into the speed signal
- Tapping into the reverse-gear signal

If a vehicle is ordered with ready body fittings (e.g. start/stop device at end of frame) these will be installed ex works and partly connected. The instrumentation is prepared as ordered. Before commissioning the body fittings, the bodybuilder must ensure that it has used the applicable versions of wiring diagrams and cable-harness drawings in each case (see also Chapter III, Section 8.2.5).

MAN affixes transport securing devices (on the interfaces behind the front flap on the co-driver's side) for delivery of a vehicle to the bodymaker. These devices must be properly removed before using an interface.

Retrofitting interfaces and/or bodywork preparations can be complicated and costly, requiring the support of an electronics specialist from the MAN Service Organisation.

Remote transmission from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card.

MAN supports the manufacturer-independent remote transmission of data from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card (RDL = remote download).

The corresponding interface is published on the Internet at www.fms-standard.com.

8.3.1 Tapping into the engine-on (D+) signal

The vehicle offers several options for tapping into the reverse-gear signal.

The engine-on signal can be tapped from the central on-board computer because this supplies an “Engine running” signal (+24 V). This signal can be tapped into directly at the central on-board computer (connector F2, plug contact 17).

The maximum load on this connection must not exceed 1 A. It should be noted that other internal consumers may also be connected here. It must be ensured that this connection is free from feedback.

In addition, the engine-on signal can be tapped into amongst the signals and information supplied by the custom-specific control module (“KSM”) interface.

Important notice

D+ may not be tapped from the alternator.

Remote transmission from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card.

MAN supports the manufacturer-independent remote transmission of data from the mass storage of digital tachographs and information contained on the driver card (RDL = remote download).

The corresponding interface is published on the Internet at www.fms-standard.com.

8.3.2 Electrical interface for liftgate

Electrohydraulic liftgates require very careful design of the electrical supply.

Ideally the electrical interface for a liftgate is provided ex works. Retrofitting the interface is a complex procedure and requires intervention in the vehicle’s electrical system, which must only be carried out by correspondingly qualified personnel at MAN Service outlets.

It includes the following parts:

- switch,
- check lamp,
- starter inhibitor
- and power supply for the liftgate).

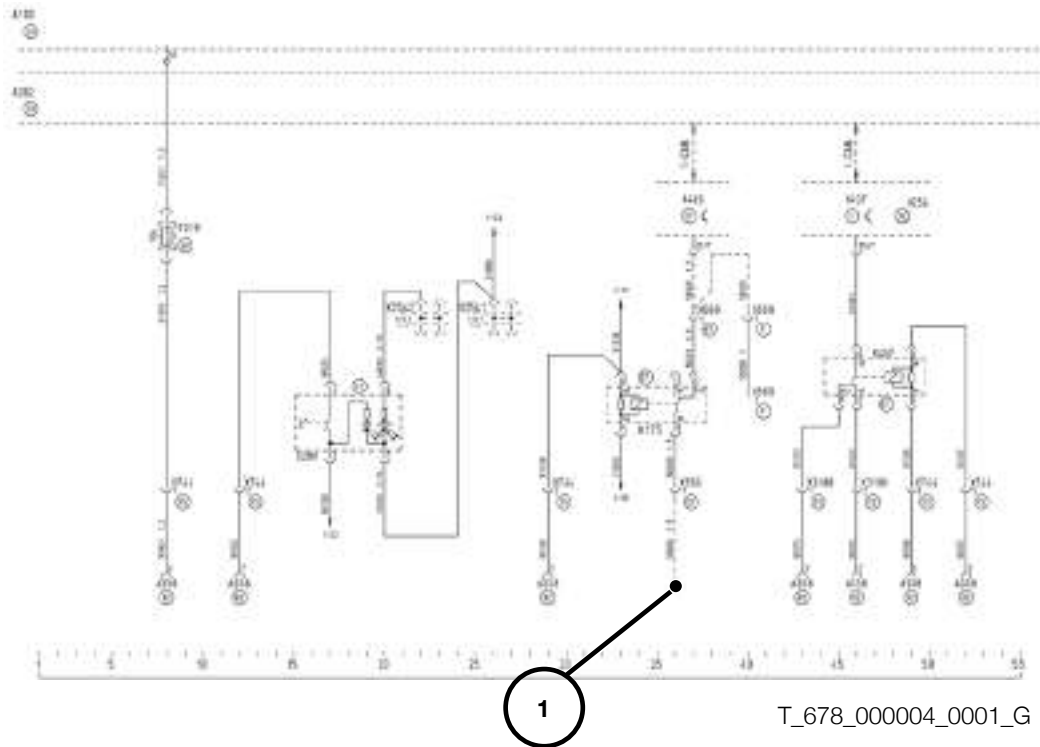
Retrofitting is a complex procedure and requires intervention in the vehicle’s power supply, which may only be carried out by correspondingly qualified personnel at MAN Service outlets.

The bodybuilder must check the circuitry of the liftgate to ensure it is suitable for MAN vehicles. Under normal circumstances triggering of interface A358 may only be effected with 24-V continuous signals – not with flash pulses. In the event of malfunction, a clocked signal may be applied briefly to relay K467.

For operating an electrohydraulic liftgate on the TGL/TGM the required battery capacity is 2 x 155 Ah.

For connection to the electric interface of the hydraulic liftgate, see the supplementary wiring diagrams below.

Fig. 102-III: Supplementary wiring diagram, liftgate for TG with vehicle management computer (VMC), MAN item no. 81.99192-1920

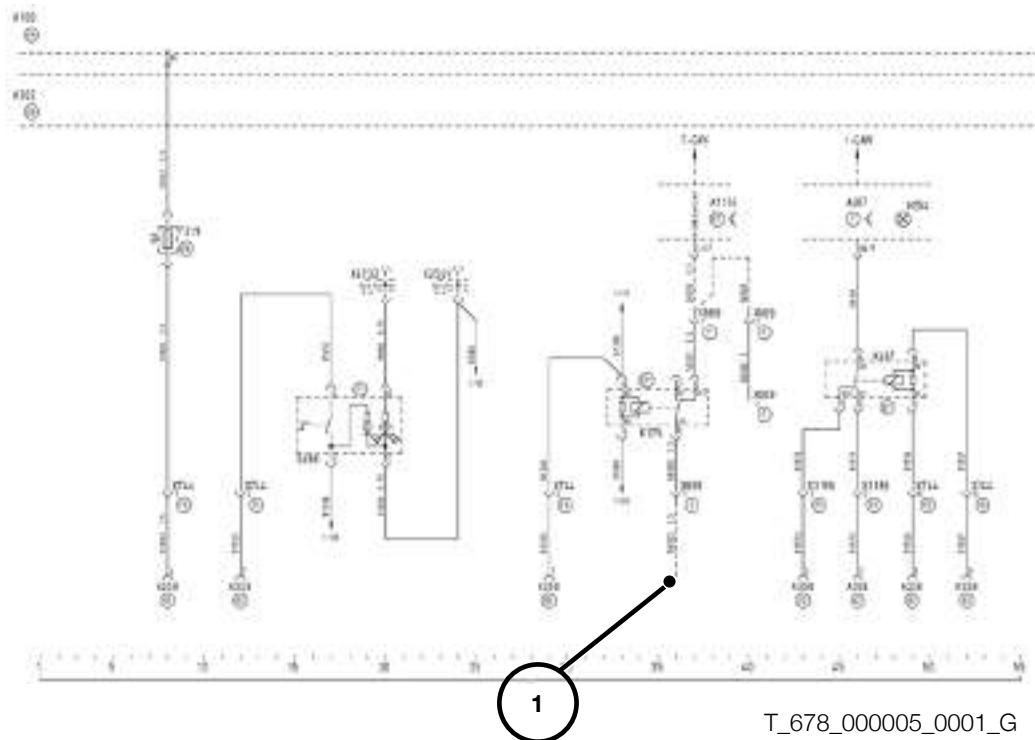


1) Interrupt standard plug connection X669 and switch harness liftgate between.

A100	255	Central electrical system
A302	352	Central computer 2
A358		Liftgate control unit
A403	339	Vehicle management computer
A407	342	Instrumentation
F219	118	Liftgate fuse (Terminal 15)
H254		Liftgate check lamp (high active)
K175	281	Start-lock relay
K467	281	Liftgate relay
S286	547	Liftgate switch
X669		Plug connector, starter interlock
X744		Plug connector, liftgate
X2541	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 31000
X2542	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 58000
X3186		Plug connector, liftgate

Leads 91003, 91336, 91555, 91556, 91557, 91572 and 91573 routed to 7-pole socket housing on frame end (rolled up)

Fig. 103-III: Supplementary wiring diagram, liftgate for TG with Power Train Manager (PTM)
 MAN item no. 81.99192-3645



1) Interrupt standard plug connection X669 and switch harness liftgate between.

A100	255	Central electrical system
A302	352	Central computer 2
A358		Liftgate control unit
A403	339	Vehicle management computer
A407	342	Instrumentation
F219	118	Liftgate fuse (Terminal 15)
H254		Liftgate check lamp (high active)
K175	281	Start-lock relay
K467	281	Liftgate relay
S286	547	Liftgate switch
X669		Plug connector, starter interlock
X744		Plug connector, liftgate
X2541	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 31000
X2542	246	Potential distributor 21-pole lead 58000
X3186		Plug connector, liftgate

Leads 91003, 91336, 91555, 91556, 91557, 91572 and 91573 routed to 7-pole socket housing on frame end (rolled up)



8.3.3 Engine-Start-stop system

The engine start-stop system enables the vehicle’s engine to be started or stopped via a remote control or switch outside the cab.

The engine start-stop system is a system that works independently of the intermediate speed control interface and must be ordered separately.

The following variants of the engine start-stop system are available ex-works.

- Engine start/stop device under the front panel (preparation), plug X679, front wall inside right after removal of cover.
- Engine start/stop device on engine (plug X1551, interior panelling in steering column area).
- Engine start/stop device at end of frame (preparation). Cable extension from plug X679, rolled up at end of frame.

The connection options and pin assignments are shown in the table below.

Table 46-III:

Cable number	Function	Plug assignment	
		Plug X679 / Pin	Plug X1551 / Pin
60028	+ potential	1	6
50303	Engine start	2	10
43315	Engine stop	3	11

If a variant is not included in the equipment scope of a vehicle, the “engine start/stop device” can be retrofitted by a MAN service outlet.

It must then be ensured that both the original MAN cable harnesses and the documented connection options and locations are used.

It is also possible to realise the engine start-stop system by means of the CAN data bus. The requirement for this is that a customer-specific control module (“KSM”) was fitted at the factory. Further references and descriptions of connections and signals can be found in the separate guideline entitled “TG Interfaces”.

Specific parameterisation is not necessary for the engine start-stop system.

Circuit diagrams can be obtained from MAN Service or the MAN After Sales Portal.

Important notice

If the bodybuilder has installed the circuitry, the designation “Engine start-stop” must be used. This must not be confused with the term “Emergency stop”.

8.3.4 Tapping into the speed signal

It is possible to tap into the speed signal from the tachograph. It must be ensured that the load on the corresponding plug contact does not exceed 1 mA!

This generally equates to two connected peripheral units. Should this option for tapping the signal be inadequate then the following output multipliers bearing the MAN codes can be connected:

- 81.25311-0022 (3 • v-pulse output, max. load 1 mA for each output) or
- 88.27120-0003 (5 • v-pulse output, max. load 1 mA for each output).

Option for tapping the 'B7 signal' = speed signal:

- At connector B / plug contact 7 or plug contact 6 on the back of the tachograph
- At the 3-pole plug connector X4366/contact 1. The plug connector is located behind a cover on the driver side A-pillar in the area around the driver's footwell.
- At the plug X5929 (line 16500) fitted as standard in the area of the central electrical system. The plug X5929 is not available if the interface for displacement signal and speed signal was installed ex-works, orderable via the sales code 307CS - Electrical preparation for gritter (displacement/speed signal)). In this case, the speed signal can be accessed at plug X1428 / Pin 6, also in the area of the central electrical system.
- At the 2-pole plug connector X4659 / contact 1 or 2. The plug connector is located behind the central electrics box.
- At the factory-fitted interface with customer-specific control module from STEP1 on (see Chapter III, Section 8.3.6).

Important notice

In order to avoid diagnostic memory entries, always switch off the ignition prior to carrying out any work on the tachograph!

8.3.5 Tapping into the reverse gear signal

It is possible to access the reversing signal on all vehicles of the TG series. You will find information on how the signal can be accessed below.

- Accessible via plug X1428 at plug contact 5 of line 71300. The plug X1428 is located in the area of the central electrical system. A prerequisite for this is that the body manufacturer preparation for displacement/speed signal is installed in the vehicle. It must be noted that the interface load for the reversing signal must not exceed a permitted value of 100 mA.
- The reversing signal can also be accessed via the customer-specific control module (KSM). A prerequisite for this is that the customer-specific control module is installed in the vehicle ex-works. Further information and connection and signal descriptions can be found in Chapter III under Section 8.3.6.

Important notice

All work must be carried out with the ignition turned off or with the battery disconnected. In addition to accident-prevention regulations, country-specific guidelines and laws must also be observed.

8.3.6 Interfaces for intermediate speed control with VMC/PTM and CSM (ISC interfaces)

MAN's intermediate speed control can be realised via the following interfaces.

- Interface on the vehicle management computer (VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM)
- Interface on customer-specific control module (KSM)

Detailed descriptions of these interface variants are documented separately.

This chapter contains general explanations and an overview of the available interface descriptions.

Abbreviations

The following text and the detailed interface descriptions use certain abbreviations and MAN-specific terms. These are explained in Table 47-III in alphabetical order.

Table 47-III: Abbreviations and MAN-specific terms used

Term/abbreviation	Explanation
A-CAN	Set-up-CAN (CAN = Controller Area Network)
OFF	Switch-off of cruise control/speed limiter/intermediate speed control functions
CAN	Controller Area Network (= data bus, digital network)
ESL	Engine speed limit
DI	Digital input
EMC	Electromagnetic compatibility
VIN	Vehicle identification number
VMC	vehicle management computer
CC/RSL/ISC	Vehicle speed control/vehicle speed limiter/intermediate speed control
FMS	Fleet Management System
GEARBOX-N	Neutral position of gearbox
GMT	Greenwich Mean Time
HGB	Maximum speed limitation
High-side switch	Switching output downstream of Terminal 30 (+U _{BAT})
HP	ZF automatic gearbox HP...
SC	Short circuit
CSM	Customer-specific control module
LED	Light emitting diode
Low-side switch	Switching output downstream of Terminal 31 (-U _{BAT})
M3135	MAN works standard (M + 3 or 4 digits)
MAN-CATS	Computer diagnostic system used in MAN workshops (CATS = computer-aided testing system)
TL	Torque limit
TSL	Torque/speed limiter
MEMORY	Stored function/value
PTO	Power take-off (PTO)
NMV	Power take-off pre-fitted, depending on engine
PIN	Plug contact
PTO	Power take off
PWM	Pulse width modulation
R-gear	Reverse gear
SET+	Increase and set speed and/or accelerate
SET-	Reduce and set speed and/or decelerate
CU	Control unit
T-CAN	Driveline CAN (CAN = Controller Area Network)
+U _{BAT}	Positive voltage of batteries
-U _{BAT}	Negative voltage of batteries
UTC	Universal Time Code
VIN	Vehicle identification number
COC	Central on-board computer
ISC	Intermediate speed control/regulator

Installation location of interfaces

The ISC interfaces are located behind the front flap and are accessible from the outside after the front flap has been unlocked and the housing cover removed (see Fig. 104-III).

Fig. 104-III: Installation location of ISC interfaces



T_380_000002_0002_G

- 1) View after cover is removed
- 2) ISC interface (VMC) x1996/18-pole
- 3) ISC interface (CSM) x1997/18-pole

Description

The interface to intermediate speed control on the vehicle management computer (VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM) is contained in the vehicle ex works if a power take-off or special customer module is installed ex works.

The CSM interface for retrofitting is currently available in two different versions, both of which can be upgraded (installation of new version in a used vehicle) and downgraded (installation of new version in a used vehicle and old version in a new vehicle).

The fleet management interface is only possible in conjunction with CSM interface STEP05 or more recent.

Table 48-III: Available interface descriptions can be found at: www.manted.de

Additional information electrical interfaces

Interface descriptions (supplementary booklets)
Intermediate speed control with interface on the vehicle management computer (ISC on VMC)/Power Train Manager (PTM)
This document describes the interface for intermediate speed control on the vehicle management computer (VMC) or Power Train Manager. The interface is contained in the vehicle ex works if a power take-off or special customer module is installed ex works. A retrofit and activation of the interface is possible in authorised workshops. The general and sector-specific factory settings for the interface have been circulated to all MAN Service outlets via a service bulletin.
Intermediate speed control with customer-specific control module (ISC with CSM)
These documents describe the interfaces at the customer-specific control module with or without FMS interface.

8.3.7 Interface for reversing-camera preparation

The electrical interface for the rear-view camera preparation makes it possible to connect either one or two rear-view cameras and show the image on the screen of the MAN Radio MMT advanced. The system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or the rear view can be manually selected using a separate button.

The rear-view camera preparation interface is a system independent of the MAN radio MMT advanced, and must be ordered separately using the sales code for the rear-view camera preparation.

If the interface is not available ex works, it is possible to retrofit it. Because a retrofit is costly and requires access to the vehicle electrical circuit, we recommend having it done at a MAN Service centre.

Some camera manufacturers offer an adapter lead suitable for our interface (rear-view camera preparation), which can also be sourced from a MAN specialist workshop.

From September 2016 there will be a new generation of radios, which two cameras can be connected to. Switching between the two images takes place using the CAM button on the radio.

This section also describes the distinctive features of the different radios and the different interfaces.

MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2012)

This radio has a 5-inch display and a CD slot. The system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or the rear view can be manually selected using a separate button in the switch block of the instrument panel.

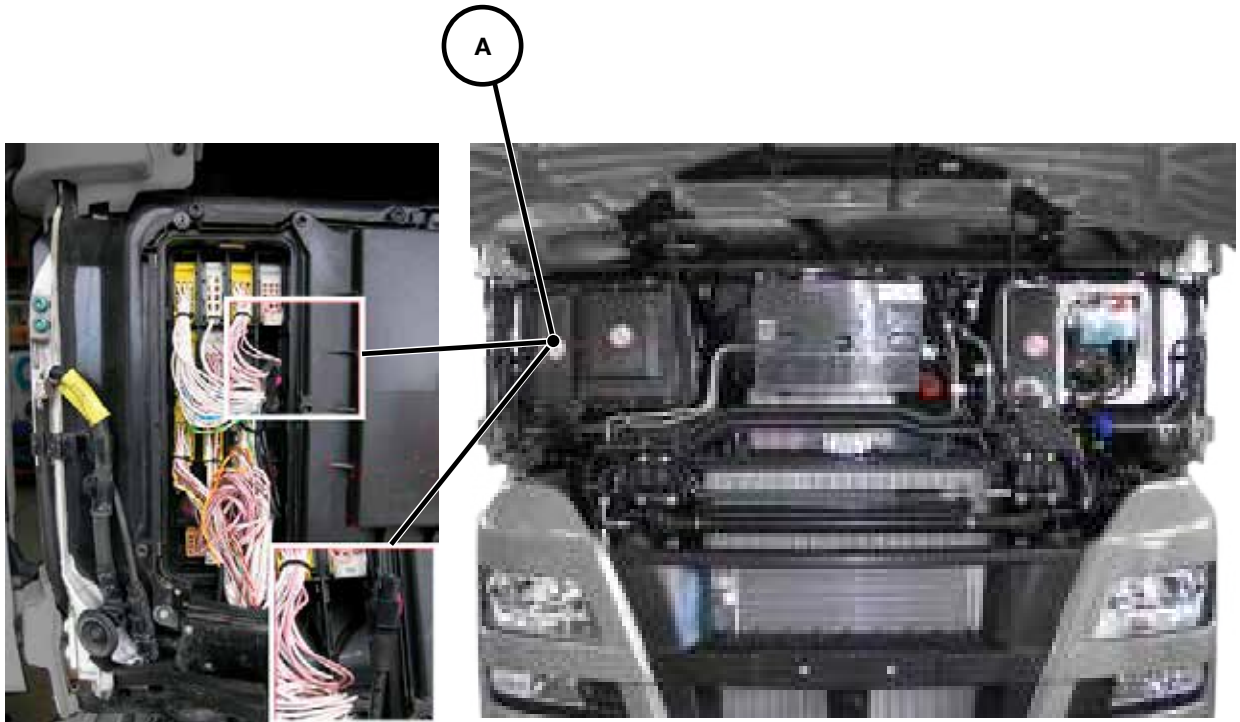
MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2016)

This radio has a 7-inch display and the system automatically switches to the camera image when reverse gear is engaged, or it can be manually selected using a button on the radio (CAM button). As a further variant, it is possible to activate the camera image using a contact to the radio; you can find the description for doing so under “MAN Radio MMT advanced (2016)” – Activating the camera image via a contact.

MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2012)

The plug A of the interface is below the front panel on the right of the vehicle in the direction of travel, after removing the two housing covers (Pos. A, Fig. 105-III).

Fig. 105-III: Position Plug A

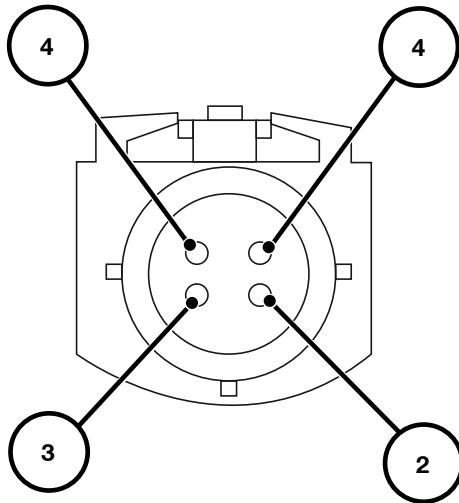


T_254_000003_0002_G

III. Chassis

This is the pin assignment of the plug connector and the mating connector.

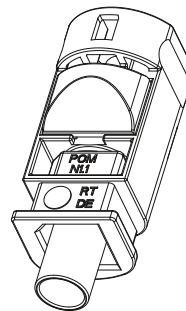
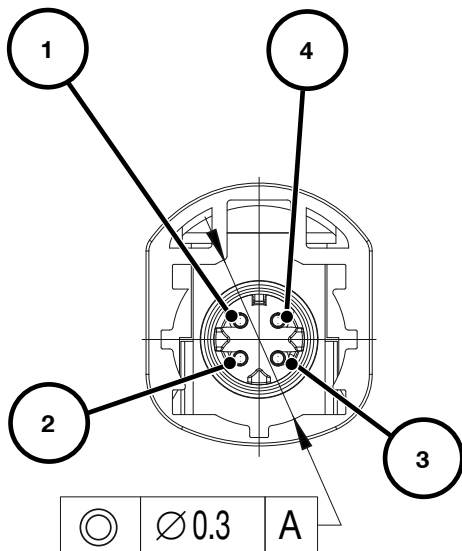
Fig. 106-III: Pin assignment of plug connector A on the vehicle



T_254_000005_0001_G

- 1) Video signal +
- 2) Voltage supply + (24 V with a 5-A fuse)
- 3) Video signal -
- 4) Voltage supply -

Fig. 107-III: Pin housing of the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2012)



T_254_000004_0001_G

Table 49-III: Where to source the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2012)

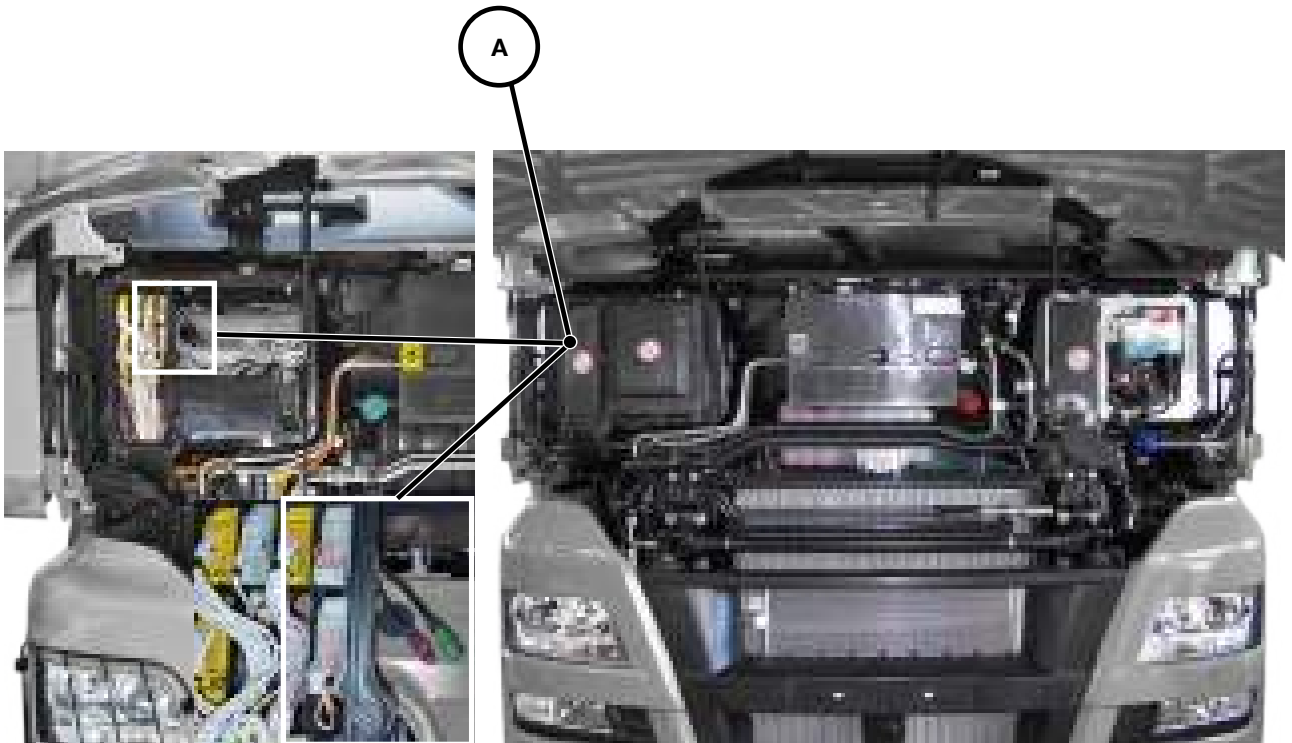
Manufacturer	Item number
Rosenberger	D4S10A-1D5A5-A
Tyco	0-1823905-1

MAN Radio MMT advanced (from 2016)

The plugs for cameras 1 and 2 are at Position A. The interface is below the front panel on the right of the vehicle in the direction of travel, after removing the two housing covers (Pos. A, Fig. 108-III).

Please note that only one plug is available with some equipment versions.

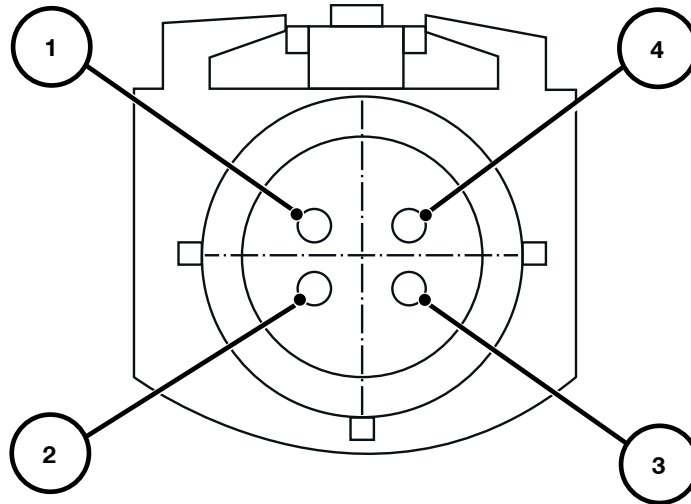
Fig. 108-III: Position of plug connector A / camera interface



T_254_000006_0001_G

This is the pin assignment of the plug connector and the mating connector.

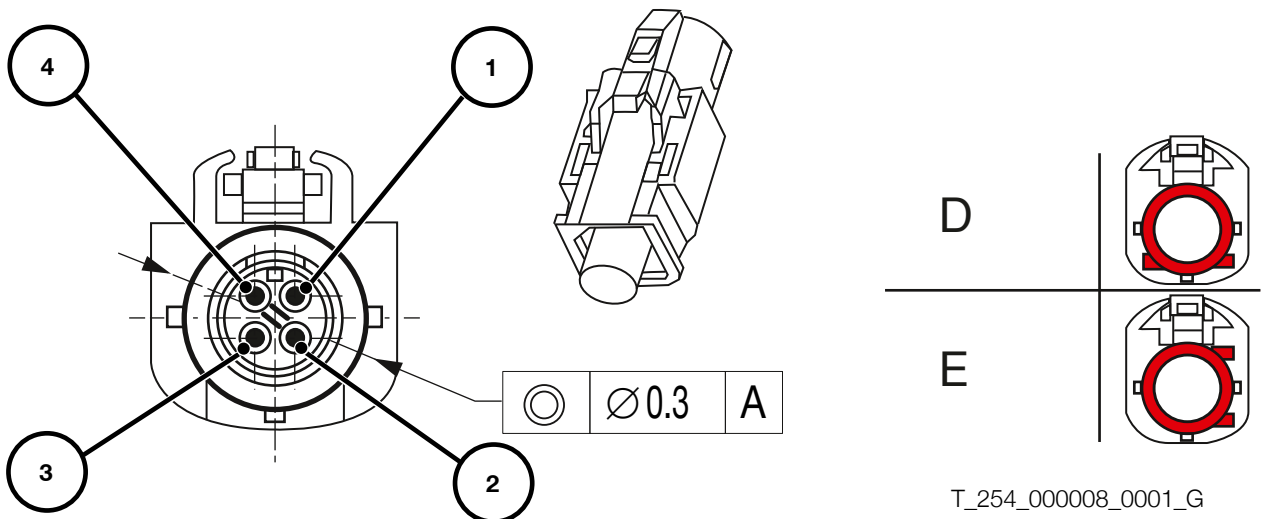
Fig. 109-III: Pin assignment of purple plug (code E) – camera 1 and green plug (code D) – camera 2 on the vehicle



T_254_000007_0001_G

- 1) Power supply + (12V with 5A fuse)
- 2) Video signal + (camera)
- 3) Power supply -
- 4) Video signal - (camera)

Fig. 110-III: Pin housing of the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2016)



T_254_000008_0001_G

Table 50-III: Where to source the mating connector for plug A (MMT 2016)

Plug	Manufacturer	Item number
Camera 1 purple (code D)	Rosenberger	D4K10A-1D5A5-D
Camera 2 green (code E)	Rosenberger	D4K10A-1D5A5-E

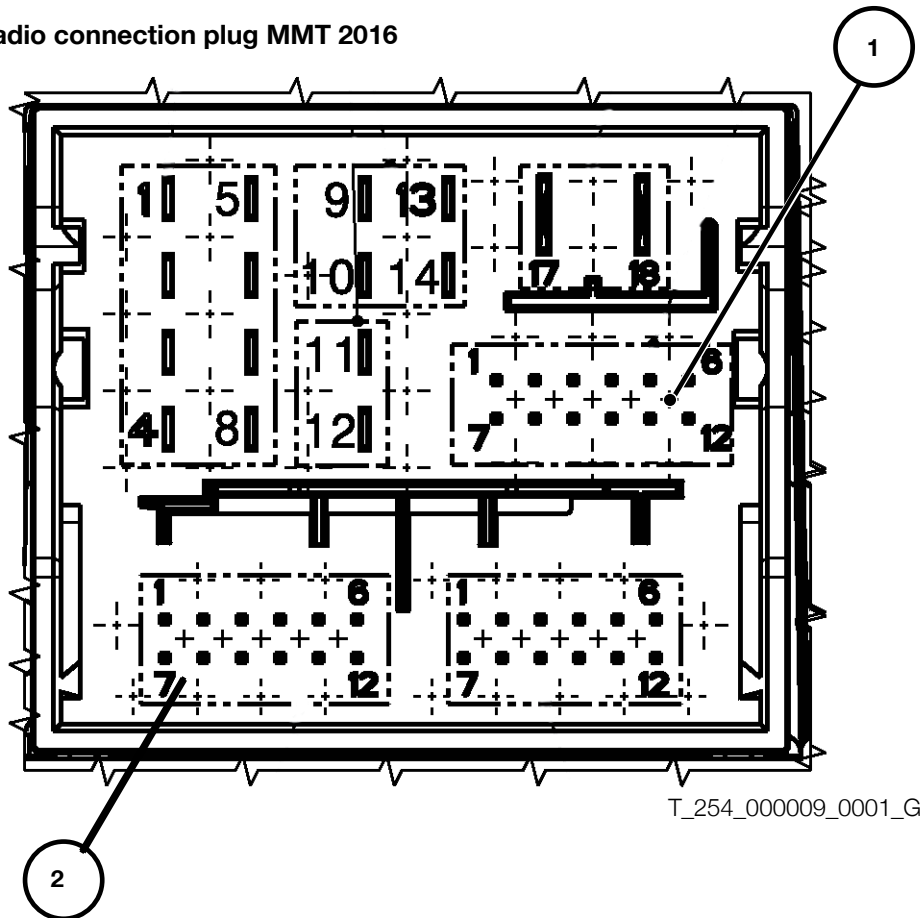
Activating the camera image via a contact

It is possible to activate the camera image by connecting a contact to the radio. Activation in the case of a radio that is switched off is also possible; the radio is switched on when the contact is connected and the camera image is displayed. In order to carry out activation, contact 1 must be connected to plug B for camera 1 and contact 11 must be connected to plug E for camera 2 with a potential of +12 V to +24 V.

Parametrisation or activation of the contacts is not necessary if equipment options 351MA (MAN VideoView video input (1 camera)) and 351MC (MAN VideoView video input (2 cameras)) are available ex works.

Subsequent activation of the contacts is possible with the service computer by means of item numbers 81.25890-7876 (MAN Media Advanced 2 – camera activation using analogue video input (1 camera)) and 81.25890-7877 (MAN Media Advanced 2 – camera activation using analogue video input (2 cameras)).

Fig. 111-III: Radio connection plug MMT 2016



T_254_000009_0001_G

- 1) Plug E
- 2) Plug B

Table 51-III: Where to source the radio connection plug

Contact	Description	MAN code	MAN item number
B / 1	Camera 1 activation	XF40 - 0<7	07.91216-1256
E / 11	Camera 2 activation	XF40 - 0<7	07.91216-1256

To ensure a perfect video display, shielded cables must be used.

The MAN Radio MMT advanced does not reverse the video image. For some applications, it may be necessary to use a camera with a reversed video image.

The CVBS (colour video blanking signal) video signal that our system supports must be transmitted using the PAL (720x576 pixels) or NTSC (720x480 pixels) as standard.

8.4 Additional consumers

As a basic principle, the connection of additional consumers is possible. If additional electrical loads are retrofitted, observe the following:

- There are no spare fuses in the central electrical system for use by the bodymaker. Extra fuses can be attached in a readied plastic container in front of the central electrical system.
- Do not tap into existing vehicle power circuits.
- Do not connect additional electric consumers to fuses that are already occupied.
- Every added circuit must be adequately scaled and protected by its own fuses. The rating of the fuse should ensure the protection of the wiring and not that of the system connected to it.
- Installation of additional open fuse carriers in the battery box is prohibited. These must be used only in areas that are protected against moisture or other environmental influences, e.g. in the cab. The body manufacturer bears sole responsibility if this is not observed and damage occurs as a result.
- Electrical systems must offer sufficient protection against all possible electrical faults and environmental influences without affecting the vehicle electrics.
- Freedom from feedback must be ensured in all cases. When selecting the size of the wire cross-section, the voltage drop and the heating of the conductor must be taken into account. Cross-sections below 0.75 mm² are to be avoided because their mechanical strength is not sufficient. The bodybuilder is responsible for the dimensioning.
- Minus and plus leads must have the same minimum cross-section.
- Current draw for 12-V equipment must be effected only via a voltage converter.
- Drawing from only one battery is impermissible because unequal charges lead to overloading and damage in the other battery. Under certain circumstances, e.g. for body-mounted equipment with a high power requirement (e.g. electrohydraulic liftgates) or in extreme climatic conditions, higher capacity batteries will be required.

Important notice

If the bodybuilder installs larger batteries, the cross-section of the battery cable must be adapted to suit the new power draw.

If consumers are directly connected to Terminal 15 (Pin 94 in the central electrics box, see Fig. 113-III) it is possible that entries will be logged in the error memories of control units as a result of a reverse flow of current into the vehicle's electrical system. Consumers must therefore be connected in accordance with the following instructions.

- **Power supply, terminal 15**
Always fit a relay that is triggered via Terminal 15 (Pin 94). The load must be connected via a fuse on Terminal 30 (Pins 90-1, 90-2 and 91, rear of central electrics box), see Fig. 113-III.
The maximum load must not exceed 10 A.

The tightening torque (M_a) of 5,5 Nm + / - 10% must be observed.

- **Power supply, terminal 30**
For maximum loads of up to 10 A the load must be connected through a circuit breaker at terminal 30 (Pins 90-1, 90-2 and 91, see Fig. 113-III, Central electrics box).
In the case of a load >10 amperes, connect directly to the batteries via a fuse or to the fuse box on the battery box (see chapter III section 8.9.1 fuse box).

The tightening torque (M_a) von 5,5 Nm + / - 10% must be observed.

It is possible to obtain an additional 50 ampere power tap by selecting extra equipment 307BE - body interface below the front panel.

If the interface is present, it can be found on the right below the front panel; it is possible to connect a maximum load of 50 amperes to the interface.

Fig. 112-III: Installation location of additional 50A body interface



T_254_000013_0001_G

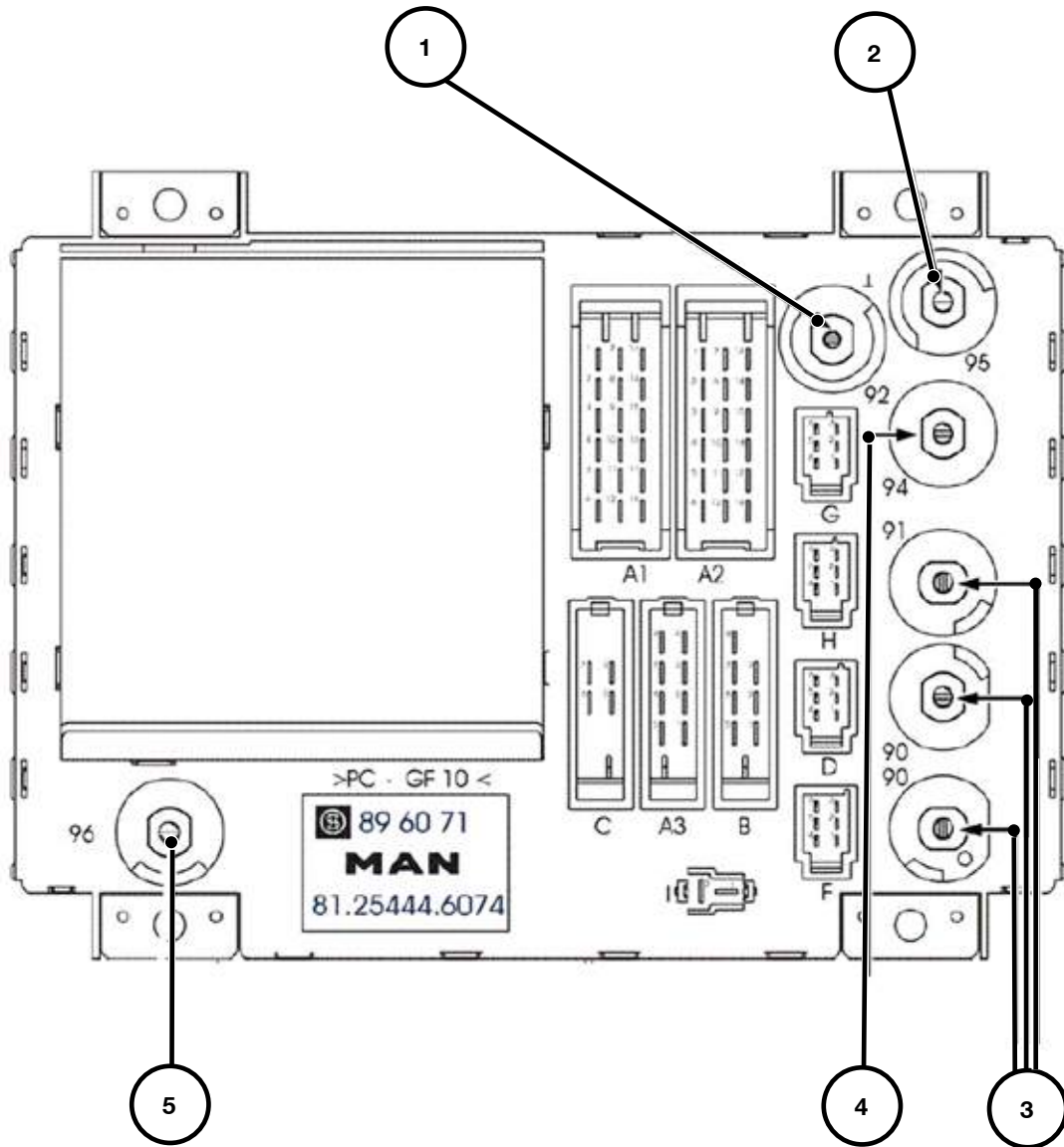
- Power supply, terminal 31**
 Do not connect to the batteries but instead to the ground points inside (see Fig. 114-III Ground point X1644 behind central electric unit) and outside (rear right engine mounting) the cab.

The tightening torque (M_a) of 9 Nm + / - 0,9 Nm must be observed.

Important notice

Do not make any alterations or additions to the onboard electrical system! This applies in particular to the central electrical system. Anyone performing an alteration is responsible for damage caused by the alteration.

Fig. 113-III: Central electrics box, rear view



T_200_000001_0001_G

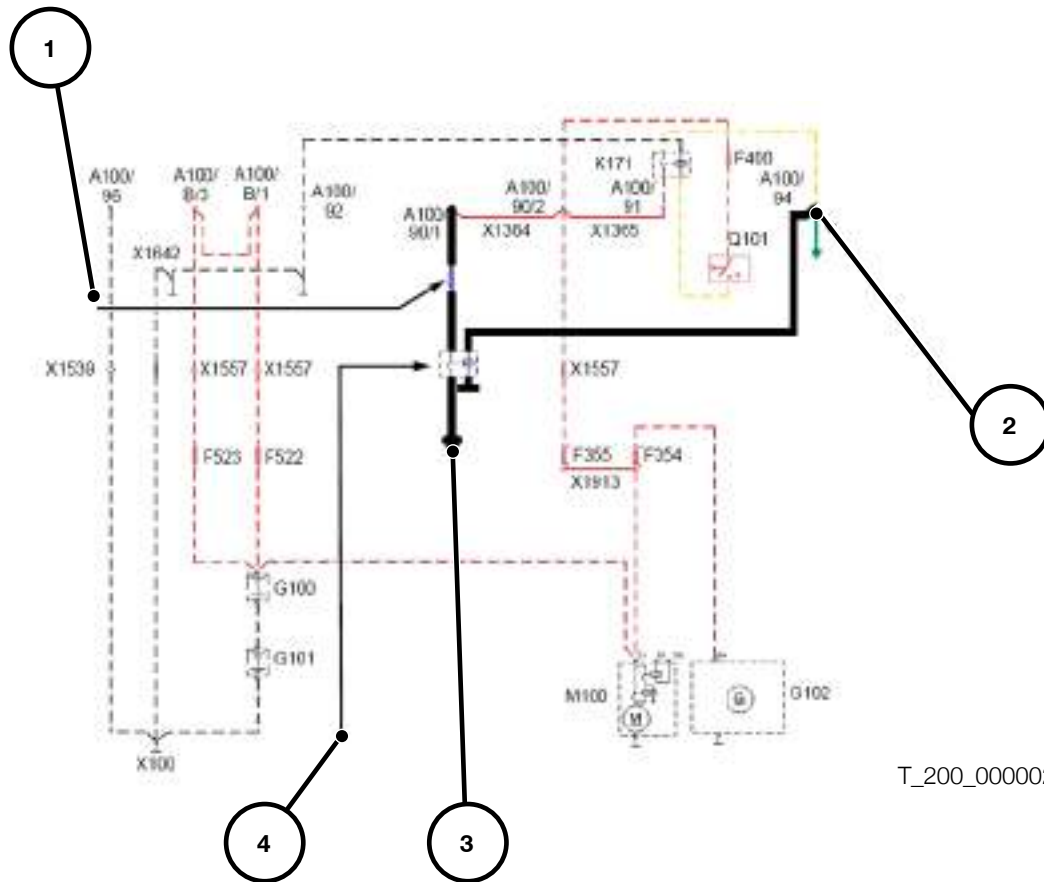
- 1) Terminal 31 (Using this pin as a ground point is not allowed.)
- 2) As standard, no cables are connected here. However, the pin may be used as an additional connecting pin - using a bridge (MAN-part no.: 81.25908-0059) to Pin 94 - for Terminal 15.
- 3) Terminal 30
- 4) Terminal 15
- 5) Terminal 31 (Using this pin as a ground point is not allowed.)

Fig. 114-III: Ground point X1644 behind central electric unit



T_200_000003_0001_G

Fig. 115-III: Wiring diagram, additional consumers



T_200_000002_0001_Z

- 1) Fuse as per rated current of permitted consumer
- 2) Only connect the supply voltage of Terminal 15 of consumers that can also be installed as standard on this connection (exception: relay control for additional consumers).
- 3) Additional consumer (maximum 10 A rated current)
- 4) Relay for voltage supply Terminal 15 for the additional consumers (e.g. 81.25902-0473).

A100	Central electrics box
F354	Main fuse, Terminal 30
F355	Main fuse, Terminal 30
F400	Steering-column lock fuse
F522	Line 30000 fuse
F523	Line 30000 fuse
G100	Battery 1
G101	Battery 2
G102	Alternator
K171	Relay, Terminal 15
M100	Starter motor
Q101	Ignition lock
X1 00	Ground connection engine
X1 364	Bridge between connector pins 90-1 and 90-2 of the central electrics box
X1 365	Bridge between connector pins 90-2 and 91 of the central electrics box
X1 539	X1 557 plug connector, cab interface
X1 642	Ground point in cab behind combined instrument
X1 644	Ground point in cab next to central electrics box
X1 913	Bridge for cable 30076 in the cable conduit on the engine

8.4.1 Notes on charging balance

A vehicle without additional electrical equipment requires approx. 50 A in order to supply the cab and engine electronics as well as its external lighting. All additional consumers must be supplied with the remaining current from the alternator.

In order to assess the electrical system it can be helpful to draw up a charging balance.

- Application case for positive charging balance
During the loading process, 25 Ah (approx. 30 minutes of liftgate operation with the vehicle stationary and engine off) are drawn from the battery. The vehicle is subsequently driven for one hour to its destination (average engine speed 1200 rpm). During this trip the vehicle battery is charged with 50 Ah.
- Application case for negative charging balance
During the loading process, 25 Ah (approx. 30 minutes of liftgate operation with the vehicle stationary and engine off) are drawn from the battery. The vehicle is subsequently driven for 15 minutes to its destination (average engine speed 1200 rpm). During this trip the vehicle battery is charged with 12.5 Ah. The amount of current drawn from the vehicle battery by liftgate operation cannot be fully replaced during the short period for which the vehicle is driven.

As a basic principle, whenever additional electrical consumers are installed in the vehicle it must be ensured that the vehicle's battery and alternator are dimensioned in accordance with the load. Beside bodies, additional electrical consumers also include electrical heaters and consumers that promote comfort.

Table 52-III lists the remaining charge current in dependence on the alternator installed and the respective engine speed in each case.

The sum of the current draw for all additional consumers for the period of vehicle operation must not exceed the charge-current values listed in Table 52-III. If over long periods more current is drawn from the vehicle battery than is fed to it, there is a risk that the battery will suffer permanent damage by deep discharge, for example.

The bodybuilder must ensure that the alternator and battery are adequately dimensioned for the vehicle operating profile envisaged.

Table 52-III: Remaining charge current

Alternator	Remaining current for additional loads at engine speed rpm				
	600	800	1000	1200	1400
Bosch NCB1 / 80A	4 A	12 A	17 A	19 A	20 A
Bosch NCB2 / 110A	20 A	33 A	38 A	40 A	44 A
Bosch LEB10 / 120A	31 A	43 A	47 A	50 A	52 A
Melco L3B / 110A	3 A	20 A	30 A	36 A	41 A
Melco / 120 A	3 A	30 A	41 A	47 A	50 A
Prestolite / 190 A	80 A	105 A	118 A	125 A	128 A

III. Chassis

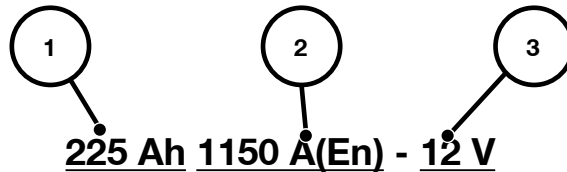
The current drawn from the battery must not exceed the following maximum values.

- For periods of time ≤ 10 s: Currents up to 50% of the battery's cold-start current
- For periods of time ≥ 10 s: Currents up to a maximum of 20% of the battery's cold-start current

In general, it must be ensured that the vehicle is always able to start.

The cold-start current (Pos. 2 in Fig. 116-III) is stated on the battery next to its rated capacity.

Fig. 116-III: Battery mark



T_266_000001_0001_G

- 1) Rated capacity 225 Ah
- 2) Cold-start current 1150 A as per EN standard
- 3) Rated voltage 12 V

In general, it must be ensured that the body does not increase the quiescent current of the vehicle.

If drawing energy from the battery while the engine is not running is unavoidable (e.g. when the vehicle is being used for resting or due to liftgate operation), it must be ensured that the amount of energy drawn is replaced when the engine is in operation.

It must be noted that tapping the battery bridge for a 12-V supply is not permitted.

12-V consumers are to be supplied exclusively by the vehicle's 24-V electrical system and a correspondingly dimensioned DC/DC converter.

8.5 Batteries

The battery is connected to the vehicle electrical system via two battery poles. To protect against injury or damage during maintenance work, the main battery switch must be switched off.

When removing the terminals from batteries and operating the master battery switch, be sure to proceed in the following order:

- Switch off all loads (e.g. lights, warning flashing indicator).
- Switch off the ignition
- Close the doors.
- Wait for an after-run time of 60 seconds before disconnecting the batteries (negative terminal first)
- The electrical battery master switch requires an extra 15 seconds.

Reason:

Many vehicle functions are controlled by the central on-board computer (ZBR) which must first save its latest status before it can be de-energised. If, for example, the doors remain open, the time constant up to the controlled shutdown of the central on-board computer (ZBR) is 5 minutes, because the ZBR also monitors the door-closing functions. If the doors are open, it is therefore necessary to wait for more than 5 minutes before disconnecting the batteries: Closing the doors shortens the waiting time to 60 s. If the sequence described here is not observed, this will inevitably lead to diagnostic memory entries in some control units (e.g. in the central on-board computer ZBR) or to data/configuration loss.

Excepted from this is of course operation of the EMERGENCY-OFF switch in case of emergency.

Important notice

When the engine is running:

- Do not turn off the master battery switch
- Do not loosen or disconnect the battery terminals.

From the end of 2016, the battery monitor will be introduced in series for vehicles whose cabs are equipped with a bunk and have 175Ah or 225Ah batteries.

It is necessary when relocating the battery box or extending the measurement line to ensure that the module is recalibrated.

Further information on the battery monitor is available on the MAN After Sales Portal. (www.asp.mantruckandbus.com, registration required).

8.5.1 Handling and maintaining batteries

Check batteries at regular intervals.

The battery tester DSS-7814 HD MAN, item number 08.78024-0005, must be used for testing batteries.

Rapid-charge and jump-start devices must not be used for trickle charging as this could destroy control units. Jump-starting from one vehicle to another is permissible, provided that the instructions in the Operator's Manual are followed.



Observe the following when handling batteries:

Table 53-III:

Standstill time	<p>For a standstill time of more than 30 days:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> → Switch off the main battery switch. → Disconnect batteries.
Open-circuit voltage never below 12.3 V before delivery	<p>The open-circuit voltage must not fall below 12.3 V at any time prior to delivery to the customer.</p> <p>Charge batteries at less than 12.5 V open circuit voltage. To ensure that the open-circuit voltage does not fall below 12.3 V by the next check, batteries that do not have an open-circuit voltage of at least 12.5 V when checked must be charged.</p>
Always recharge batteries after they have been subjected to high load.	<p>Regardless of the standstill time, always charge batteries if they have been subjected to heavy loads, for example after fitting or repairing a liftgate with subsequent functional test, or if the vehicle has been started/manoeuvred several times without being driven afterwards.</p>

Vehicles must not be started or moved without batteries.

Batteries age very quickly if the battery voltage drops below 12.5 V for an extended period. If batteries should prove to be damaged or faulty at the vehicle handover to the customer, they will be charged back to the body manufacturer.

Further information on handling and maintenance of batteries can be found in TI 1140TA, which is available from MAN Service and the MAN After Sales Portal.

8.5.2 Handling and care of maintenance-free batteries

When the batteries installed ex-works have been consumed, only maintenance-free batteries will be installed by MAN workshops. These differ from conventional batteries in their enhanced deep discharge durability, longer shelf-life and improved power consumption during charging.

However, maintenance-free batteries still have to be recharged from time to time. The battery tester DSS-7814 HD MAN, item number 08.78024-0005, must be used for testing batteries.

Also see Section 8.5.1 Handling and care of batteries

Important!

The covers on the maintenance-free batteries must not be opened. Air exchange can lead to premature corrosion inside the battery.

A detailed Service Information bulletin “SI number: 1140TAd” is available from MAN Service and the MAN After Sales Portal.

8.6 Lighting installations

Alteration of the lighting means that the partial operating permit according to EC directive 76/756/EEC including amendment 97/28/EC becomes void. This is the case especially if the arrangement of the lights is altered, or a light is replaced by one not approved by MAN.

The bodymaker is responsible for adherence to legal requirements. In particular the side marker lamps in LED technology must not be modified with other lights because it will destroy the central on-board computer!

Observe the maximum load on the lighting circuits.

Fitting higher rated fuses than the corresponding ratings in the central electrics box is not permitted.

The following guideline figures are intended as maximums:

Table 54-III: Lighting current paths

Parking light	5 A	each side
Brake light	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Turn indicator	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Rear fog lamps	4x21 W	Incandescent bulbs only, LED not permitted
Reversing light	5 A	

The term “incandescent bulbs only” indicates that these circuits are monitored by the central on-board computer for faults, which are then displayed.

The installation of LED lighting elements that are not approved by MAN is prohibited. It must be noted that MAN vehicles employ a ground cable: use of the vehicle frame as a return line is not permitted (see also Chapter III, Section 8.2.2 “Ground cable”).

Following installation of bodywork the basic beam alignment of headlamps must be newly adjusted. On vehicles with headlamp levelling this must be performed direct on the headlamps because adjustment by the regulator does not replace basic alignment on the vehicle. Extensions or modifications to the lighting system must be carried out in consultation with the nearest MAN Service outlet because it may become necessary to reparameterise the vehicle’s electronics using MAN-cats (see also Chapter III, Section 8.1.3).

8.7 Display and instrumentation concept

The combined instrument is incorporated into the control unit network by means of a CAN bus system. A fault is displayed in plain text directly in the central display or through a diagnostic memory entry. The combined instrument receives all the information that is displayed in the form of a CAN message. Only long-life LEDs are used instead of incandescent bulbs.

The annunciator panel with its symbols is vehicle-specific, i.e. with only the ordered functions and fittings. If additional functions are to be displayed (e.g. a retrofitted liftgate), reparameterisation is necessary. A lens that matches the new parameters can be ordered from the MAN Spare-parts Service.

Bodybuilders cannot have functions of the body, e.g. liftgate or tipper operation, parameterised on the vehicle nor can they have the combined instrument fitted with the required symbols during assembly. It is neither possible to incorporate functions of the body on an "in reserve" basis nor is it permitted for the bodybuilder to incorporate its own functions into the central display or tap signals from the back of the combination instrument.

8.8 Safety and assistance systems

Safety and assistance systems are additional systems that assist the driver or reduce his workload.

MAN designates the following safety-related systems, among others, as assistance systems:

- Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
- Lane Guard System (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

As of 01.11.2015, in all EU countries it will become a requirement for the registration of new vehicles that they be fitted with emergency braking and lane guard systems.

It must therefore be noted that vehicles without the necessary equipment can no longer be registered. In the case of retrofitted deactivations, their legality must be confirmed by an officially recognised expert and an entry in the registration documents cleared with the appropriate national authorities.

Important information on the lane guard system (LGS)

The lane guard system (LGS) is a camera-based driver assistance system. An acoustic signal (also referred to as “rumble strip noise”) warns the driver if the vehicle is about to leave the traffic lane.

The lane guard system warns the driver with an acoustic signal as soon as it detects that the vehicle is leaving the traffic lane without signalling. In order to ensure the acoustic warning, the original MAN loudspeakers (Dual Coil Speakers) must remain installed.

Important information on the emergency brake assist (EBA)

The emergency brake assist system (EBA) is a driver/brake assistance system. It warns the driver of a potential rear-end collision accident and initiates action when it detects an emergency situation. If necessary, the EBA will automatically apply the vehicle’s brakes in order to minimise the effects of a collision or avoid an accident entirely.

The EBA warns the driver with (among others) an acoustic signal, as soon as it detects a risk of collision. In order to ensure the acoustic warning, the original MAN loudspeakers (Dual Coil Speakers) must remain installed.

The brake lights must be activated in the event of braking intervention by the emergency brake assist system. Changing the brake lights fitted at the factory or replacing them with rear light units that are not approved by MAN is therefore not permitted. Further information about the lighting installation can be found in Section 6.6 “Lighting installations”.

For further information on the function and operation of safety and assistance systems, please refer to the vehicle operating manual or the currently applicable MAN sales documents.

The components described in the chapters that follow are to some extent individual components but must be viewed together for the function of the safety and assistance systems.

For assembly or conversion work, the following chapters must be observed.

8.8.1 Yaw-rate sensor

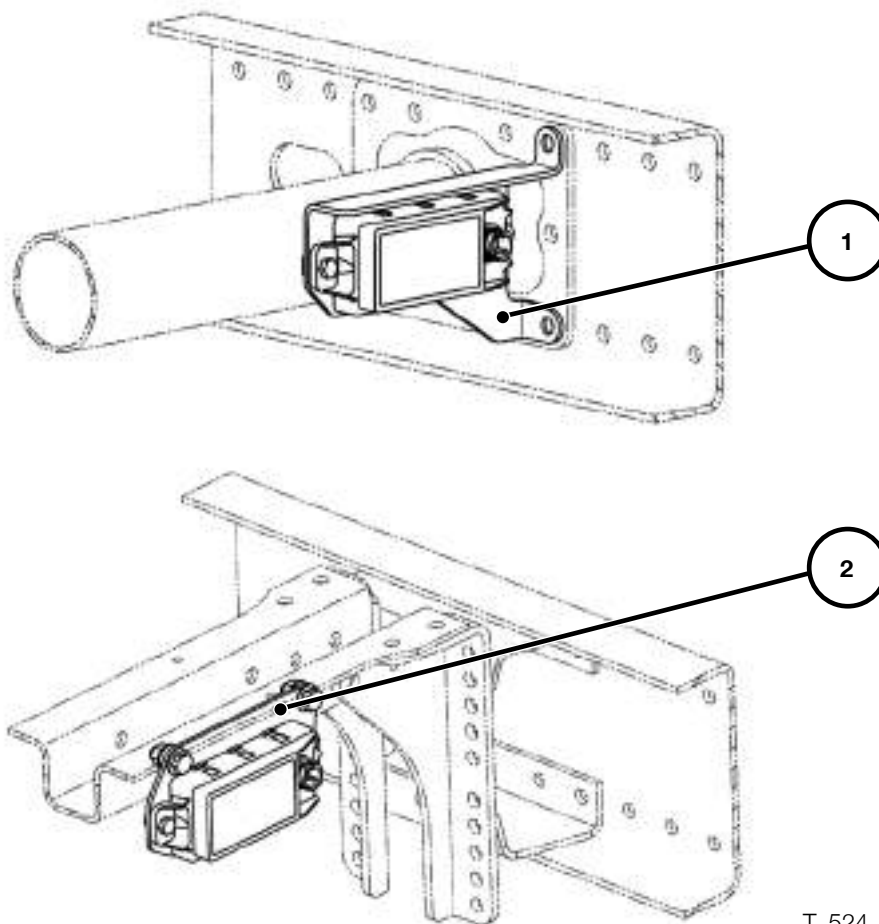
The yaw rate sensor is used for the following systems:

- Electronic Stability Program (ESP)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)
- Lane Guard System (LGS)

The position and attachment of the yaw rate sensor should only be modified in exceptional cases. If relocation is absolutely necessary, the following points must be complied with:

- The yaw rate sensor must be mounted either to a cross member or side member of the chassis frame.
- Only original brackets available ex works may be used. These can be obtained from the MAN Spare Parts Service.
- The yaw rate sensor is fixed in place by M8 screws (tightening torque 15 Nm +/- 1.5 Nm).
- The alignment of the yaw sensor ex works must be maintained. If turning it is unavoidable, then the viability of this must be agreed in writing with MAN (for address, see "Publisher" above) before relocation.
- The yaw rate sensor may be displaced at maximum by the following values relative to the position installed ex works:
 - Along the X-axis +/-300 mm – but it must be attached in the area between the last steered front axle and the first rear axle
 - Along the Y-axis within the track width of the chassis frame
 - Along the Z-axis +/-300 mm – depending on installation position
- The yaw rate sensor may not come into contact with other components once installed.
- The yaw rate sensor may not be installed in an area subject to high temperatures (permissible temperatures range from -40°C to 80°C).
- If the yaw rate sensor is mounted in an area subject to thrown-up dirt and stones, a suitable protective cover must be provided.

Fig. 117-III: Example of yaw-rate sensor installation



- 1) Bracket 85.25441.5018
- 2) Bracket 85.25441.0052

T_524_000003_0002_G

8.8.2 Radar sensor

The radar sensor is used for the following systems:

- Lane guidance system (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

Information

On vehicles where the field scanned by the radar sensor is either temporarily or permanently obscured by attachments or other components (e.g. snowplough blade, cable-winch attachment, other covers or any type of plate etc.), the EBA and ACC functions must be permanently deactivated using a conversion data file.

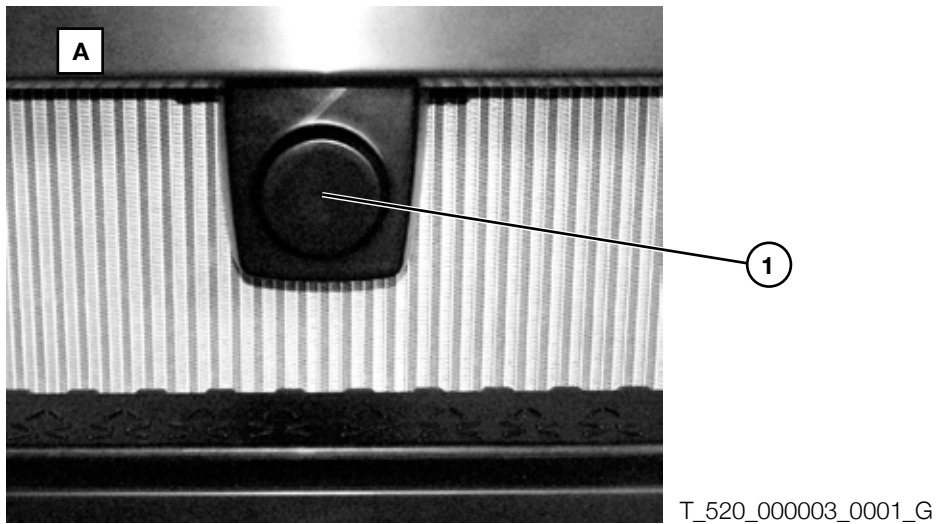
The vehicle's admissibility for registration must be checked before the conversion.

The radar sensor provides information to the safety and assistance systems installed about what lies ahead of the vehicle. The radar sensor is installed at the front of the vehicle in the bumper area (see Fig. 118-III Detail A).

Fig. 118-III: Cab front showing installation location of radar sensor



T_520_000001_0001_G

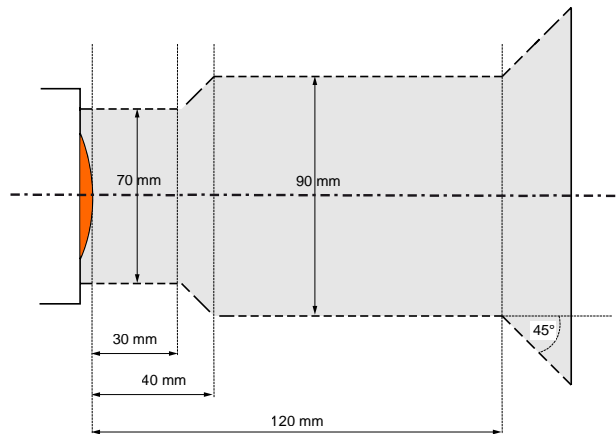
Fig. 119-III: Cab front Detail A (radar sensor with cover)

The radar sensor is a component relevant to safety and is located behind a cover (see Fig. 119-III, Position 1) in the vicinity of the step surface on the front of the vehicle. To ensure trouble-free operation of the EBA it is essential that the following points are observed.

During operation, it must be ensured that the radar sensor cannot be either temporarily or permanently obscured. The sensor detection zone will be limited if the area scanned by the radar is partially or fully masked by any (front-end) attachments.

The following illustration shows the minimum field scanned by the radar sensor that must be kept free of obstructions.

Fig. 120-III: Field scanned by radar sensor



T_520_000004_0002_G

During operation, flexible components on the vehicle or attachments (electric cables, hoses, wire cables or similar) must also be prevented from entering the field scanned by the radar sensor.

The following instructions must be observed for a trouble-free operation of the radar sensor:

- The position of the radar sensor determined at the factory, its cover and attachment bracket must not be altered.
- Neither the position nor the location, material or surface characteristics (using adhesives, grinding, painting etc.) may be modified.
- The bracket – including the fastening of the radar sensor – may not be loosened or modified.
- Attaching other components or cables/hoses to the sensor bracket is not permitted.
- Modifications to or interventions in the cable harness are not permitted.

If loosening the fastening or removing the radar sensor cannot be avoided due to maintenance or repair work, the following guidelines must also be observed for re-installation:

- The radar sensor together with its bracket and cover must be re-attached in the position determined by the factory.
- Only MAN Genuine Parts may be used for fastening purposes or as spares.
- The sensor must be calibrated by an MAN Service workshop.

Due to the fact that rear-axle slip angle influences the function of the radar sensor, the sensor must be adjusted by an MAN Service workshop subsequent to any modification of the rear axle, axle retrofitting or change of wheelbase.

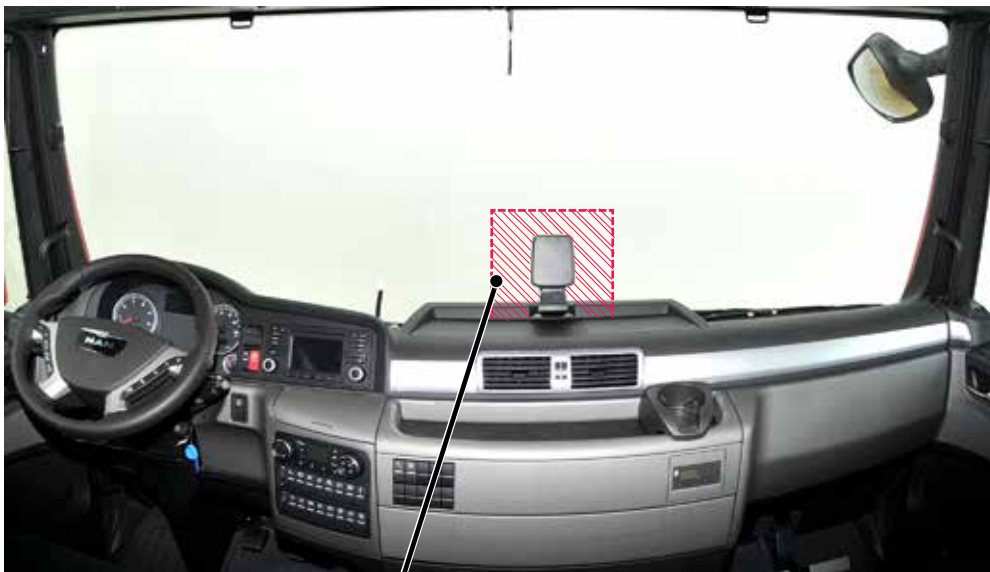
8.8.3 Multi-functional camera

The multi-functional camera is used for the following systems:

- Lane guidance system (LGS)
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)
- Emergency Brake Assist (EBA)

The multi-functional camera is mounted in the centre or +/-8 cm off center (depending on the cab) on the inside of the windscreen.

Fig. 121-III: Cab interior with multi-functional camera



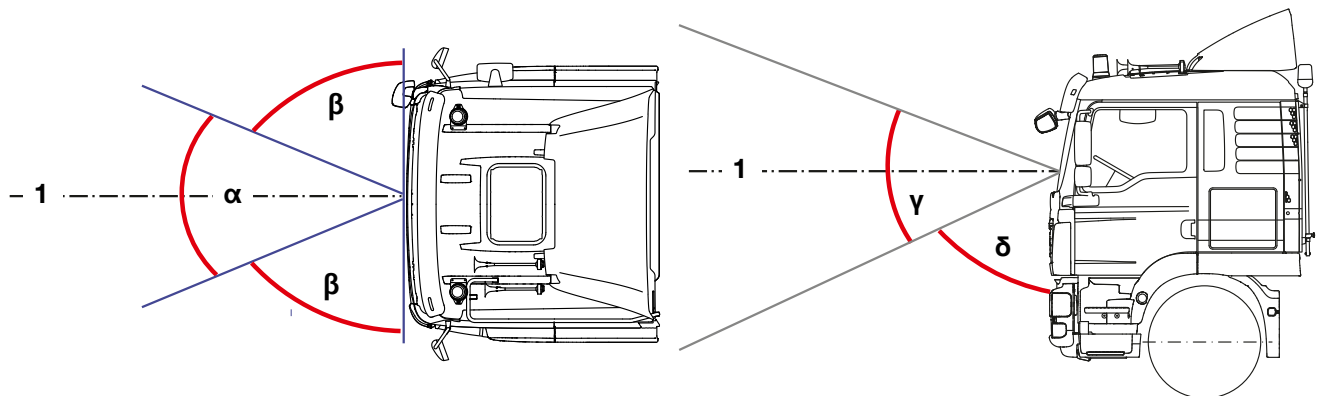
T_520_000007_0001_G

- A) Area A shown in Fig. 121-III may not be covered or altered within a distance of 3 cm from the multi-functional camera. This area is used for heat dissipation and must not be blocked.

The following instructions must be observed for a trouble-free operation of the multi-function camera:

- Adequate ventilation of the multi-functional camera must be ensured at all times. Attachments in the area of the dashboard must not disturb the ventilation of the multi-functional camera.
- It must be ensured that the multi-function camera cannot be either temporarily or permanently obscured during operation of the vehicle. (See Fig. 122-III)
- The coverage (areas α horizontal and γ vertical in Fig. 122-III) of the multi-functional camera is limited as soon as front attachment parts cover the visual field partially or completely. The following illustrations show the minimum visual field of the multi-functional camera, including necessary tolerances, that is to be kept free.
- During operation, flexible vehicle/attachment parts (cables, hoses, ropes and the like) must be prevented from getting into the visual field of the multi-functional camera.
- If removal of the fastener or of the multi-functional camera cannot be avoided, the following specifications apply to reassembly.
 - The multi-functional camera incl. bracket and cover must be reattached at the location defined by the factory. This location may not be changed.
 - Only MAN Genuine Parts must be used for fastening or as replacement.
 - Modifications to or interventions in the cable harness are not permitted.
 - Calibration of the multi-functional camera must be carried out by an MAN service workshop.

Fig. 122-III: Visual field of the multi-functional camera



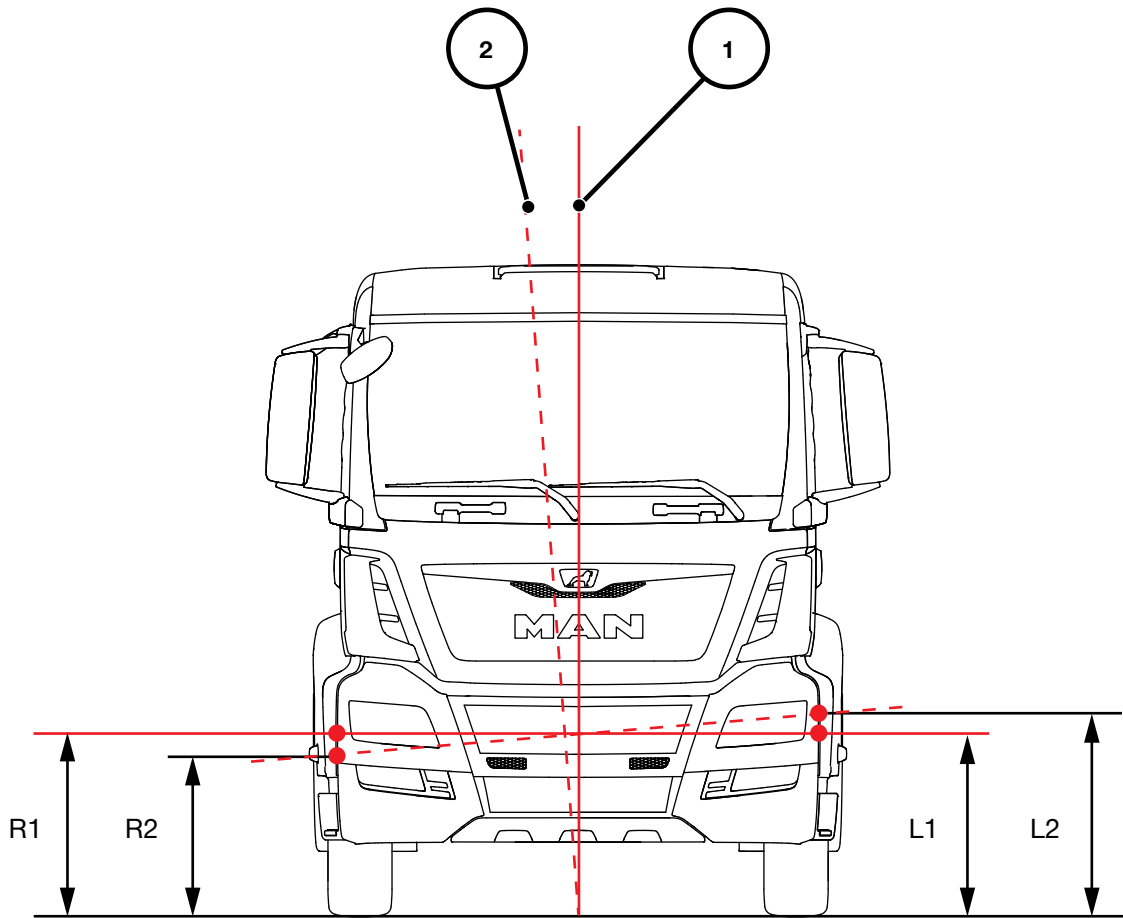
T_520_000008_0002_G

- 1) Center lens of multi-functional camera
- α Visual field of multi-functional camera to be kept free, 55° horizontal
- β Possible range for attachments, each 62.5° horizontal
- γ Visual field of multi-functional camera to be kept free, 41° vertical
- δ Possible range for attachments, 65° vertical

In addition, body and conversion work on the chassis may have a negative effect on the function of the multi-functional camera. For this reason, re-calibration of the multi-functional camera by an MAN Service workshop may be necessary following body or conversion work. In this regard, the following instructions must be observed.

- If the body or conversion work causes only slight changes to the ex works alignment of the vehicle's vertical axis (see Fig. 123-III), re-calibration is not necessary. In order to determine the deviation, any desired points on the outer side of the bumper on both sides of the vehicle can be marked prior to body/conversion work. With the aid of these markings and measurements of the height above the road surface, the difference between the ex works state and the state subsequent to body/conversion work can be determined. If the difference between the measurements prior and subsequent to body/conversion work is more than 20 mm on either side, re-calibration is necessary.
- Re-calibration is also necessary in the case of modifications that permanently change the position of the multi-functional camera in terms of height relative to the ex works state, for example, changes of tyre or modifications to the running-gear suspension.

Fig. 123-III: Checking the alignment of the vehicle's vertical axis



T_520_000005_0001_G

- 1) Vehicle's vertical axis on delivery ex works
- 2) Vehicle's vertical axis subsequent to body/conversion work

- R1) Measurement prior to body/conversion work (right side of vehicle)
- R2) Measurement subsequent to body/conversion work (right side of vehicle)

- L1) Measurement prior to body/conversion work (left side of vehicle)
- L2) Measurement subsequent to body/conversion work (left side of vehicle)

8.9 Electrical Boxes on the chassis frame

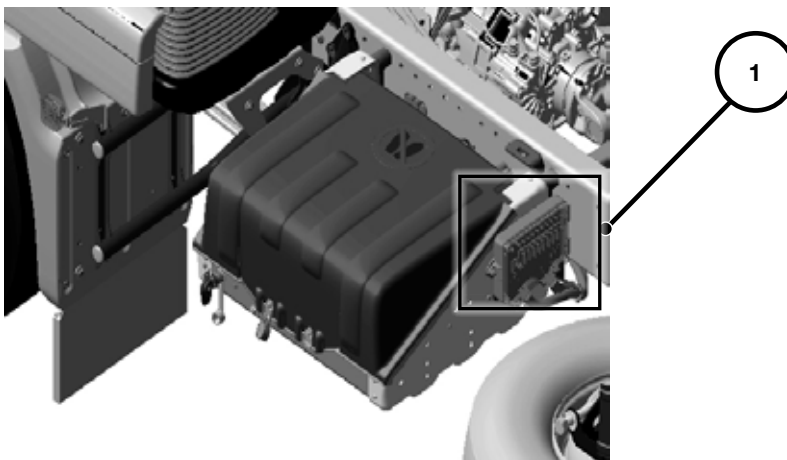
Depending on the equipment and vehicle version, different electrical boxes may be present on the vehicle.

The electrical boxes are required for different functions of the vehicle. If the vehicle is converted, it may be necessary to relocate these.

Fuse box

With the introduction of the D08 SCR only engines, there will be a fuse box on the battery box that is always mounted behind the battery box on an additional bracket.

Fig. 124-III: Exemplary depiction of a fuse box on the battery box



T_254_000011_0001_G

1) Fuse box

Depending on the vehicle equipment the fuse box contains the following fuses:

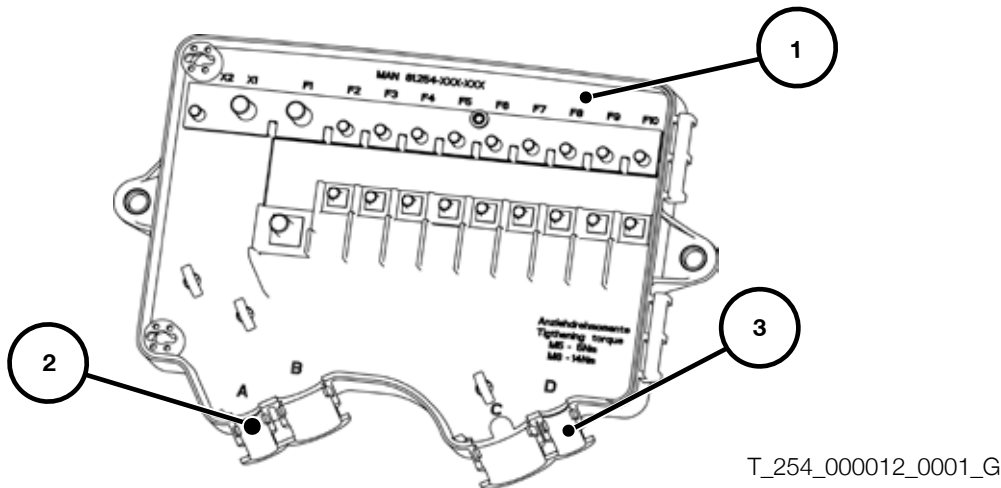
- Main fuse
- Engine/interaction of engine components
- Gearbox
- Fuel filter
- Flame-start system
- Body interface

Important notice

Altering the fuse rating and an additional power tap are not permitted.

The figure below shows the body interface in the fuse box. The body interface must only be used if it is not yet occupied (please see chapter 8.4 Additional Consumers). Maximum tap of 50A at connection F8 must not be exceeded here. The line inputs A and D must be used.

Fig. 125-III: Fuse box



- 1) Connection F8 – body interface (maximum 50A)/tightening torque (Ma) M5 - 5 Nm/M8 14 Nm
- 2) Line input A (NW 10)
- 3) Line input D (NW 10)

The position and attachment of the fuse box should only be modified in exceptional cases. If modification is absolutely necessary, the following points must be complied with:

- Assembly only above the lower frame edge and not in the splashing water area of the front or rear axle
- The cable outlet must always point downwards (like ex plant).
- Only the original brackets available ex plant may be used; the reverse of the box must be supported over as large an area as possible on the bracket.
- The fuse box must not be installed in a hot area. Permissible temperatures are from -40°C to +80°C.
- Relocation is only possible in the area of the available electrical connection lengths.
- Extending the connecting lines not permitted.
- If new connecting lines are needed, these cables must be ordered or produced at the required lengths (see below table “Connecting line for fuse box + 4000 mm”).
- The series connecting cables may be extended by a maximum of 4000 mm.
- If extended ex plant connecting cables for the fuse box are already ordered and available on a car, additional extension is not permitted.

The ex plant option of obtaining longer connecting cables on the fuse box using the sales code 307LQ “cable harness extension fuse box” exists, thus making a variable relocation in accordance with the points above possible. This sales code is always an extra, and is not included in the standard scope of delivery.

Table 55-III: Connecting line for fuse box + 4000 mm

	Note	Shown in the drawing
Connecting line + 4000mm over series	Without battery master switch	81.25474-6252
	With battery master switch mechanical or electrical	81.25474-6262



NOTICE

IV.

Body

1.0 General requirements

1.1 Requirements

The respective operating conditions pertaining where commercial vehicles are deployed are decisive for design. We assume that bodybuilders observe this and take it into account when working out the body concept. It is also expected that bodies are carefully designed to prevent vehicle overloading.

To this end, the following points, amongst others, must be checked.

- Weight distribution (e.g. permissible axle load, minimum axle load)
- Dimensions (e.g. overall length, overall width)
- Material loads (e.g. on chassis frame and auxiliary frame)
- Compatibility between electrical systems (e.g. battery, alternator, wiring)

To achieve optimum payload carrying capability the chassis must be weighed before work starts on the body. Calculations can then be made to determine the best position of the center of gravity for payload and body as well as the optimum body length.

Important notice

The design of the auxiliary frame, the connection between chassis and body and the ensuring of stability are all the responsibility of the bodybuilder.

1.2 Accessibility and clearance

Accessibility

Access to the filler necks of fuel and AdBlue tanks and other operating fluids (e.g. cut-out for pump nozzle) must be ensured. In addition, accessibility to chassis components (e.g. spare-wheel lift, battery box, air filter, exhaust silencer, brakes) for purpose of service or repair may not be restricted by the body.

Controls must exhibit the necessary minimum clearance and be able to be moved without restriction (e.g. the latching system of the cab tilting mechanism).

Stamped vehicle identification numbers, model plates or other features serving the purpose of identification and applied or attached ex works must not be obscured by vehicle bodies or modifications.

Clearance

General:

The freedom of movement of moving parts must not be adversely affected by the body. Amongst others, the following points must be observed when determining the requisite freedom of movement.

- Maximum spring compression
- Dynamic spring compression during travel
- bounce when pulling away or braking,
- sideways tilt when cornering,
- Operation with snow chains
- Limp-home mode characteristics of the air spring (e.g. damage to an air-spring bellows during a trip)

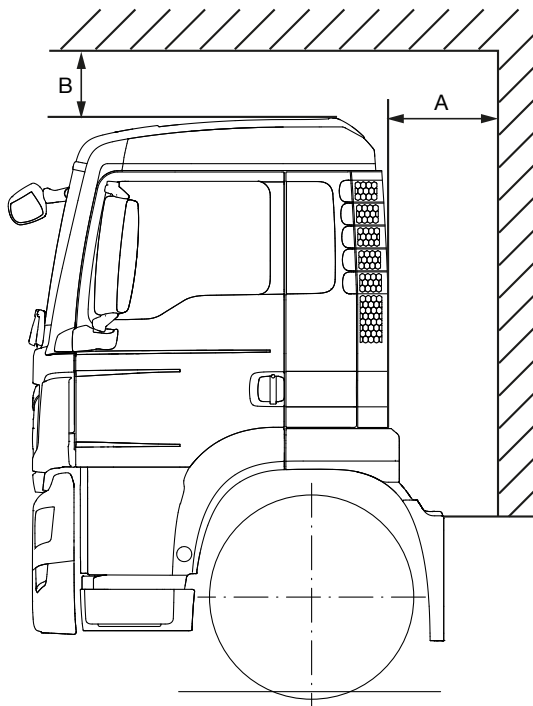
Cab:

Acceleration occurring during driving operation leads to rolling and pitching movements of the cab. These movements must not be hampered by the body. The body builder must ensure that the following distances between cab and body are maintained (see Table 01-IV and Fig. 01-IV).

Table 01-IV: Minimum distance between cab and body

Model range	Cab	Dimension A [mm]	Dimension B [mm]
TGL/TGM	C, DK	50	50
	L, LX	60	50

Fig. 01-IV: Clearance between cab and body



T_670_000003_0001_G

A – Distance between cab rear wall and body
 B – Distance between cab roof and body

Cabs are equipped with a tilting mechanism. It must be ensured that tilting can take place without hindrance. No parts that could pose a hindrance may protrude into the tilt radius. The tilt radii of the cabs are stated in the chassis drawings (obtainable from MANTED www.manted.de, registration required).

Notes

It is possible that parts will protrude above the frame top edge on some equipment variants in the operating states described above. For example:

- Brake cylinders
- gear control (gearshift linkage, control cable),
- parts of the running gear (wishbone, shock absorber bracket).

If components of the chassis project over the auxiliary frame top edge, an additional reinforcing frame on the auxiliary frame will create space. The reinforcing frame can be designed to further reinforce the auxiliary frame.

1.3 Handling characteristics and driving resistances

Bodies have a significant influence on the vehicle's handling characteristics and driving resistances. These should not be subjected to unnecessary negative influence by the body.

The following, for example, have a negative influence on handling characteristics.

- Uneven load distribution (e.g. heavy crane behind cab or at rear end)
- High centers of gravity of body and payload

An uneven load distribution as a result of the body can, for example, be countered by relocating parts such as the tank, battery box and spare wheel.

The vehicle equipment, for instance, may influence the effects of bodies and payloads with high centres of gravity. To this end, MAN offers equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity.

Increasing the driving resistances leads, for example, to increased fuel consumption and thus to increased CO₂ emission.

1.4 Vibration

When the body is designed, care must be taken that no impermissible vibration loads occur during operation. They can impair handling and ride comfort, for example. Bodies optimised for payload are especially sensitive in this regard.

These include, for example:

- Bodies without an auxiliary frame or with a multi-part auxiliary frame
- Bodies with auxiliary frames made from lightweight metals (e.g. aluminium)

In addition, as little vibration as possible is to be transmitted from the body to the chassis (e.g. bodies with separate motors).

If impermissible vibration occurs after completion or during the operation of a vehicle its cause must be eliminated.

1.5 Special feature of vehicles with lifting axles

Lifting axles can only be fully functional when the body design is matched to them.

The function can be restricted by the following.

- Cramped installation spaces (e.g. extremely low bodies)
- Unfavourable weight distribution (e.g. big loading cranes at rear end of frame)

When a lifting trailing axle is lifted, the front axle of the vehicle experiences a considerable lightening of the load. In conjunction with back-heavy body concepts (e.g. rear loading cranes), handling characteristics may be seriously impaired. The lifting facility must be disabled if more than 80% of the permissible drive axle load is reached when travelling unladen with the crane and with the axle lifted or if the minimum front-axle load (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.8) is not reached.

For manoeuvring purposes the trailing axle can be relieved if the auxiliary frame and body are of adequate size (moving-off aid). The higher bending and torsional forces acting on the body and the frame structure must then be taken into account.

1.6 Vehicles with outriggers

Truck chassis are sometimes fitted with bodies that necessitate outriggers to ensure stability. Example of such bodies are loading cranes, skylifters and concrete pumps.

As a basic principle, a distinction can be drawn between two outrigger variants:

- outrigger operation with the wheels in contact with the ground
- outrigger operation with the wheels not in contact with the ground

Depending on the variant selected, the chassis and its equipment may have to meet different requirements. The following sections describe the basic requirements for the most common cases. Exceptions are possible in the case of special-purpose vehicles / body designs in consultation with the customer and MAN, under the sole responsibility of the bodybuilder. In such cases, approval must be obtained from MAN (for address see “Publisher” above).

Warning notice

The bodybuilder is responsible for the stability of the overall system when in working operation.

1.6.1 Outrigger operation with the wheels in contact with the ground

Vehicles with air suspension

This section applies to vehicles fitted with at least one air-sprung axle. To improve stability on these vehicles it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered to the buffer before commencing outrigger operation.

Lowering can be carried out manually or by means of the air-suspension control or automatically, using special equipment 311PE (input of parameter ECAS for crane operation or parameter ECAS for lowering the air suspension to the buffer).

If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

Special equipment 311PE automatically lowers the vehicle onto the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. Once the lowering operation has finished, the system maintains a defined residual pressure in order to protect the air-suspension bellows.

To ensure that the function is properly activated, it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message “No ride height” appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.

If special equipment 311PE is selected in this case, it must be combined with special equipment 311PK (input of parameter ECAS with auxiliary circuit for suppressing the automatic levelling suspension system). Activating the 311PK function suppresses all the air-suspension system’s control functions. For this reason, the function may only be activated once the lowering procedure has been completed.

It can be activated by means of the switch installed ex works (see operating instructions). Moreover, it is also possible to activate this function via the body. If this is the case, the switch installed ex works must be removed or disabled.

If special equipment 311PK is not already fitted to the vehicle, it can be retrofitted by an MAN Service outlet (for further details see MAN Service Information 239704).

Warning notice

We explicitly point out that this measure does not contribute to stability and is therefore not a means of extending the technical limits of body-mounted equipment (e.g. cranes). The ECAS controlling function may only be suppressed during working operation.

The functions provided by special equipment 311PE are deactivated when the engine / power take-off or similar is turned on or off and the standard control of the ECAS system activated (setting the air suspension to ride height).

1.6.2 Outrigger operation with the wheels not in contact with the ground

Although the complete raising of the axles has advantages in terms of ensuring stability within physical limits, the load that results puts a greater strain on frames and auxiliary frames.

Vehicles with air suspension

This section applies to vehicles fitted with at least one air-sprung axle.

Completely raising the axles can lead to damage due to the resulting drop in pressure in the air-suspension bellows. In order to avoid such damage, MAN recommends special equipment 311PE (input of parameter ECAS for crane operation or parameter ECAS for lowering the air suspension to the buffer) in this case. Amongst other things, this regulates the residual pressure to approx. 0.5 bar in outrigger operation.

The functions provided by special equipment 311PE are deactivated when the engine / power take-off or similar is turned on or off and the standard control of the ECAS system activated (setting the air suspension to ride height).

1.7 Tolerances

The usual tolerances and hystereses must also be taken into consideration in designing the body. These include, for example:

- Tyres
- Springs (including hysteresis in air-suspension systems)
- Frame

The tolerances in technical data published by MAN are in accordance with MAN standard M3264. This can be obtained from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

Deviations in dimensions are unavoidable. Further dimensional changes can be expected during the use of a vehicle. These include, for example:

- Settling of springs,
- Deformation of tyres,
- Deformation of bodywork.

1.8 Assembly

The chassis frame must not be deformed or detached before or during assembly.

Before the body is assembled, the vehicle should be driven backwards and forwards a few times to release any trapped stresses. This applies in particular to vehicles with driven tandem-axle units because of the secondary bending of the axles when cornering.

Place a vehicle on a level surface to install bodywork.

Different frame heights left/right of $\leq 1.5\%$ of the distance from the ground to the frame top edge are within the range of the hysteresis and settling effects described in Chapter IV; Section 1.7.0. They may not be compensated by aligning the frame, shims in the springs or adjustment of the air suspension because they inevitably change during operation. Differences in height of $> 1.5\%$ must be reported to the MAN Customer Services department before any repairs are carried out. This department decides what measures are to be taken by the bodybuilder and/or the MAN Service workshop.

The body must sit torsionally flexible on the frame main members.

Renewed checks or adjustments will be necessary on a vehicle after installing the body.

This applies in particular to the headlights, sensors fitted to the front of the vehicle (e.g. radar sensor for the emergency-braking assistant) as well as rear and side underride protection.

1.9 Corrosion protection of bodywork

Surface and corrosion protection influence the service life and appearance of a product.

The coating quality of bodywork should consequently be that of a chassis.

In order to fulfil this requirement, MAN works standard M3297 “Corrosion protection and coating systems for non-MAN bodies” is binding for bodies that are ordered by MAN. If the customer commissions the body, this standard becomes a recommendation only. Should the standard not be observed, MAN provides no warranty for any consequences.

MAN works standards can be obtained from the MAN Portal for Technical Documentation (www.ptd.man.eu).

Series-production MAN chassis are coated with environmentally friendly, water-based two-component chassis top-coat paints at approx. 80°C. To ensure uniform coating, the following coating structure is required for all metal component assemblies on the body and auxiliary frame and subsequent to frame modifications on the chassis.

- Bare metal or blasted component surface (SA 2.5)
- Priming: two-component epoxy primer, approved in accordance with MAN works standard M3162-C or, if possible, cathodic dip painting to MAN works standard M3078-2, with zinc phosphate pre-treatment.
- Top coat: two-component top-coat paint to MAN works standard M3094, preferably water-based; if there are no facilities for this, then solvent-based paint is also permitted.

Instead of priming and painting the vehicle with a top coat, the substructure of the body (e.g. longitudinal and cross-members, corner plates) may also be galvanised with a layer thickness $\geq 80 \mu\text{m}$. Refer to the data sheets of the paint manufacturer for details of curing and drying times and temperatures. When selecting and combining materials the compatibility of the different metals (e.g. aluminium and steel) must be taken into consideration as must the effects of the ‘electrochemical series’ (cause of contact corrosion).

After completing all work on a chassis:

- remove any drilling swarf,
- deburr edges,
- preserve cavities with wax.

Mechanical connecting elements (e.g. screws, nuts, washers, bolts) are to be optimally protected against corrosion. To prevent corrosion through salt while a vehicle is stationary during the bodybuilding phase, wash all chassis with fresh water upon arrival at the bodybuilder’s premises to remove salt residue.

1.10 Standards, directives and regulations

The following section lists examples of standards, directives / guidelines and regulations applying to truck bodies. This overview is, however, not intended to be exhaustive. We wish to point out that the overall system consisting of chassis and body must comply with the conditions for registration in the respective country.

1.10.1 Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC)

The Machinery Directive is available from EUR-Lex under the following link <http://eur-lex.europa.eu>.

General

The Machinery Directive serves to ensure the health and safety of persons, in particular of employees, consumers and objects, in particular in relation to the risks inherent whilst using machinery.

It sets forth generally applicable, fundamental health and safety protection requirements in accordance with the state of the art at the time of design, together with technical and commercial requirements that are supplemented by a range of specific requirements for certain classes of machine.

There is an appropriate procedure for every type of machine with which compliance with the fundamental health and safety protection requirements can be checked. These include the conformity assessment procedures, the CE conformity markings and a risk assessment. Furthermore, the manufacturer of the machine must prepare technical documentation for each machine.

Scope and purpose

In addition to these guidelines to fitting bodies, bodybuilders must also observe the Machinery Directive. The Machinery Directive is fundamentally not applicable to the truck's chassis because the applicable statutory requirements are defined in the Directive on type-approval of motor vehicles and their trailers (70/156/EEC). The Machinery Directive does, however, apply to various bodies. The products (truck bodies) that fall under this scope of application are defined in Article 1 of the Directive ("Scope").

The Machinery Directive applies fundamentally to:

- Machines
- Interchangeable equipment
- Safety components
- Lifting accessories
- Chains, ropes and webbing
- Removable mechanical transmission devices
- Partly completed machinery

Examples include:

- Loading cranes
- Liftgates (tail-lifts)
- Tipper bodies
- Flushing and suction bodies
- Recovery platform bodies
- Compressors fitted to the body
- Garbage compactors
- Concrete / cement drums
- Troughs
- Mechanically driven cable winches
- Roll-off and set-down skip loader bodies
- Aerial work platforms / skylifters
- Tank bodies

Among others, exceptions include:

- Agricultural and forestry tractor units
- Motor vehicles and their trailers (70/156/EEC)

If such a product (body/fitting) is installed on the truck chassis, the Machinery Directive does not apply to the truck chassis but to the body. The Machinery Directive also applies to **the interfaces between the truck chassis and the body** that are responsible for the safe movement and operation of the machine. A distinction should, therefore, be made between **self-propelled working machines**, which **fall fully** under the Machinery Directive and **truck chassis with machinery fitted or mounted on them**.

Examples of self-propelled machines include:

- Self-propelled construction machines
- Concrete pumps
- Truck-mounted crane
- Gully emptiers
- Drilling rig carrier vehicles

Definition of machinery in accordance with 2006/42/EC

“ — an assembly, fitted with or intended to be fitted with a drive system other than directly applied human or animal effort, consisting of linked parts or components, at least one of which moves, and which are joined together for a specific application;

— an assembly referred to in the first indent, missing only the components to connect it on site or to sources of energy and motion;

— an assembly referred to in the first and second indents, ready to be installed and able to function as it stands only if mounted on a means of transport, or installed in a building or a structure;

— assemblies of machinery referred to in the first, second and third indents or partly completed machinery referred to in point (g) which, in order to achieve the same end, are arranged and controlled so that they function as an integral whole;

— an assembly of linked parts or components, at least one of which moves and which are joined together, intended for lifting loads and whose only power source is directly applied human effort;”

Source: Excerpt from 2006/42/EC

CE marking (CE conformity marking in accordance with 2006/42/EC)

The bodybuilder must ensure that the body, along with its attachments and accessories, complies with the statutory requirements. The Machinery Directive (2006/42/EC) lays down the types of machinery requiring a CE marking.

As a basic principle, the following apply to the body:

- All machinery must carry the CE mark. In other words, this includes all components relevant to safety, removable mechanical transmission devices, chains, ropes and webbing.
- Partly completed machinery may not carry a CE mark.

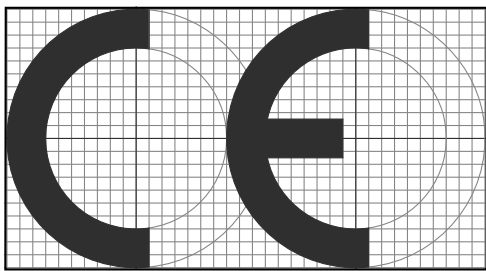
For the CE marking on machinery, the following apply:

- The CE marking shall be affixed to the machinery visibly, legibly and indelibly.
- The affixing on machinery of markings, signs and inscriptions that are likely to mislead third parties as to the meaning or form of the CE marking, or both, shall be prohibited.
- Any other marking may be affixed to the machinery provided that the visibility, legibility and meaning of the CE marking is not thereby impaired.

IV. Body

- In order to ensure the same quality for the CE marking and the manufacturer's mark, it is important that they be affixed according to the same techniques. In order to avoid confusion between any CE markings which might appear on certain components and the CE marking corresponding to the machinery, it is important that the latter marking be affixed alongside the name of the person who has taken responsibility for it, namely the manufacturer or his authorised representative.
- It is prohibited to pre-date or post-date the date of manufacture of the machinery when affixing the CE marking.
- If the CE marking is reduced or enlarged the proportions shown in the drawing reproduced here must be maintained.
- The various components of the CE marking must have approximately the same vertical dimensions, which may not be less than 5 mm. The minimum dimension may be waived for small-scale machinery.

The CE conformity marking shall consist of the initials "CE" taking the following form:



T_998_000002_0001_G

Where machinery is also the subject of other Directives relating to other aspects and providing for the affixing of the CE marking, the marking shall indicate that the machinery also conforms to the provisions of those other Directives. However, where one or more of those Directives allow the manufacturer or his authorised representative to choose, during a transitional period, the system to be applied, the CE marking shall indicate conformity only to the provisions of those Directives applied by the manufacturer or his authorised representative. Particulars of the Directives applied, as published in the Official Journal of the European Union, shall be given on the EC declaration of conformity. Where the full quality assurance procedure referred to in 2006/42/EC, 12(3)(c) and 12(4)(b) has been applied, the CE marking must be followed by the identification number of the notified body.

Model plate on body

For identification purposes, each body must be fitted with a model plate that must contain the following data as a minimum:

- Full name of body manufacturer
- Full type-approval number

The characters must be at least 4 mm high. The details on the model plate must be durable.

1.10.2 Securing of cargo

The standards applicable to the securing of cargo on commercial vehicles must be observed. In Europe, these are in particular EN12640 (lashing points), EN12641 (tarpaulins) and EN12642 (bodies).

1.10.3 Contour markings

If required under the national conditions for registration, contour markings as per ECE-R48 or 76/756 EEC are to be affixed.

1.10.4 Radio Equipment Directive 2014/53/EU

The directive is available to read on the EUR-Lex website at the following link <http://eur-lex.europa.eu>

General

The Radio Equipment Directive aims to ensure radio equipment uses the radio spectrum efficiently and does not cause harmful interference. Furthermore, the Directive is intended to ensure the protection of health and safety of persons, pets and livestock and the protection of property. To achieve this objective, all devices should fall within the scope of this Directive.

Although receivers do not themselves cause harmful interference, reception capabilities are an increasingly important factor in ensuring the efficient use of radio spectrum by way of an increased resilience of receivers against harmful interference and unwanted signals on the basis of the relevant essential requirements of Union harmonisation legislation.

The compliance of some categories of radio equipment with the essential requirements set out in this Directive may be affected by the inclusion of software or modification of its existing software. The user, the radio equipment or a third party should only be able to load software into the radio equipment where this does not compromise the subsequent compliance of that radio equipment with the applicable essential requirements.

The manufacturer should provide sufficient information on the intended use of the radio equipment so as to allow its use in compliance with the essential requirements. Such information may need to include a description of accessories such as antennas and of components such as software, and specifications of the installation process of the radio equipment.

Distributors and importers, being close to the market place, should be involved in market surveillance tasks carried out by the competent national authorities, and should be prepared to participate actively, providing those authorities with all necessary information relating to the radio equipment concerned. Distributors and importers have a special obligation to verify equipment labelling and the accompanying documents.

Ensuring traceability of radio equipment throughout the whole supply chain helps to make market surveillance simpler and more efficient. An efficient traceability system facilitates market surveillance authorities' task of tracing economic operators who have made non-compliant radio equipment available on the market. When storing the information required by the RED for the purposes of identifying other industry players, the latter are not obliged to update the information they hold on other industry players from whom they have purchased radio equipment or to whom they have sold it.

Manufacturers must draw up and have available an EU declaration of conformity to provide information required under this Directive on the conformity of radio equipment with the requirements of this Directive and of the other relevant Union harmonisation legislation. Manufacturers are responsible for device labelling in accordance with the Radio Equipment Directive.

Scope and purpose

The RED defines a regulatory framework for the market launch and commissioning of radio equipment on the EU market.

Explanation of terms:

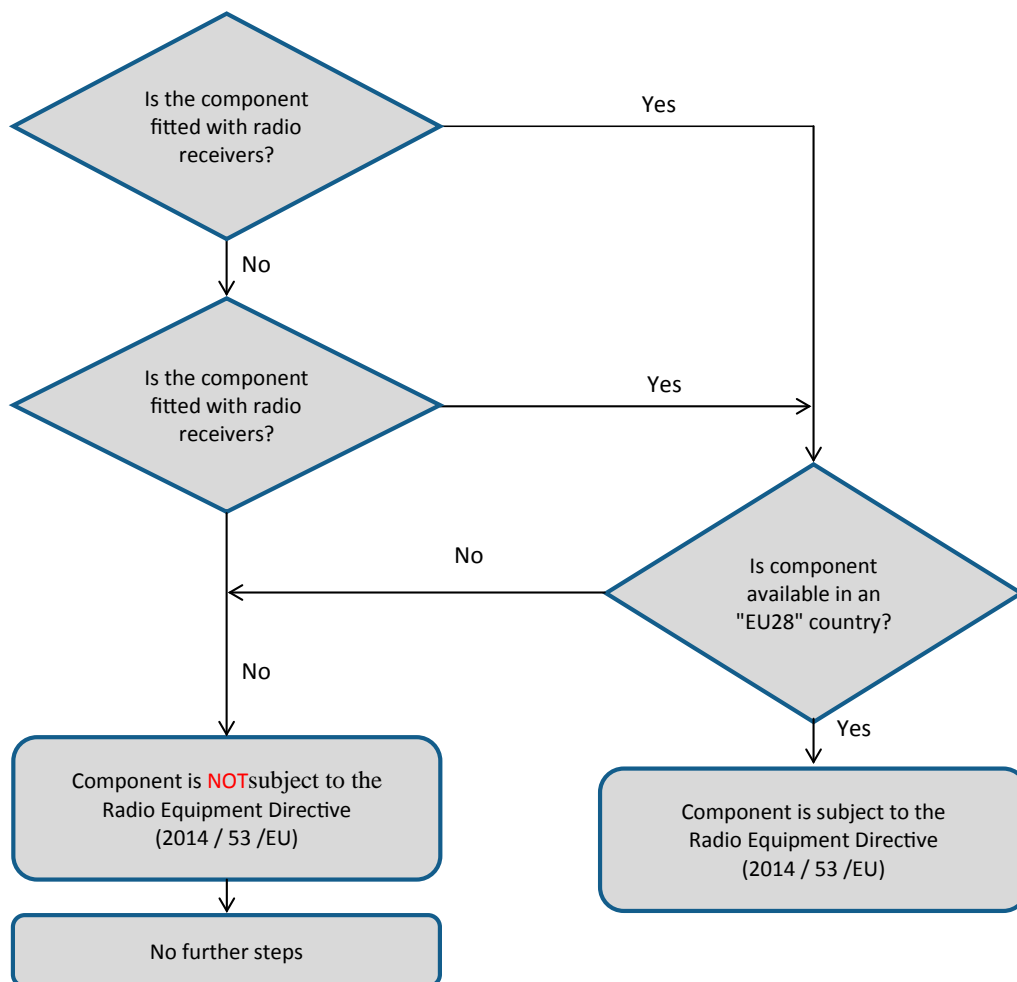
‘Radio equipment’ means electrical or electronic products, which intentionally emit and/or receive radio waves for the purpose of radio communication and/or radiodetermination, or electrical or electronic products which must be completed with an accessory, such as antenna, so as to intentionally emit and/or receive radio waves for the purpose of radio communication and/or radiodetermination.

‘Radio waves’ are electromagnetic waves of frequencies lower than 3,000 GHz, propagated in space without an artificial guide.

Use cases

With the aid of the decision-making aids described below, it is necessary to verify whether retrofitted components are affected by the Radio Equipment Directive. The description is only intended as an aid, and the relevance must be established in principle in accordance with the Radio Equipment Directive.

RED relevance decision-making aid



Examples of components that could fall under the Radio Equipment Directive:

- Radio equipment
- Radio remote controls
- Radar sensors
- SAT receivers
- DVB-T/DVB-T2 receivers
- Aerials
- Radios
- Navigation units
- Alarm systems
- Tyre pressure monitoring systems
- Fleet management systems/components

Procedure:

If a component is subject to the RED and is installed in or mounted onto a vehicle, the workshop carrying out the work is obliged to enclose the manufacturer's EU declaration of conformity for these components with the vehicle documents/the operator's manual in the vehicle.

Information

It is recommended to document the handover of the manufacturer's EU declaration of conformity for this component for traceability purposes.

2.0 Body and auxiliary-frame design

2.1 General requirements

Bodies are assembled on a continuous or multi-part auxiliary frame or without an auxiliary frame on the truck chassis according to the type of load occurring and the design of the body. The following sections deal with the requirements to be met by various designs and their connection to the chassis frame.

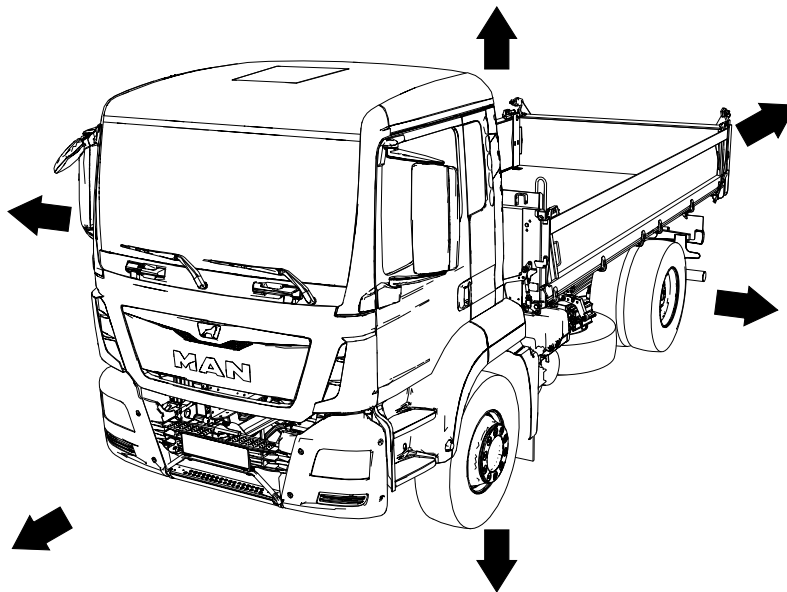
Introduction of force from body to chassis frame

A commercial vehicle is subject to very different stresses in operation.

These include, for example:

- static and dynamic loads exerted by mass forces (e.g. by the cargo),
- loads when cornering,
- loads when braking and when pulling away.

Fig. 02-IV: The loads exerted on a commercial vehicle



T_995_000022_0001_G

These loads must be carried equally by the chassis and the body. In most cases, the loads can be carried only by the combination of chassis and body. For this reason it is imperative in body design that the body and the chassis as well as their connection are taken into consideration.

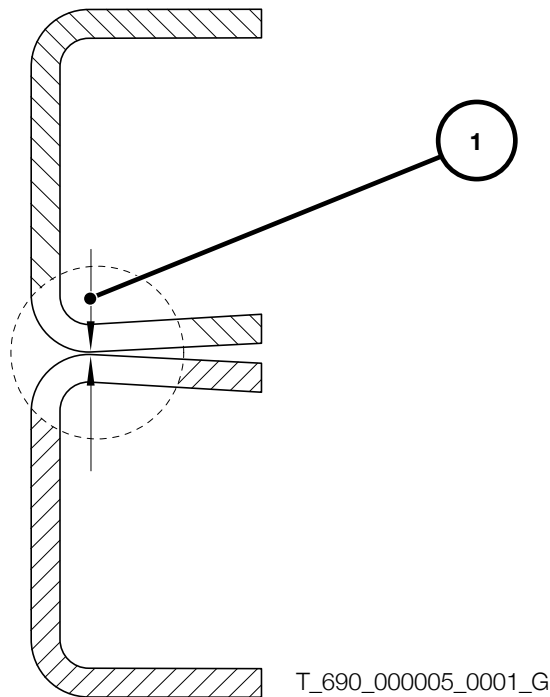
The basic principles applying to the vertical and horizontal transmission of force between body and chassis are as follows.

- Forces shall be transmitted as evenly as possible over areas as large as possible (e.g. over a continuous auxiliary frame).
- If the body is fitted on a multi-part auxiliary frame or without an auxiliary frame, it must be ensured that the force is transmitted as evenly as possible to all parts of the auxiliary frame or all parts of the body.
- The transmission of horizontal forces must be as even as possible along the entire length of the body and on both sides of the vehicle. This applies to bodies with continuous or multi-part auxiliary frames as well as to bodies without auxiliary frames.

Force transmission: Hertzian contact stress

Irrespective of whether an auxiliary frame is used or not, the minimum lengths of the supports on the frame must be calculated according to the rules of Hertzian contact stresses. The assumption is linear contact between two cylinders. Fig. 03-IV is an exaggerated presentation of the deformation of two U-profiles on top of one another, which can occur in a combination of auxiliary frame and chassis frame. Position no. 1 in Fig. 03-IV shows the linear contact. A calculation example can be found in Chapter V, Section 1.11.0 "Support length for body without auxiliary frame".

Fig. 03-IV: Deformation of two U-profiles



Frame deflection and torsion

Frame deflection and torsion may not cause any undesirable characteristics in either the body or the vehicle. The body and chassis must be able to absorb such forces safely.

Formula 01-IV gives a rough estimate of permissible deflection.

Formula 01-IV: Permissible deflection

$$f = \frac{l_t}{250}$$

Where:

- f = Maximum deflection [mm]
- l_t = Theoretical wheelbase [mm] (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1)

2.2 Body with auxiliary frame

The section applies both to continuous and multi-part auxiliary frames.

2.2.1 Permissible materials

Taking into account safety coefficients, the yield point, also known as the elongation limit or $\sigma_{0.2}$ limit, must not be exceeded in any driving or load state. The materials most commonly used for auxiliary frames are listed in Table 02-IV. Higher-quality materials or materials with comparable characteristics not listed here can also be used.

Should point loads arise or if units are to be fitted that exert localised forces, e.g. liftgates, cranes and cable winches, then steels with a yield point of $\sigma_{0.2} > 350 \text{ N/mm}^2$ must always be used. Rolled sections are not permitted.

Table 02-IV: Subframe materials (examples), standard designations and yield points

Material number	Material designation, old	Material designation, new	Yield point N/mm ²	Tensile strength N/mm ²	Suitability for auxiliary frames
1.0037	St37-2	S235JR	≥ 235	Approx. 340-470	Not for point loads
1.0971	QStE260N	S260NC	≥ 260	Approx. 370-490	Not for point loads
1.0974	QStE340TM		≥ 340	Approx. 420-540	
1.0570	St52-3	S355J2G3	≥ 355	Approx. 490-630	Highly suitable
1.0976		S355MC	≥ 355	Approx. 430-550	Highly suitable
1.0978	QStE380TM		≥ 380	Approx. 450-590	Highly suitable
1.0980	QStE420TM	S420MC	≥ 420	Approx. 480-620	Highly suitable

2.2.2 Auxiliary-frame design

No moving parts may be restricted in their freedom of movement by the auxiliary-frame structure.

The auxiliary frame must have the same outer width as the chassis frame and follow its outer contour.

As far as possible the auxiliary frame should be designed to be flexible. The chamfered U-profiles commonly used in vehicle construction comply with this requirement.

At a minimum, auxiliary-frame side members must have a geometrical moment of inertia $\geq 100 \text{ cm}^4$.

Profiles that comply with this requirement are, for example:

- U 90/50/6
- U 95/50/5
- U 100/50/5
- U 100/55/4
- U 100/60/4
- U 110/50/4

In order to reduce variations in rigidity, the auxiliary frame must be chamfered or recessed at the front (for examples, see Fig. 04-IV and Fig. 05-IV).

Fig. 04-IV: Auxiliary-frame chamfer at the front

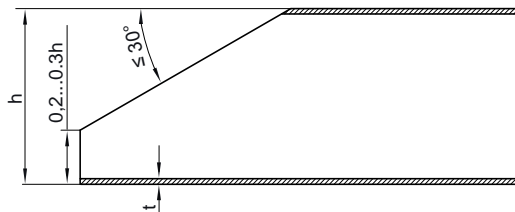
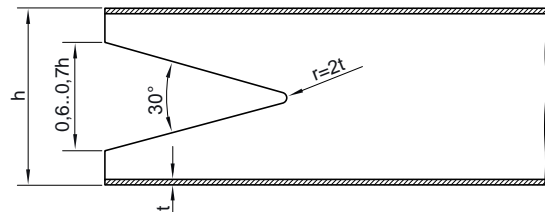


Fig. 05-IV: Auxiliary-frame recess at the front

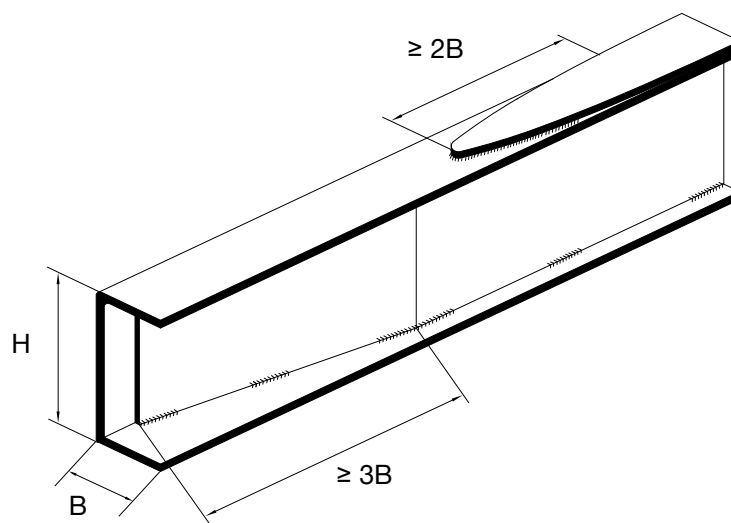


T_690_000002_0002_G

If an auxiliary-frame side member is closed at various points to form a box in order to increase rigidity, a gradual transition from the closed profile to the opened profile must be ensured. The length of the transition must be at least three times the width of the profile (see Fig. 06-IV).

If the planned body (e.g. loading crane body) necessitates additional anti-wear plates on the upper flange of the auxiliary frame, variations in the rigidity of these plates must be avoided (see Fig. 06-IV).

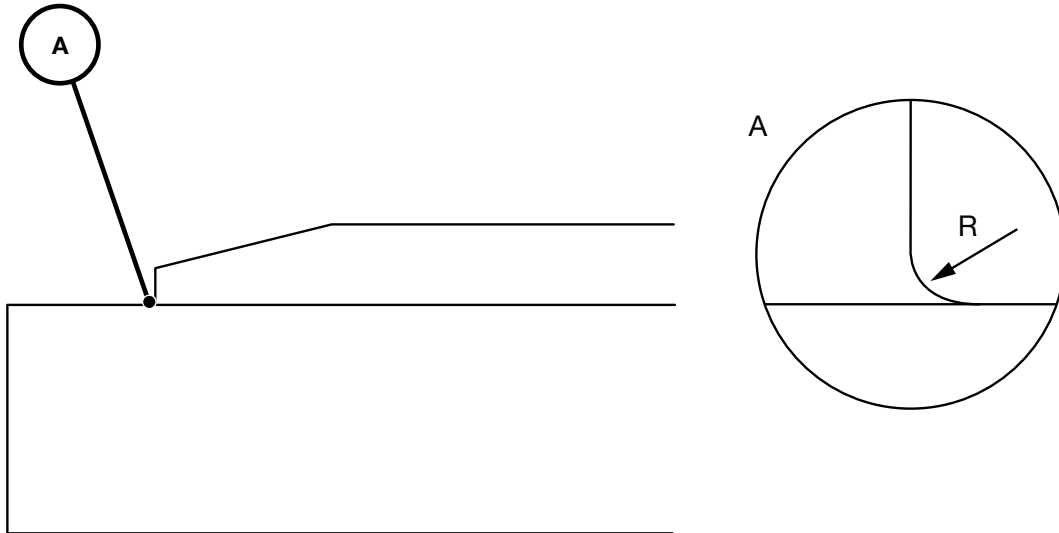
Fig. 06-IV: Transition from box to U-profile



T_998_000001_0001_G

On the projections of auxiliary frames, the end edges of the lower flange of the auxiliary frame shall exhibit a radius (radius = 0.5 * thickness of auxiliary-frame material) (see Fig. 07-IV - Pos. A). Sharp edges are to be avoided in order to reduce the risk involved in incorporating the auxiliary frame into the chassis frame.

Fig. 07-IV: End edge of auxiliary-frame lower flange

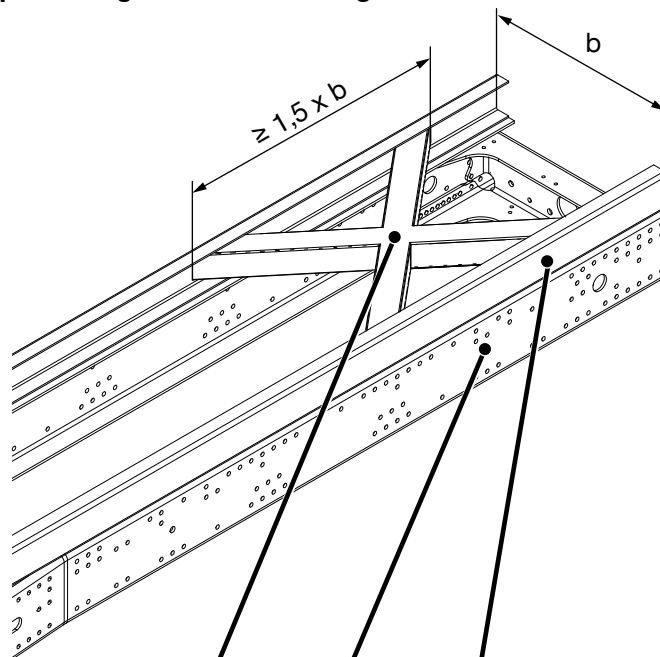


T_690_000003_0002_G

Where possible, the auxiliary-frame cross members are to be arranged above the locations of the frame cross members. There shall be cross members at the kinks in the auxiliary-frame side members.

In the case of rear loads concentrated at a particular point (e.g. rear loading crane, transportable forklift, liftgate) or back-heavy body concepts (e.g. refuse collectors), MAN recommends employing one or more diagonal cross braces or similar to increase the rigidity of the auxiliary frame structure. These must extend from the rear-axle guides to the load application point of the body at the rear (see Fig. 08-IV).

Fig. 08-IV: Example of diagonal cross-bracing



T_690_000006_0001_G

- 1) Diagonal brace
- 2) Chassis frame
- 3) Auxiliary frame



2.2.3 Connection to chassis frame

The auxiliary frame side members must be positioned level and flat on the upper flange of the frame side member.

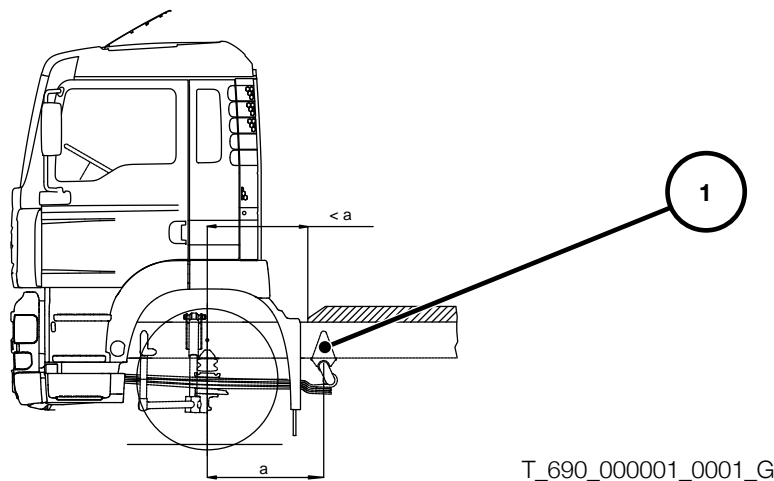
Transverse weld seams at the kinks are to be avoided. If thrust plates are necessary in these areas, they shall be located in front of and behind the kinks.

The auxiliary frame must extend as far forward as possible, at least beyond the rearmost front spring hanger (see Fig. 09-IV- Pos. 1 and Dimension a).

In the case of an air-sprung front axle, we recommend a clearance of ≤ 600 mm between the centerline of the first axle and the auxiliary frame.

Examples of how this is done can be found in Chapter IV Section 2.6 and Section 2.7.

Fig. 09-IV: Auxiliary frame distance from center of first axle



T_690_000001_0001_G

- 1) Rear front spring hanger

2.2.4 Equipment-specific notes and restrictions

Auxiliary frame for crew cab

If installation space does not permit the auxiliary frame to extend to beyond the rearmost front spring hanger (e.g. in the case of the TGL/TGM with crew cab), then the auxiliary frame for tipper bodies and platform bodies is permitted to begin at the first tubular cross member behind the gearbox cross member.

As a basic principle, it must be noted that the above design of the shortened auxiliary frame can have a negative effect on handling. The body builder must, therefore, ensure the proper driving characteristics after the completion of the construction work.

Not permitted for:

- load application concentrated at points behind the cab (e.g. crane bodies).
- When there are negative effects on handling: The auxiliary frame must extend at least to above the rearmost front spring hanger.

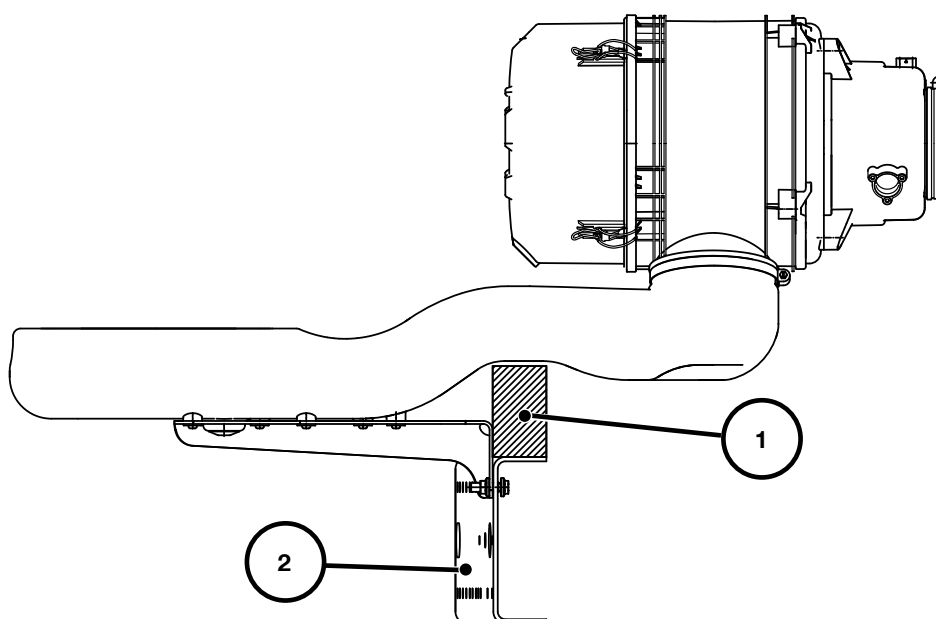
Air intake for L cab and LX cab

For the L and LX cabs, the air intake is mounted above the left frame side member in the direction of travel. The location of the air intake allows limited space of up to 120 mm (deviations through installation tolerances are possible) for the auxiliary frame up to the rearmost front spring hanger (Fig. 10-IV Pos. 1, hatched area).

Other instructions:

- The body builder may gain a certain amount of height by using the hole tolerance, if necessary. Further changes to the air intake are not permitted (see also Chapter III, Section 6.3.2).
- It must be ensured that the plastic pipe of the intake does not rub against the auxiliary frame when the vehicle is stationary or being driven. A sufficiently large safety distance must be provided.
- If the dimension is 120 mm, the possibility of the auxiliary frame lifting off must be taken into account in advance, because this is the absolute maximum available free space.
- The auxiliary frame must be designed so that movements of the auxiliary frame caused by lateral forces do not lead to force acting on the air intake brackets, thus causing deformation or damage.

Fig. 10-IV: Clearance for auxiliary frame with L and LX cab - View in the direction of travel



- 1) Area for auxiliary frame
- 2) Chassis frame side member on the left in the direction of travel

T_082_000002_0001_G

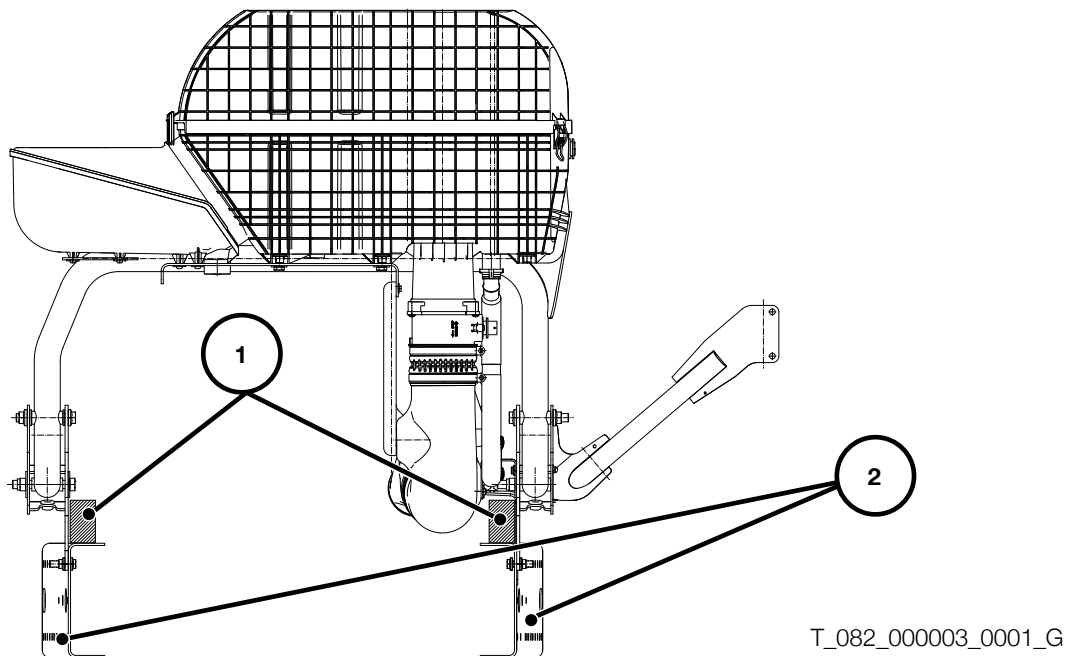
Air intake for crew cab

For DK crew cabs, the air intakes are situated above both the left and right frame side members. The location of the air intake allows limited space for the auxiliary frame up to the rearmost front spring hanger (Fig. 11-IV Position 1, hatched area). Mounting an auxiliary frame at a height of up to 100 mm is possible if the washers ex works for the left and right air intake brackets (Pos. 1 Fig. 12-IV) are exchanged for washers of a smaller diameter. When retightening the screw connection, note that the tightening torque must be correspondingly reduced for tightening with smaller washers, as otherwise the bracket may deform.

Other instructions:

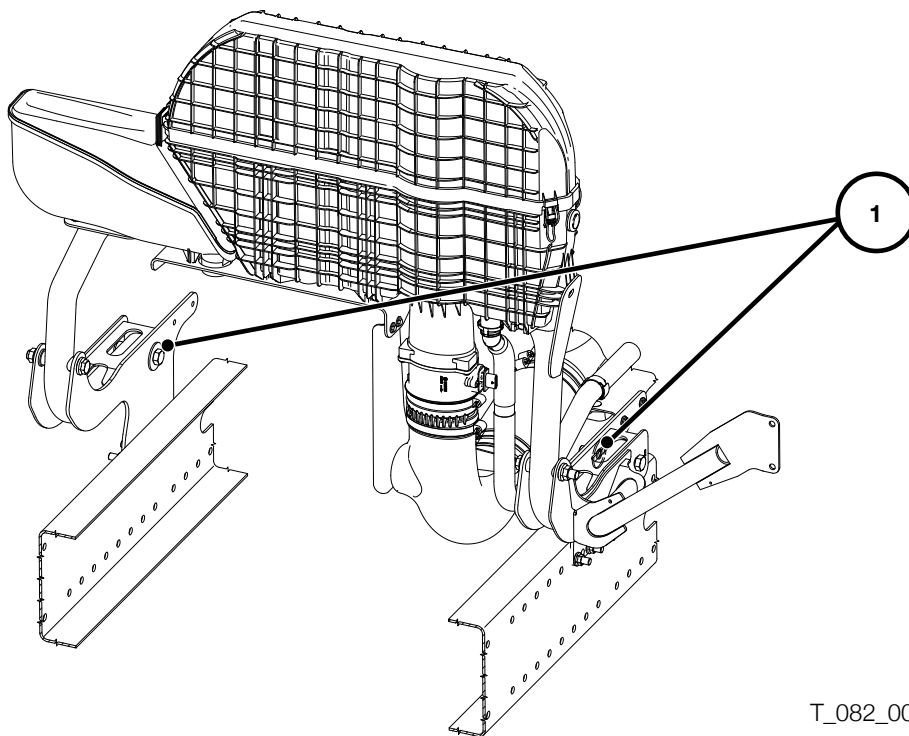
- If the dimension is 100 mm, the possibility of the auxiliary frame lifting off must be taken into account in advance, because this is the absolute maximum available free space.
- The auxiliary frame must be designed so that movements of the auxiliary frame caused by lateral forces do not lead to force acting on the air intake brackets, thus causing deformation or damage.

Fig. 11-IV: Clearance for auxiliary frame with DK cab - View in the direction of travel



- 1) Area for auxiliary frame
- 2) Chassis frame side member

Fig. 12-IV: Exchanging washers for air intake brackets



T_082_000004_0001_G

- 1) Washers to be exchanged

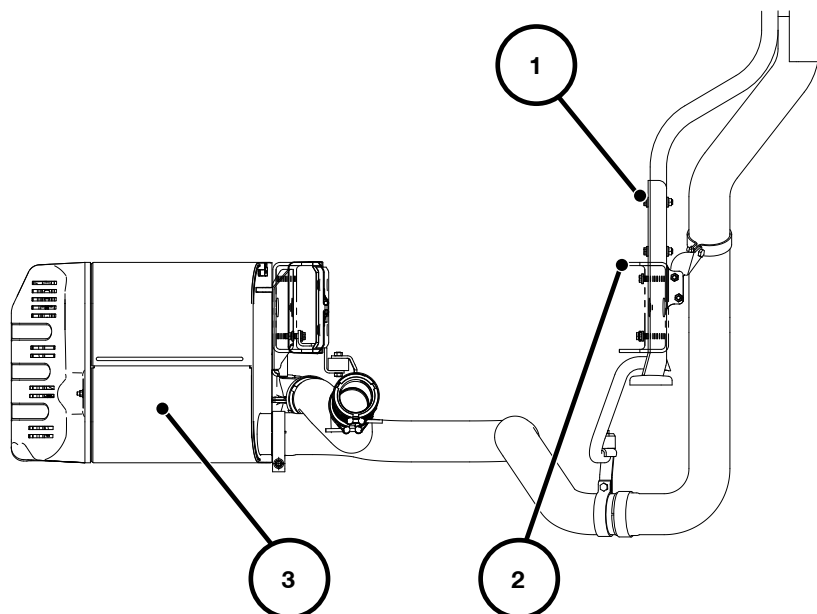
Power take-offs

If one or more power take-offs are assembled to the gearbox ex works, the first frame cross-member is fitted behind the gearbox mainly in a height-adjustable design. In this standard position, the cross member, including the bolt head, extends up to 100 mm above the top edge of the frame; see the separate booklet entitled „Power take-offs“, Chapter 1.2 „Propshaft connection to power take-off“.

Upswept exhaust

If the vehicle is equipped ex works with a upswept exhaust pipe, it must be determined whether installation-space problems will arise during assembly of the auxiliary frame due to the fastening of the exhaust pipe (incl. support) for an illustration showing an example, please see Fig. 13-IV. If this is the case, the auxiliary frame has to be adapted as necessary.

Fig. 13-IV: Space for auxiliary frame with upswept exhaust pipe Euro 6



T_155_000002_0001_G

- 1) Bolt connection of exhaust pipe
- 2) Frame side member
- 3) Exhaust silencer

2.3 Body without auxiliary frame

Information

Assembly without an auxiliary frame must be authorised by MAN (for address, see “Issuer” above) for all body types where an auxiliary frame is strictly necessary according to these guidelines.

An auxiliary frame may not be necessary if:

- The force transmission between the body and chassis occurs on a large area
- The combination of the chassis and body provides sufficient horizontal and vertical bending stiffness
- The combination of the chassis and body provides sufficient shear stiffness
- The torsional stiffness of the body does not impair the required frame torsion of the chassis in an impermissible manner

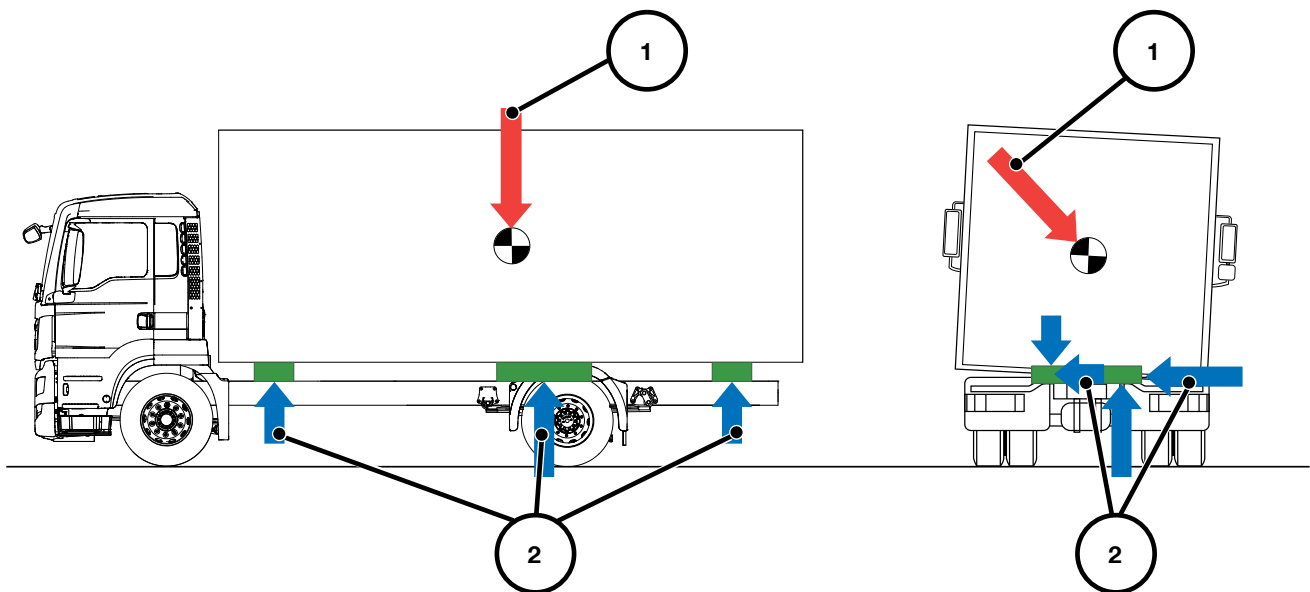
Due to a body connection without auxiliary frame, the force transmission between the body and chassis takes place in few areas. This leads to increased local loads on the chassis frame. This must be carefully checked during design. The following influencing factors must be strictly observed in order to avoid overstraining the chassis components.

The actual load is dependent on:

- The number of body mounts
- Position of the body mounts
- Size of the body weight and the load
- Position of the body and payload centre of gravity (in all coordinate directions)
- Body operation (e.g. loading and unloading processes)
- Driving manoeuvres (e.g. cornering)

Important notice

The actual loads of the body mounts fluctuate greatly during operation. For example, loads occur due to driving dynamics that are greater than in the case of static loads.

Fig. 14-IV: A: Reaction forces in the case of a static load
B: Reaction forces in the case of a dynamic load (left-hand bends)


T_658_000001_0001_G

- 1) Body and payload centre of gravity
- 2) Reaction forces on the body mounts

The body connection must ensure firm support between the body and chassis frame in both the longitudinal and transverse direction. It must be ensured that there is a large, transversely rigid body connection in the area of the rear axle in particular.

Information

Chassis are subjected to higher loads by a body without an auxiliary frame than with bodies with auxiliary frames. Driving characteristics may be negatively influenced by bodies without an auxiliary frame. They must be checked and secured by the body manufacturer after completion of the body work.

We recommend equipping deployed chassis with the available stabilisation packages (refer to Chapter III Section 7.3).

Increased shear stiffness between the body mounts on the chassis frame can have a positive influence on driving characteristics, alongside the increased effect on the chassis frame. The shear stiffness can, for example, be increased by additional built-in diagonal crosses (see Chapter IV, Section 2.2.2). Appropriate positions for them are usually in the area of the rear axles and in areas with a fixed body connection.

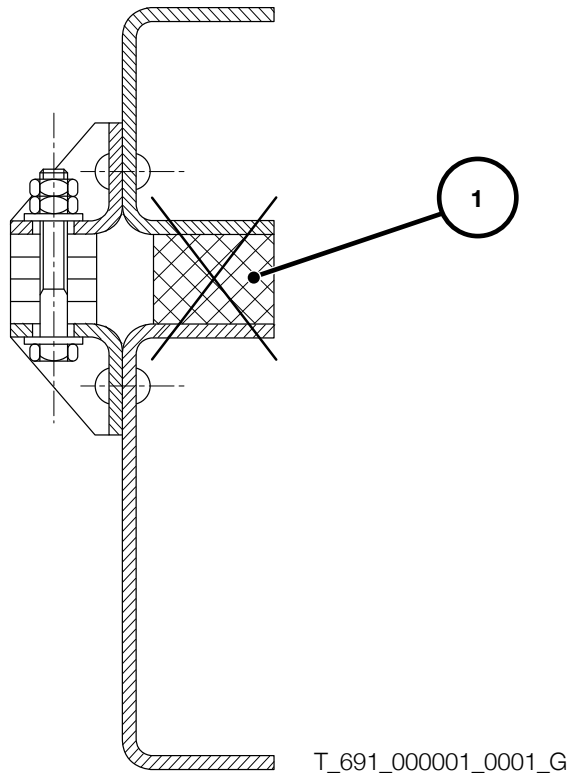
A large level of flexibility of the body bearings in the longitudinal and transverse direction generally has a negative influence on the driving characteristics.

2.4 Attaching auxiliary frames and bodies

Auxiliary frames and chassis frames must be connected to one another with rigid or flexible connections. Both connection types are to be combined depending on body situation.

Elastic shims (e.g. wooden shims) between frame and auxiliary frame or frame and body are prohibited (see Fig. 15-IV - Pos. 1).

Fig. 15-IV: Elastic shims



Justified exceptions are possible provided MAN is able to issue written approval (for address see "Publisher" above).

2.5 Bolt connections and riveted joints

The bodybuilder is responsible for the design of the bolt connection between the auxiliary frame and the chassis frame. It must also be ensured that the bolted connections are regularly inspected, and tightened if necessary. Particularly with body fastenings susceptible to shear force, there is a risk of bolted connections coming loose.

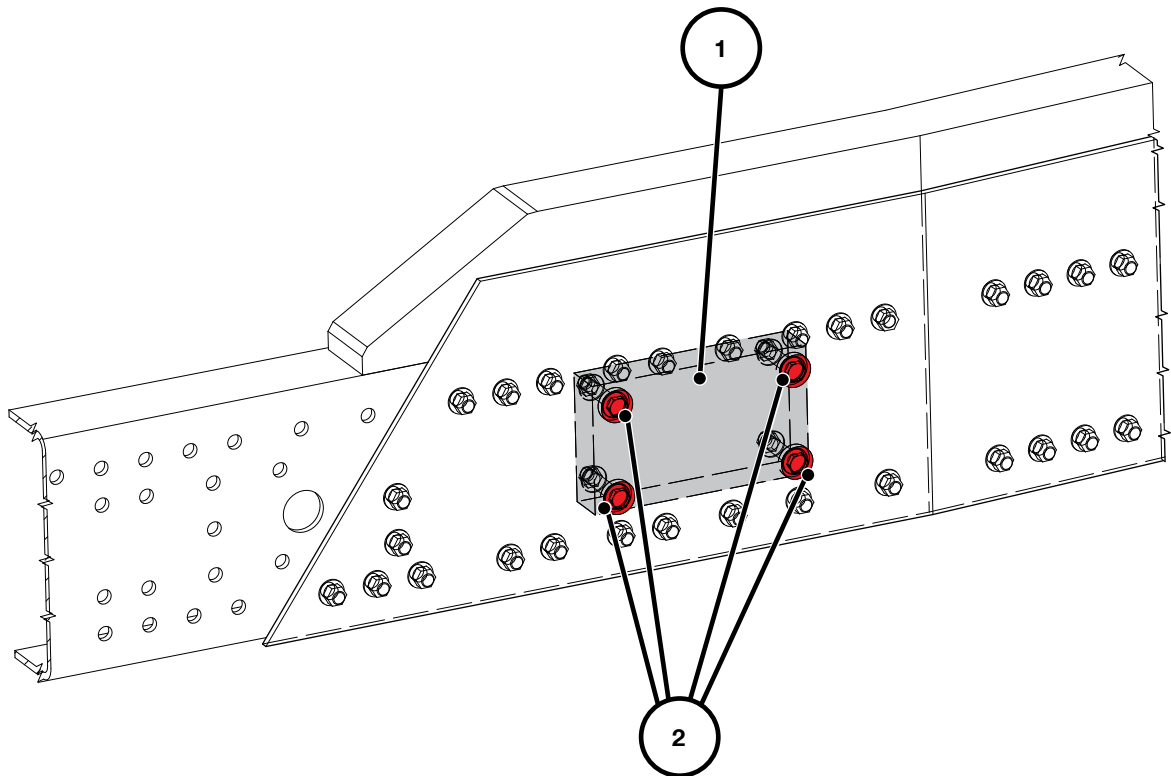
Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 applies to bolt connections present ex works that must be loosened during construction work on the body.

Important notice

The bolt connections of the engine and gearbox mount must not be loosened or removed as the vibration behaviour of the vehicle can be negatively altered by doing so.

If an overlap with body or attachment fasteners is necessary in the areas of the engine or gearbox mount, the fastening elements must be removed at these points (see an example in Fig. 16-IV).

Fig. 16-IV: Attachment for engine or gearbox mount



T_00A_000001_0001_G

- 1) Engine or gearbox mount
- 2) Bolt connections for engine or gearbox mount

MAN recommends bolts of Strength Class 10.9 and a mechanical locking device for bolt connections between the auxiliary frame and the chassis frame.

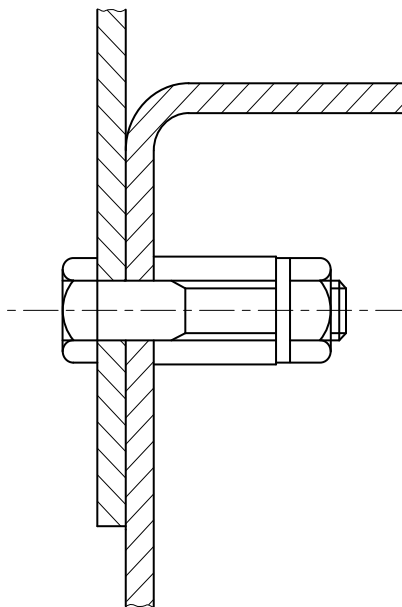
It is also possible to use high-strength rivets (e.g. Huck-BOM, blind fasteners) – manufacturers' installation instructions must be followed.

A riveted joint must be at least equivalent to a bolt connection in terms of design and strength.

Note

If a larger clamping length is required due to the bolt design, spacer sleeves (as in Fig. 17-IV) may be applied.

Fig. 17-IV: Bolt connection with spacer sleeve



T_993_000007_0002_G

2.6 Flexible connection

A flexible joint is friction-locked. Relative movement between the frame and subframe is possible to a certain degree.

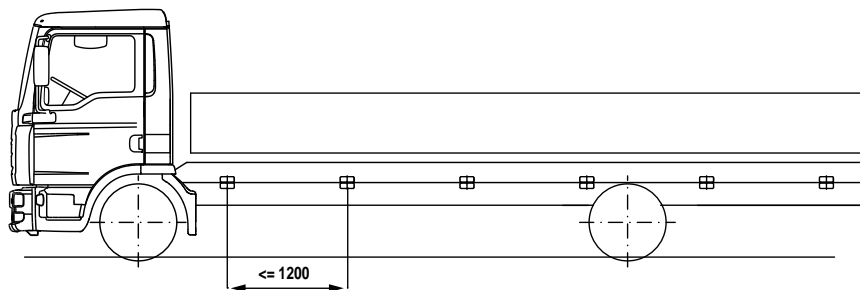
In practice there are various options for creating a flexible connection between the chassis frame and the auxiliary or mounting frame. The most important aspects to be considered are dealt with below.

2.6.1 General requirements for flexible body fasteners

The flexible body fastener must ensure the transmission of force between the body and the chassis frame in both the vertical and horizontal directions despite its flexibility.

As a basic principle, the number of fasteners must be selected that the distance between the centers of the attachment points does not exceed 1,200 mm (see Fig. 18-IV).

Fig. 18-IV: Distance between auxiliary-frame fasteners



T_993_000001_0002_G

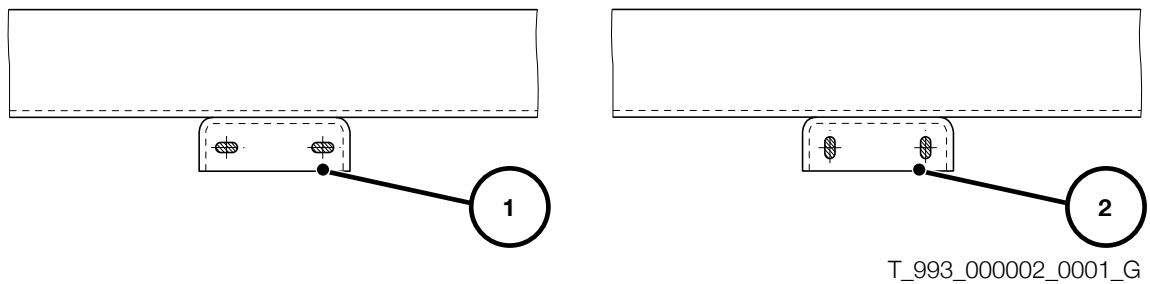
Retaining brackets supplied by MAN are intended for the flexible fitting of loading platforms and box bodies. Suitability for other additions and bodies is not expressly ruled out. It is, however, necessary to examine whether they are strong enough for the installation of equipment and machines, hoists, tanker bodies, etc.

Important notice

If MAN retaining brackets are supplied loose or fitted to the vehicle, the bodybuilder is still responsible for ensuring that the number and arrangement (existing frame drill holes) are correct or adequate for its particular body.

The retaining brackets on MAN vehicles have oblong holes running in the longitudinal direction of the vehicle (see Fig. 19-IV – Pos. 1). They compensate for any tolerances and in the case of flexible connections permit the inevitable longitudinal movement between the frame and the auxiliary frame or the frame and body. To compensate for the width clearances, the retaining brackets of the auxiliary frame can also be provided with oblong holes, which must then be arranged crosswise to the longitudinal direction of the vehicle (see Fig. 19-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 19-IV: Retaining bracket with oblong holes



- 1) Retaining bracket on chassis frame
- 2) Retaining bracket on auxiliary frame

For a flexible joint the attachment points provided on the chassis are used first. If these are inadequate or unsuitable for design reasons, additional means of attachment must be provided at suitable points. If additional drill holes in the frame are required, the requirements set out in Chapter III, Section 1.3.3 must be observed.

2.6.2 Implementations of flexible body fasteners

As a basic principle, flexible body fasteners are fitted with bolt connections that are either fixed or flexible in the vertical direction. Flexible body fasteners are to be employed primarily in the area behind the cab. The connecting elements in the area of rear axle are to be implemented with fixed bolt connections. This calls for the use of thrust plates.

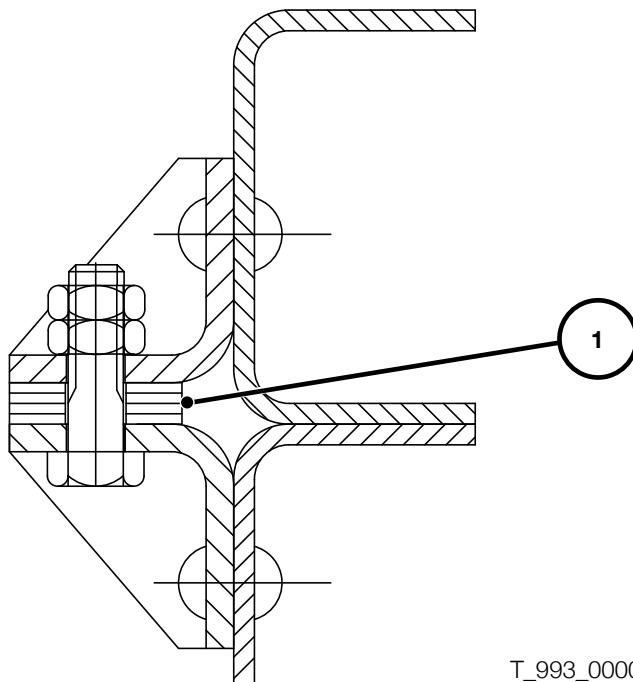
Implementations with fixed bolt connection

The following must be observed for flexible body fastening in the areas with fixed bolt connections. The different space between the retaining brackets of the frame and auxiliary frame shall be compensated by inserting shims of appropriate thickness (see Fig. 20-IV).

The shims must be of steel, grade S235JR (= St37-2) being sufficient. Avoid using more than four shims on any one attachment point (see Fig. 20-IV Pos. 1).

An air gap of max. 1 mm is permissible.

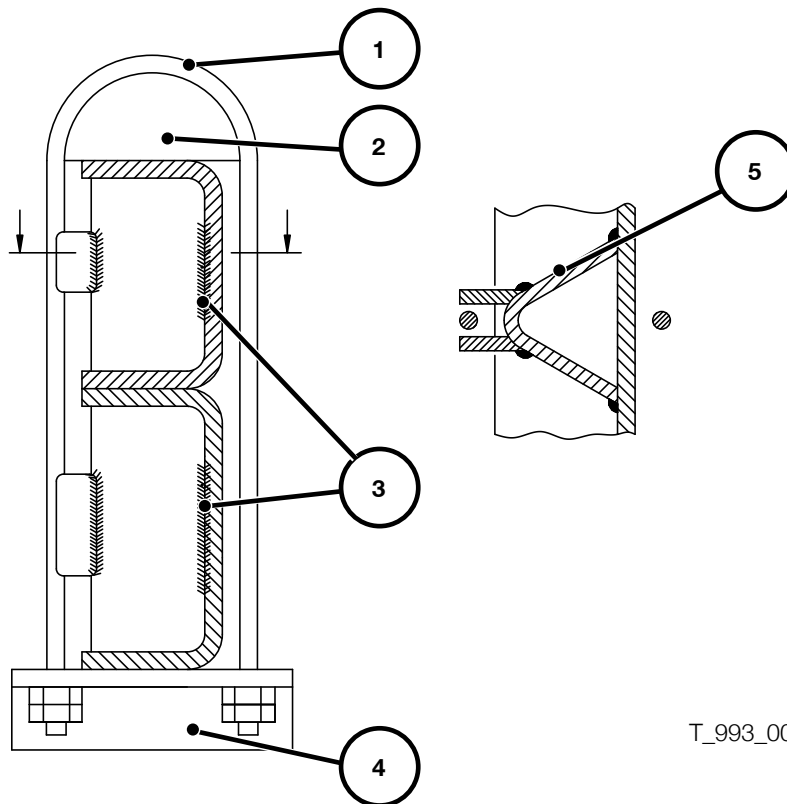
Fig. 20-IV: Shims between retaining brackets



T_993_000003_0001_G

For another example of a flexible connection, see Fig. 21-IV.

Fig. 21-IV: Shackle fastening



T_993_000006_0001_G

- 1) Shackle, strength 8.8
- 2) Spacer non-elastic
- 3) Attached on frame web only
- 4) Angular bracket or U-shaped bridging piece
- 5) Angle plate, approx. 5 mm thick, fitted

Vertically flexible implementations

The implementation of vertically flexible body fasteners depends in the first instance on the respective body. The torsional stiffness of the body plays a decisive role here. The following context applies.

- A) Torsionally flexible body --> the requisite flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction is low (e.g. open platform body)
- B) Torsionally stiff body --> the requisite flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction is high (e.g. closed box body)

The flexibility of the connection in the vertical direction can be increased by using long bolts, springs or elastomers. This applies especially to the bolt connections of the first retaining brackets behind the cab because these are subject to high vertical loads.

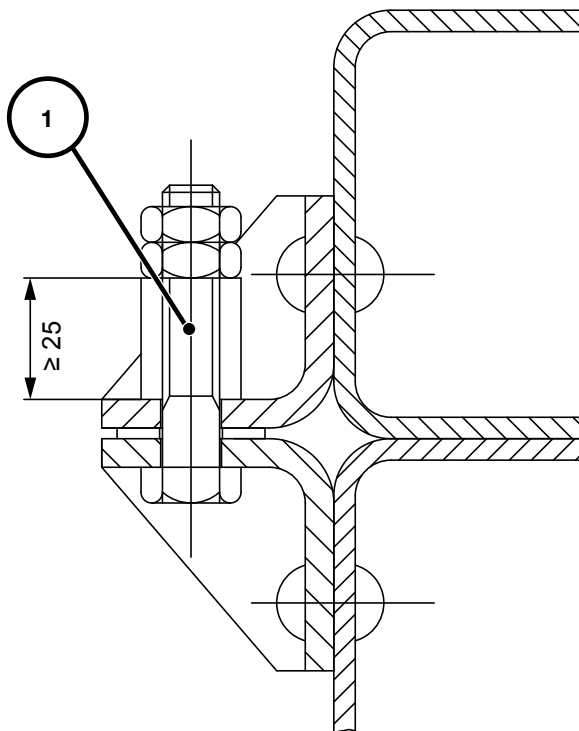
A) Torsionally flexible body

The implementation shown in Fig. 22-IV is suitable primarily for the area behind the cab in the case of torsionally flexible bodies.

For this reason, to allow more room for expansion for the front auxiliary-frame fasteners of flexibly connected auxiliary frames (for example long bolts with spacer sleeves ≥ 25 mm in length) are to be installed (see Fig. 22-IV – Pos. 1). This reduces the risk of them working loose because correspondingly longer bolts possess greater elastic elongation properties.

The outside diameter of the spacer sleeves should be the same as the width across the bolt head (across corners).

Fig. 22-IV: Increased elongation capacity through long bolts and spacer sleeves

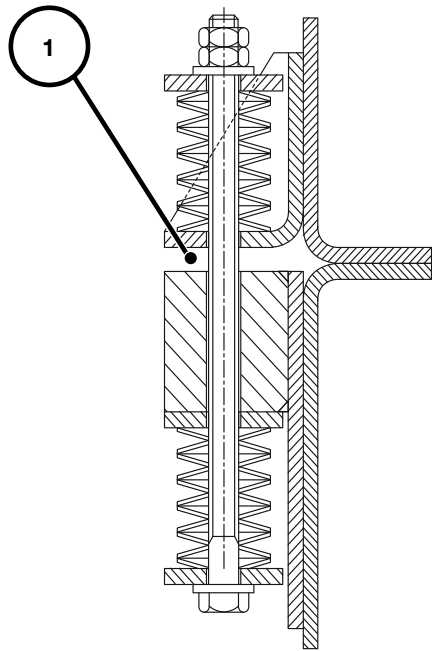


T_993_000004_0001_G

B) Torsionally stiff body

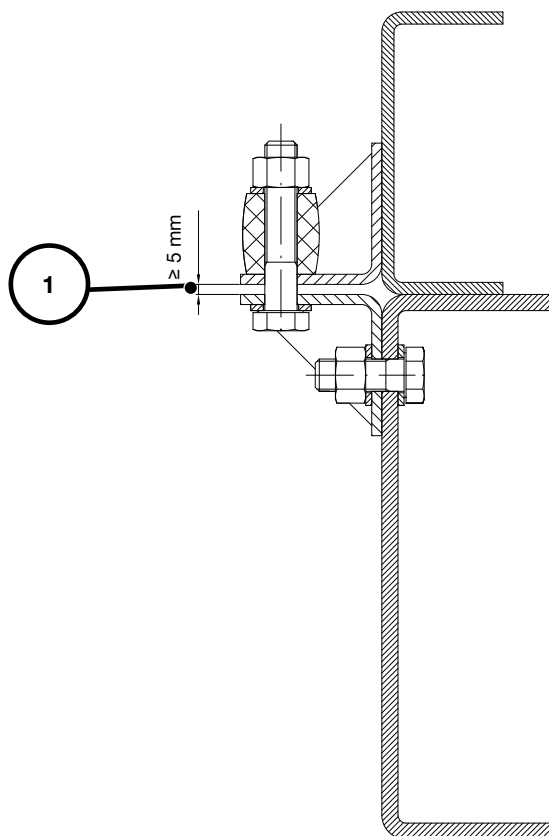
Fasteners as per Fig. 23-IV and Fig. 24-IV are recommended for the area behind the cab in the case of torsionally stiff bodies. This type of fastener allows a limited and controlled raising of the body during frame torsion. A distance of at least 5 mm must be provided between the upper and lower fastening elements (see Fig. 23-IV - Pos. 1 and Fig. 24-IV - Pos. 1).

Fig. 23-IV: Long bolts and cup springs



T_993_000005_0001_G

Fig. 24-IV: Flexible fastener with elastomer



T_993_000037_0001_G

In this case, additional measures must be taken to support lateral (i.e. horizontal) forces. This can be done in a number of different ways. Examples are shown in Fig. 25-IV and Fig. 26-IV (see Pos. 1).

Fig. 25-IV: Flexible body fastener with guide plate

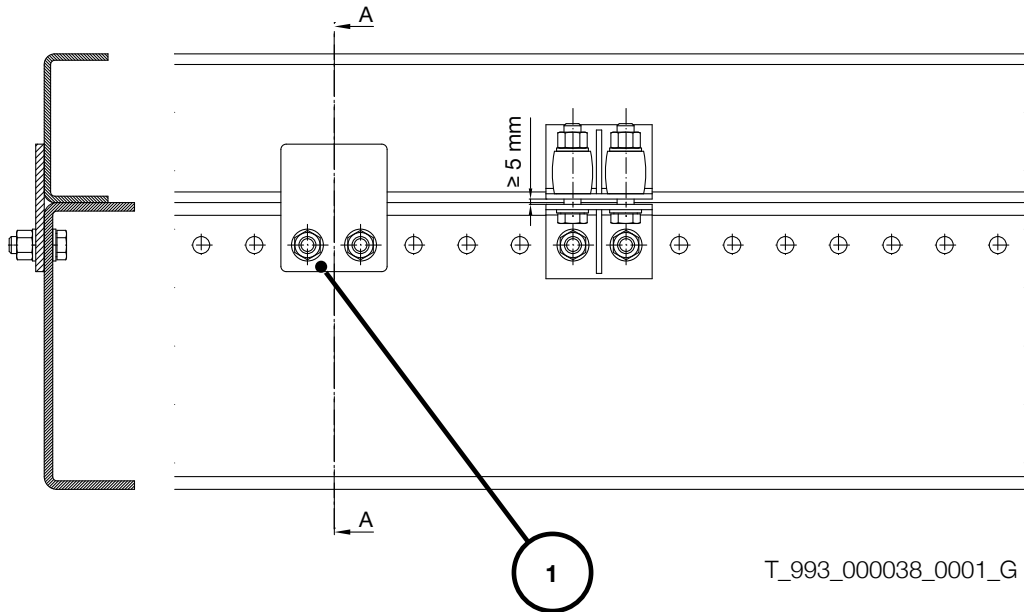
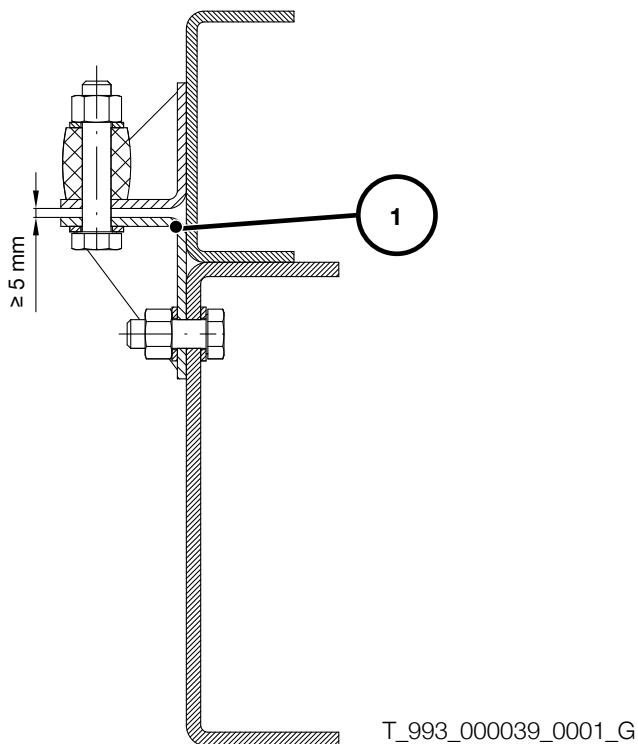


Fig. 26-IV: Flexible body fastener with projecting platform corner pieces



The support of lateral forces must be ensured by the measures described above in all types of operation conducted by the vehicle. For this reason it is especially important to harmonise the projection above the frame top edge with the maximum spring travel of the flexible body fastener.

2.7 Rigid connection

With a rigid connection relative movement between the frame and auxiliary frame is no longer possible. The auxiliary frame consequently follows all movement of the frame. If the connection is completely rigid, frame and auxiliary frame profile in the vicinity of the rigid connection are regarded as a single profile for calculation purposes.

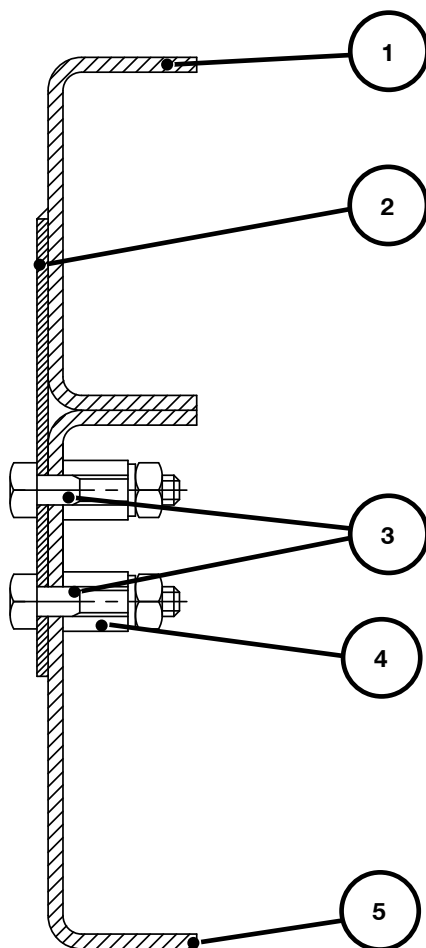
The use of thrust plates does not necessarily result in a rigid connection. Thrust-plate connections should be regarded as flexible should they not comply with the requirements of a rigid connection. Positive-locking connecting elements are by definition optimally rigid. Different types of positive-locking connecting elements can be employed (see Fig. 27-IV).

In order to establish a rigid connection, there are further possibilities (e.g. force/friction connection or other bolt connection). For this purpose, the bodybuilder must ensure by means of appropriate design that the connection made withstands all load that arise and prevents relative movement between the frame and the auxiliary frame.

Example of a rigid bolt connection with a headless bolt:

A rigid bolt connection can be achieved if a hole tolerance of ≤ 0.3 mm is observed in accordance with DIN 18800. If bolts with threads up to the head are employed, it must be ensured that the thread does not come into contact with the hole wall (avoidance of shear stress).

Fig. 27-IV: Example of thrust-plate assembly with headless bolt



T_993_000008_0002_G

- 1) Auxiliary frame
- 2) Thrust plate
- 3) Hole tolerance ≤ 0.3 mm
- 4) Spacer sleeves
- 5) Frame side member

Notes on thrust-plate design and connection:

Thrust plates can be of one piece on each side of the frame, but single ones are preferable.

The thickness of the thrust plate must be the same as the thickness of the frame web; a tolerance of +1 mm is permitted.

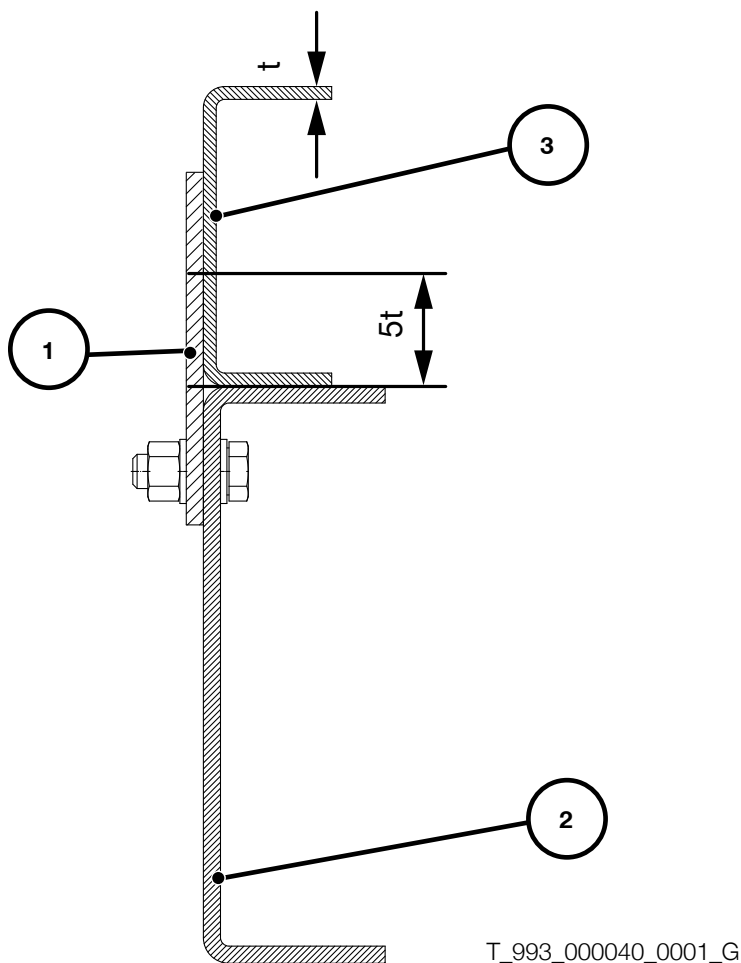
In order for the frame's ability to twist to be impaired as little as possible, thrust plates are to be located only where they are essential. The beginning, end and required length of a rigid connection can be calculated. The fastener is to be designed on the basis of this calculation. Flexible fasteners can be selected for the remaining attachment points outside the defined rigid area.

The thrust plates can either be bolted or welded onto the side of the auxiliary frame (for an example, see Fig. 29-IV). Welding onto the chassis frame is not permitted (cf. Chapter III, Section 1.3.2).

Notes on welding:

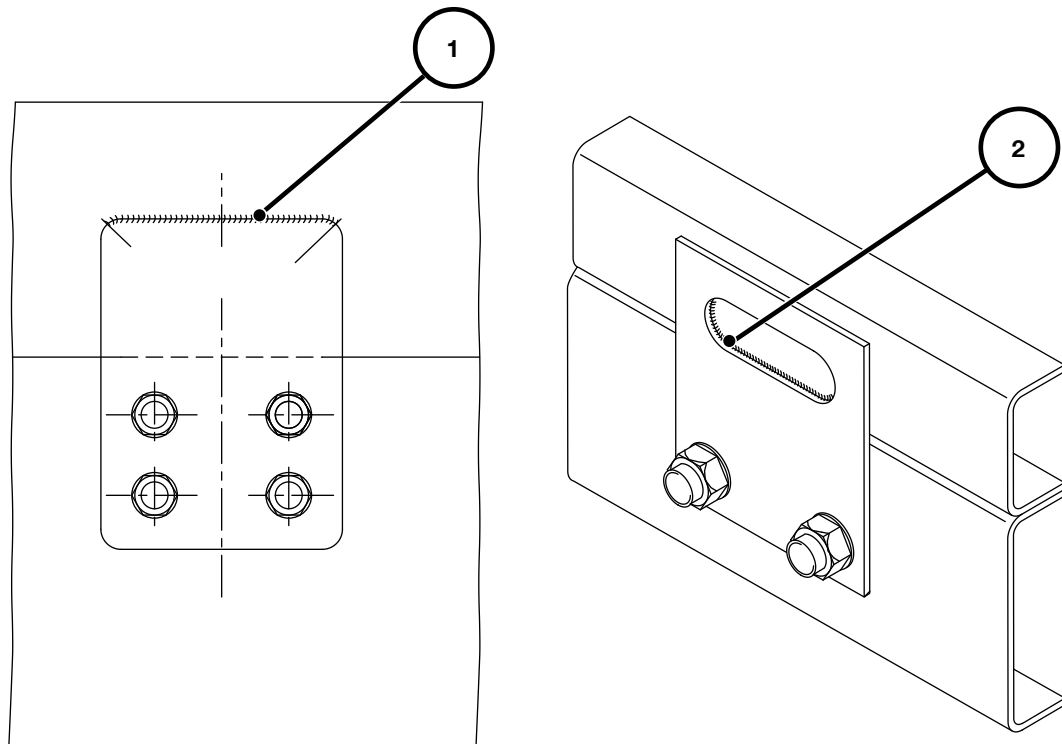
- Select position of the welding seams in order to avoid seam clusters.
- Do not set welding seams in highly stressed areas.
- When welding in cold-formed areas, the distance must comply with DIN 18800 (Fig. 28-IV).

Fig. 28-IV: Welding distance in cold-formed areas



- 1) Thrust plate
- 2) Chassis frame
- 3) Auxiliary frame

Fig. 29-IV: Examples of thrust-plate welding options



T_993_000041_0001_G

- 1) Edge and angle fillet weld
- 2) Plug welding

3.0 Bodies

3.1 Semitrailer tractors

3.1.1 Chassis and equipment

Conversions of a TGL or TGM chassis to a semitrailer tractor may be performed only by MAN Truck & Bus or by its conversion suppliers.

The fifth-wheel lead stated in the sales documents or chassis drawings is valid only for the standard vehicle. Items of equipment that affect the vehicle's dead weight or dimensions may necessitate a change in the fifth-wheel lead. This may in turn entail a change in the fifth-wheel load and the overall train length.

If a truck chassis is to be used as a semitrailer tractor or deployed optionally as a semitrailer tractor or a truck, please refer to Chapter III, Section 2.3.5.

3.1.2 Requirements for bodies

The general requirements for the design of bodies as stated in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be heeded.

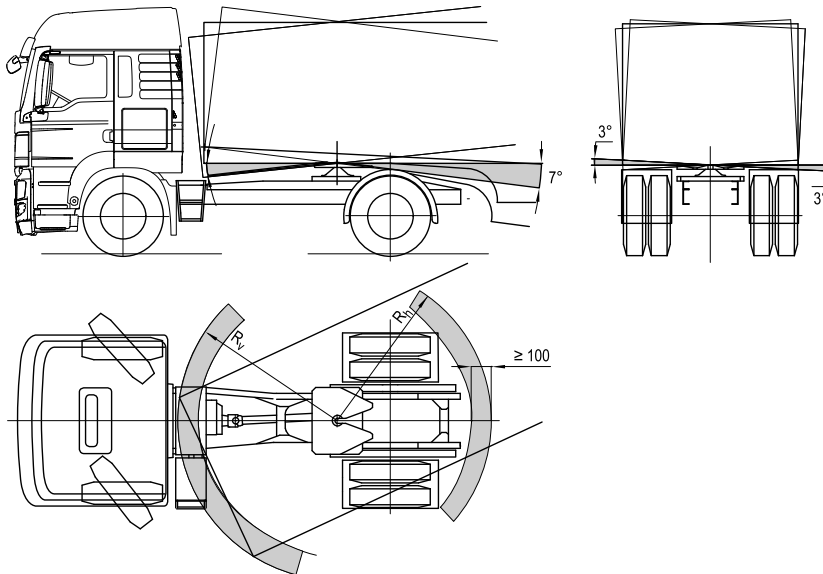
Important notice

The semitrailer and the semitrailer tractor together form a unit. Careful matching of weights and dimensions is therefore necessary so that overloading or damage can be ruled out.

The following points must therefore be checked:

- Slew radii
- Fifth-wheel height
- Fifth-wheel load
- Freedom of movement of all parts
- Statutory requirements.

The angles of inclination required by ISO 1726 are 6° towards the front, 7° towards the rear and 3° to the side. Different tyre sizes, spring rates or fifth-wheel heights between tractor and semitrailer may reduce these angles so much that they no longer meet the standard. Apart from the inclination of the semitrailer towards the rear its inclination to the side during cornering, the spring compression (axle location, brake cylinders, wheel caps), snow chains, swinging movement of a tandem axle unit (if present) and slew radii must also be taken into account (see Fig. 30-IV). The values for high-cube bodies with low semitrailer tractors may differ from those stated.

Fig. 30-IV: Dimensions on semitrailer tractors

T_995_000002_0001_G

If a fifth-wheel coupling is to be fitted, we recommend the following procedure before the vehicle is put into operation. This will ensure that the maximum possible fifth-wheel load is adhered to while the permissible and minimum axle loads are complied with. It will also guarantee the necessary clearance between semitrailer tractor and semitrailer and ensure that the statutory requirements are met:

- Weigh the vehicle
- Draw up an axle load calculation
- Determine the optimum fifth-wheel lead
- Check the front slew radius
- Check the rear slew radius
- Check the angle of inclination towards the front
- Check the angle of inclination towards the rear
- Check the overall length of the tractor-semitrailer combination
- Fit the fifth-wheel coupling accordingly.

Information

Only type-tested fifth-wheel couplings and mounting plates that meet EC directive 94/20/EC may be used.

The fifth-wheel coupling to be fitted depends on a number of factors. As with trailer couplings, the decisive factor is the D value. For the tractor-semitrailer combination the smaller D values of the kingpin, fifth-wheel coupling and mounting plate apply. The D value can be found on the respective type plates. The formulae for calculating the D value for semitrailer trains can be found in the booklet "Coupling devices TG".

At permissible fifth-wheel load the plane of the pickup plate on the semitrailer should be parallel to the road. The height of the fifth-wheel coupling and/or mounting plate must be designed accordingly.

A fifth-wheel coupling must not be fitted without a subframe. Under certain circumstances so-called direct fitting of a fifth-wheel coupling is possible: here a fifth-wheel coupling is fitted to the subframe with special bearing mounts together with a reinforcement plate (not subject to type-testing), and no mounting plate is necessary. The subframe dimensions and the material quality used must be as stated in Chapter IV, Section 2.2.

The fifth-wheel coupling mounting plate must not rest on the frame main members but solely on the fifth-wheel subframe. Only bolts approved by MAN or by the manufacturer of the mounting plate may be used to fasten the mounting plate.

Information

When fitting fifth-wheel couplings and mounting plates, follow the instructions/guidelines of the manufacturer of the fifth-wheel coupling.

Connecting lines for the air supply, brakes, electrics and ABS must not chafe against the coupling or semitrailer or be trapped or caught during cornering. For this reason freedom of movement of all lines during cornering must be checked by the body manufacturer with the semitrailer. If the tractor is to be operated without a semitrailer, all lines must be securely fastened in dummy couplings (susies) or plugs. These connections must also be fitted so that the semitrailer can be hitched up and unhitched safely. If it is not possible to connect up air and electric connections from the road, a suitable working area and steps up to it must be provided.

3.2 Platform and box bodies

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

Requirements to be met by the body

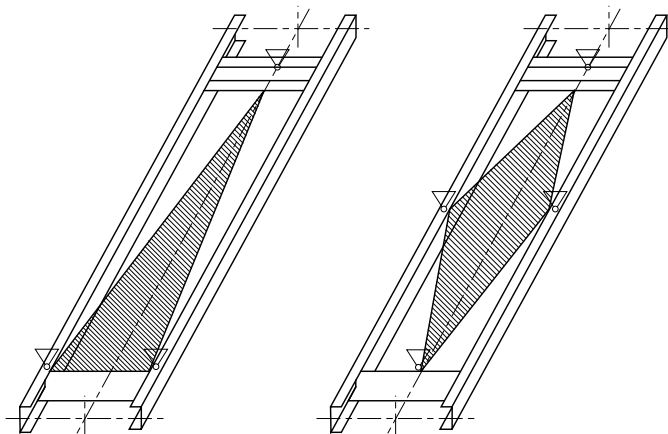
The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For even distribution of the load on the chassis the body is normally attached through a subframe.

Closed bodies such as a box body are designed torsionally stiff in relation to the chassis frame. To prevent the desired torsion of the frame, for example when cornering, from being hindered by the body, the body should be fastened flexibly at the front and rigidly at the rear.

If the vehicle is to be capable of off-road operation, we recommend using a three-point or diamond-shaped mounting to fasten the body (see Fig. 31-IV).

Fig. 31-IV: Options for torsionally rigid bodies compared to flexible chassis with three-point and diamond-shaped mounting



T_995_000003_0001_G

When planning the body, special attention must be paid to the free movement of the wheels. Additional space may be required for any of the following reasons, amongst others.

- Lowering of air suspension
- Fully compressed running-gear suspension
- axle twist,
- Operation with snow chains
- Side tilt of the vehicle

Hinged vehicle sides may not contact the road surface even at full suspension compression.

Chapter IV, Section 3.9 "Loading canes" must be observed when fitting retaining brackets for forklifts carried on the vehicle. They are to be treated as detachable loading cranes.

3.3 Swap body fittings

3.3.1 Chassis and equipment

Chassis in the TGL and TGM model ranges are not designed for operation as swap-body vehicles. The TGS and TGX model ranges are designed for swap-body applications. For this purpose, specially prepared chassis with swap body fittings are available ex works.

3.3.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The installation of swap body fittings on chassis of the TGL and TGM model range without an auxiliary frame or with a multi-part auxiliary frame is not permitted.

As a basic principle, the installation of swap body fittings on TGL or TGM chassis requires a continuous auxiliary frame. In this case, written approval from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above) is mandatory.

The usual mountings for swap containers are provided specifically for swap-body mountings. If these mountings are to be used to fasten different types of bodies (e.g. transport concrete mixers, tippers, semitrailer bodies and so on), their suitability must be confirmed by the manufacturer or by the bodybuilder.

3.4 Liftgates

Before fitting a liftgate (or hydraulic loading platform, lifting loading tailgate, loading platform), compatibility with, the design of the vehicle, the chassis and the body must be checked.

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Sections 1.0 and 2.0 apply.

The fitting of a liftgate influences:

- Axle-load distribution
- Body and overall length
- Frame flexing
- Subframe flexing
- Type of connection between frame and auxiliary frame
- Vehicle electrical system (battery, alternator, cabling)

Prior to the assembly of a liftgate, the body builder must:

- Calculate the axle loads.
- Check compliance with the stipulated minimum front-axle load (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.6 “Minimum front-axle load”).
- Ensure that exceeding the permissible axle loads is precluded.
- Include nose weights in addition to the liftgate in vehicle design.
- If necessary, shorten the body length and rear overhang, or lengthen the wheelbase.
- Provide outriggers should they prove necessary for reasons of strength, rigidity or stability.
- Provide batteries of adequate capacity (at least 155 Ah) and generator with sufficient power (at least 28 V 110 A, preferably 28 V 120 A). Available as special equipment ex works.
- Install an electrical interface for the liftgate (available as special equipment ex works; circuit diagrams/pin-out Chapter III Section 8.3.2).
- Observe the country-specific regulations and laws.

Auxiliary-frame design and connection between frame and auxiliary frame

The auxiliary frame is to be designed and constructed in accordance with Chapter IV Section 2.0. It is the responsibility of the bodybuilder.

The final cross member on the chassis frame must be retained. If no final cross member is installed as standard, one must be retrofitted (obtainable from MAN Spare-parts Service). A liftgate may not be fitted without a final cross member

The table below lists some auxiliary frame profiles This list (Table 03-IV) does not claim to be exhaustive, however. All information necessary for design must also be checked.

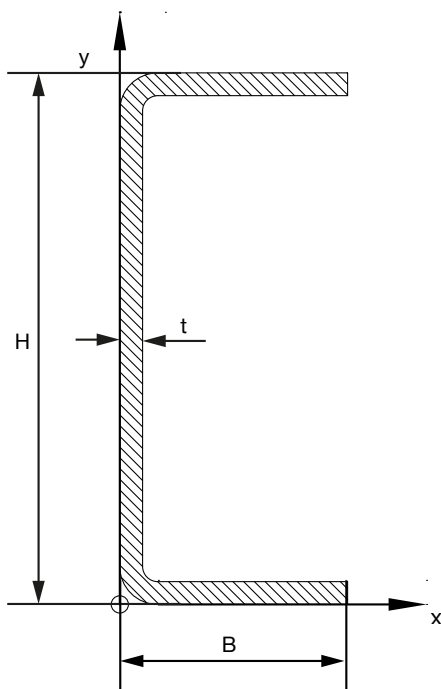
Other steel profiles are acceptable if they have at least equivalent values in respect of the moment of inertia I_x , moment of resistance W_x and yield point $\sigma_{0.2}$.

MAN does not accept profiles made from non-ferrous metals for the construction of auxiliary frames.

Table 03-IV: Technical data of subframe profiles

Profile	Height	Width	Thickness	I_x	W_x	$\sigma_{0,2}$	σ_B	Ground
U100/50/5	100 mm	50 mm	5 mm	136 cm ⁴	27 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	7,2 kg/m
U100/60/6	100 mm	60 mm	6 mm	182 cm ⁴	36 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	9,4 kg/m
U120/60/6	120 mm	60 mm	6 mm	281 cm ⁴	47 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	10,4 kg/m
U140/60/6	140 mm	60 mm	6 mm	406 cm ⁴	58 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	11,3 kg/m
U160/60/6	160 mm	60 mm	6 mm	561 cm ⁴	70 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	12,3 kg/m
U160/70/7	160 mm	70 mm	7 mm	716 cm ⁴	90 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	15,3 kg/m
U180/70/7	180 mm	70 mm	7 mm	951 cm ⁴	106 cm ³	355 N/mm ²	520 N/mm ²	16,3 kg/m

Fig. 32-IV: Coordinate system and dimensions of the auxiliary-frame profile



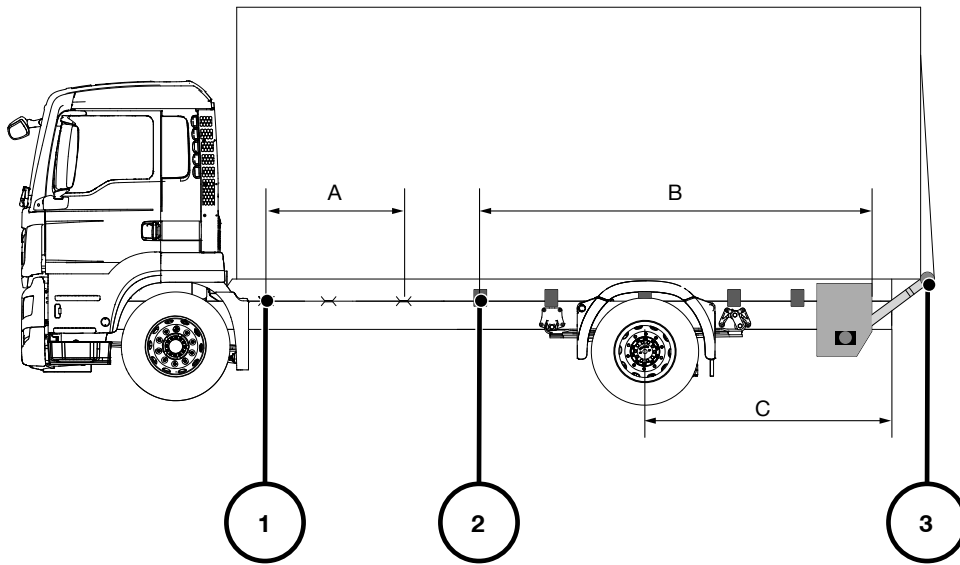
T_678_000001_0001_G

- H) Height auxiliary-frame profile
- B) Width auxiliary-frame profile
- t) Thickness auxiliary-frame profile

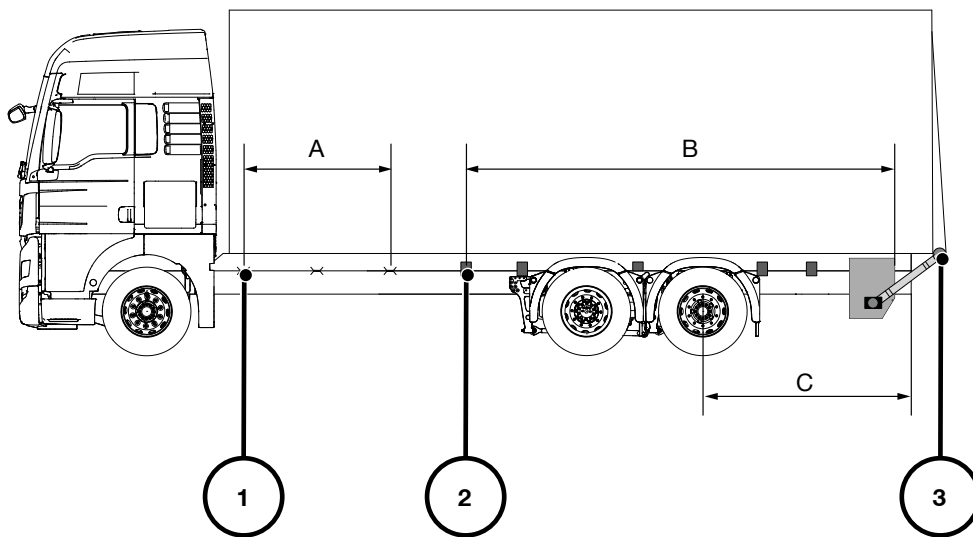
In order to guarantee optimum power transmission to the vehicle chassis, the connection between the vehicle chassis and auxiliary frame must be implemented as a partly rigid connection. This means that the auxiliary frame must be rigidly connected in front of the rear axle of the vehicle up until the frame end (area B Fig. 33-IV). The rigid connection must extend forwards at least to the front longitudinal control arm bracket of the rear axle (in the case of air suspension) or to the front spring bearing of the rear axle (in the case of leaf suspension) (Pos. 2, Fig. 33-IV). In the front area of the auxiliary frame behind the cab, the connection to the frame is to be implemented in a flexible manner (Area A, Fig. 33-IV). Chapter IV Sections 2.4 to 2.7 must be observed in this regard. The specifications with regard to fastening the auxiliary frame apply to both two- and three-axle vehicles.

Information

The installation guidelines of the liftgate manufacturer must also be observed when assembling the liftgate attachment plates.

Fig. 33-IV: Example of liftgate installation on two- and three-axle vehicles


T_678_000002_0001_G



T_678_000003_0001_G

- A) Flexible area
 - B) Rigid area due to thrust-plate arrangement
 - C) Frame overhang (distance from end of frame to center of rearmost axle)
-
- 1) Body attachment bracket
 - 2) Thrust plate
 - 3) Liftgate facility

Basic information on the use of the liftgate tables

The values in the tables are the benchmark values for which, due to strength/rigidity reasons, no outriggers are required. They are regarded as guideline values. MAN recommends compliance with the limit values in order to prevent damage to the frame and to ensure optimal utilisation of the vehicle.

The tables list some of the usual liftgate sizes in conjunction with usual vehicle models. If liftgates with bigger payloads are to be fitted they must be considered separately.

The liftgate tables are based on the optimal utilisation of a vehicle with regard to its permissible axle loads. Axle-load distribution is decisively affected by frame overhang and body length. The tables reference the series-production status (unladen weight, axle-load distribution) of the vehicles. The stated frame overhangs are calculated so that under the given boundary conditions, utilisation with regard to minimum front-axle load and permissible rear-axle load is nearly optimal.

The stated auxiliary frames to be used as a minimum have been tested with regard to the maximum permissible tension and permissible deflection. Wheels protruding above the edge of the frame on some series-production vehicles when the rear axle is fully compressed have not been taken into consideration. To bridge the frame overhang and ensure smooth assembly of the body, in these cases an auxiliary frame profile of an adequate height must be selected (as opposed to what is stated in the liftgate tables).

If the values listed are not complied with, the bodybuilder bears responsibility for ensuring the permissible deflections and tension are complied with by an adequately dimensioned auxiliary frame.

Under certain circumstances, it may be necessary to modify the wheelbase or the rear frame overhang in order to comply with the permissible axle loads. The frame overhangs listed in the tables are not the frame overhangs available ex works as standard.

The values listed in the tables are not to be used in cases where the permissible frame overhang is exceeded by the planned body concept. The chassis frame and the auxiliary frame are to be separately dimensioned by the bodybuilder.

Operation of the liftgate on vehicles with leading or trailing axles is permitted only when the respective axle is lowered.

Table 04-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGL (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)

Applies to: N02, N03, N04, N05, N12, N13, N14, N15

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3050	≤ 1000	C	1650	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1600	100x50x5
3300	≤ 1000	C	1800	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1800	100x50x5
3600	≤ 1000	C	2050	100x50x5
		L / LX	1750	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2000	120x60x6
		L / LX	1700	100x50x5
3900	≤ 1000	C	2250	100x60x6
		L / LX	1950	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2200	160x60x6
		L / LX	1950	120x60x6

Table 04-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGL (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N02, N03, N04, N05, N12, N13, N14, N15

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
4200	≤ 1000	C	2450	140x60x6
		L / LX	2200	100x60x6
	≤ 1500	C	2400	160x70x7
		L / LX	2150	140x60x6
4500	≤ 1000	C	2650	160x60x6
		L / LX	2400	120x60x6
	≤ 1500	C	2600	180x70x7
		L / LX	2350	160x60x6
4850	≤ 1000	C	2900	160x70x7
		L / LX	2650	160x60x6
	≤ 1500	C	2750	180x70x7
		L / LX	2600	180x70x7
5200	≤ 1000	C	3100	180x70x7
		L / LX	2850	160x70x7
	≤ 1500	C	2800	180x70x7
		L / LX	2750	180x70x7
5550	≤ 1000	C	3250	180x70x7
		L / LX	3250	180x70x7
	≤ 1500	C	2800	180x70x7
		L / LX	2800	180x70x7
6700	≤ 1000	C	3400	180x70x7
		L / LX	3400	180x70x7
	≤ 1500	C	2950	180x70x7
		L / LX	2950	180x70x7

Example for using the liftgate table for two-axle TGL:

Vehicle model: N15
 Description of vehicle variant: TGL 12.220 4x2 BL
 Cab: C
 Wheelbase between first and second axles: 4500 mm
 Standard frame overhang: 2475 mm
 Liftgate payload: 1000 kg

From the table: Permissible frame overhang 2650 mm
 Min. auxiliary frame profile 160x60x6 ($W_x = 70 \text{ cm}^3$, $I_x = 561 \text{ cm}^4$),
 semi-rigid connection to chassis frame; profiles with comparable
 technical specifications are also permissible.

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N08, N16, N18, N26, N28, N34, N36, N37, N38

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3050	≤ 1000	C	1350	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1350	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1300	100x50x5
3250	≤ 1000	C	1400	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1350	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1350	100x50x5
3525	≤ 1000	C	1950	100x50x5
		L / LX	1500	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1950	100x50x5
		L / LX	1500	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1900	100x60x6
		L / LX	1450	100x50x5
3575	≤ 1000	C	1450	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1450	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1400	100x50x5
3600 / 3650	≤ 1000	C	1550	100x50x5
		L / LX	1300	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1550	100x50x5
		L / LX	1250	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1500	100x50x5
		L / LX	1300	100x50x5
3825	≤ 1000	C	2150	100x50x5
		L / LX	1700	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2100	100x50x5
		L / LX	1650	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2050	100x60x6
		L / LX	1650	100x50x5
3875	≤ 1000	C	1600	100x50x5
		L / LX	1300	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1600	100x50x5
		L / LX	1250	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1550	100x50x5
		L / LX	1250	100x50x5

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
 Applies to: N08, N16, N18, N26, N28, N34, N36, N37, N38

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3900	≤ 1000	C	1600	100x50x5
		L / LX	1450	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1600	100x50x5
		L / LX	1450	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1550	100x50x5
		L / LX	1400	100x50x5
3950	≤ 1000	C	1800	100x50x5
		L / LX	1550	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1750	100x50x5
		L / LX	1500	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1700	100x50x5
		L / LX	1450	100x50x5
4125	≤ 1000	C	2000	100x50x5
		L / LX	1700	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2000	100x60x6
		L / LX	1650	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1950	140x60x6
		L / LX	1600	100x50x5
4200 / 4250	≤ 1000	C	1850	100x50x5
		L / LX	1600	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	1850	100x50x5
		L / LX	1600	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	1800	100x50x5
		L / LX	1550	100x50x5
4425	≤ 1000	C	2100	100x50x5
		L / LX	1800	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2100	120x60x6
		L / LX	1750	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2050	160x60x6
		L / LX	1700	100x60x6
4500	≤ 1000	C	2050	100x50x5
		L / LX	1850	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2050	100x50x5
		L / LX	1800	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2000	100x50x5
		L / LX	1750	100x50x5

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N08, N16, N18, N26, N28, N34, N36, N37, N38

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
4725	≤ 1000	C	2200	100x50x5
		L / LX	1900	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2150	100x50x5
		L / LX	1850	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2100	120x60x6
		L / LX	1850	100x50x5
4775	≤ 1000	C	2700	100x60x6
		L / LX	2300	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2650	140x60x6
		L / LX	2250	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2600	160x70x7
		L / LX	2200	120x60x6
5075	≤ 1000	C	2350	100x50x5
		L / LX	2100	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2350	100x60x6
		L / LX	2050	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2300	140x60x6
		L / LX	2000	120x60x6
5125	≤ 1000	C	2750	100x60x6
		L / LX	2500	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2700	160x60x6
		L / LX	2450	120x60x6
	≤ 2000	C	2650	180x70x7
		L / LX	2400	160x60x6
5425	≤ 1000	C	2550	100x50x5
		L / LX	2250	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2500	140x60x6
		L / LX	2250	100x60x6
	≤ 2000	C	2450	160x70x7
		L / LX	2200	140x60x6
5475	≤ 1000	C	2950	140x60x6
		L / LX	2700	100x60x6
	≤ 1500	C	2900	160x70x7
		L / LX	2650	140x60x6
	≤ 2000	C	2750	180x70x7
		L / LX	2600	160x70x7

Table 05-IV: Liftgate table for two-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N08, N16, N18, N26, N28, N34, N36, N37, N38

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
5775	≤ 1000	C	2550	100x50x5
		L / LX	2250	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2550	100x50x5
		L / LX	2200	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2500	100x60x6
		L / LX	2200	100x50x5
6175	≤ 1000	C	2750	100x50x5
		L / LX	2450	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2700	100x50x5
		L / LX	2400	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2650	120x60x6
		L / LX	2350	100x50x5
6575	≤ 1000	C	2900	100x50x5
		L / LX	2650	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	2850	100x60x6
		L / LX	2600	100x50x5
	≤ 2000	C	2800	140x60x6
		L / LX	2550	100x60x6
6975	≤ 1000	C	3100	100x60x6
		L / LX	2900	100x50x5
	≤ 1500	C	3050	120x60x6
		L / LX	2850	100x60x6
	≤ 2000	C	3000	160x60x6
		L / LX	2800	140x60x6

Example for using the liftgate table for two-axle TGM:

Vehicle model: N36
 Description of vehicle variant: TGM 13.290 4x4 BL
 Cab: C
 Wheelbase between first and second axles: 3950 mm
 Standard frame overhang: 2125 mm
 Liftgate payload: 1500 kg

From the table: Permissible frame overhang 1750 mm
 Min. auxiliary frame profile 100x50x5 ($W_x = 27 \text{ cm}^3$, $I_x = 136 \text{ cm}^4$),
 semi-rigid connection to chassis frame; profiles with comparable
 technical specifications are also permissible.

Table 06-IV: Liftgate table for three-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N26, N44, N46, N48

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Wheel base 2. and 3. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
3875	1350	≤ 1000	C	1300	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	1300	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	1300	100 x 50 x 5
4125	1355	≤ 1000	C	1850	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	1800	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	1800	100 x 50 x 5
4425	1350	≤ 1000	C	1700	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1000	L / LX	1350	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	1650	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	L / LX	1350	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	1650	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	L / LX	1300	100 x 50 x 5
	1355	≤ 1000	C	2050	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	2000	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	2000	100 x 50 x 5
4725	1350	≤ 1000	C	1850	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1000	L / LX	1550	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	1850	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	L / LX	1500	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	1800	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	L / LX	1500	100 x 50 x 5
	1355	≤ 1000	C	2250	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	2200	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	2200	100 x 50 x 5
5075	1350	≤ 1000	C	2100	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1000	L / LX	1750	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	2050	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	L / LX	1750	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	2050	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	L / LX	1700	100 x 50 x 5

Table 06-IV: Liftgate table for three-axle TGM (dimensions are in mm, loads in kg)
Applies to: N26, N44, N46, N48

Wheel base 1. and 2. axle	Wheel base 2. and 3. axle	Liftgate payload	Cabin	Permissible frame overhang	Min. auxiliary frame profile W x H x t
5425	1350	≤ 1000	C	2300	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1000	L / LX	2000	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	2250	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	L / LX	1950	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	2250	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	L / LX	1900	100 x 50 x 5
5775	1350	≤ 1000	C	2500	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1000	L / LX	2250	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	C	2500	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 1500	L / LX	2200	100 x 50 x 5
		≤ 2000	C	2450	100 x 60 x 6
		≤ 2000	L / LX	2150	100 x 50 x 5

Example for using the liftgate table for three-axle TGM:

Vehicle model: N46
 Description of vehicle variant: TGM 26.340 6x2-4 BL
 Cab: LX
 Wheelbase between first and second axles: 5775 mm
 Wheelbase between second and third axles: 1350 mm
 Standard frame overhang: 2675 mm
 Liftgate payload: 1500 kg

From the table: Permissible frame overhang 2200 mm
 Min. auxiliary frame profile 100x50x5 ($W_x = 27 \text{ cm}^3$, $I_x = 136 \text{ cm}^4$), semi-rigid connection to chassis frame; profiles with comparable technical specifications are also permissible.

3.5 Tank and container bodies

Depending on the kind of goods transported, vehicles must be equipped by those responsible in line with national stipulations, directives, rules and regulations. In Germany, the hazardous materials/dangerous goods officers employed by technical monitoring bodies (e.g. DEKRA, TÜV) provide information about the transport of dangerous goods (in accordance with the currently applicable legal requirements).

3.5.1 Chassis and equipment

Due to the high centres of gravity exhibited by tank and container bodies, we recommend equipping chassis with the stabilisation packages available ex works for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity. These packages for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

3.5.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Tank and container bodies generally require a continuous auxiliary frame.

The joint between the body and chassis at the front must be such that the twisting ability of the frame is not affected. This can be achieved by front mountings that are as flexible as possible, e.g.

- Pendulum mounting (Fig. 34-IV)
- Elastic mounting (Fig. 35-IV)

Fig. 34-IV: Front pendulum mounting

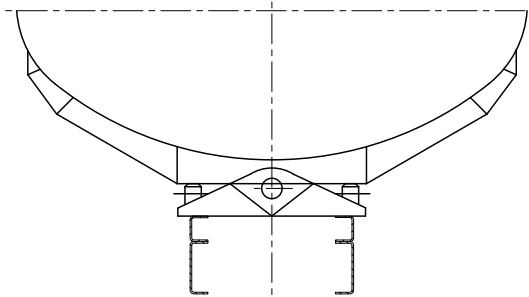
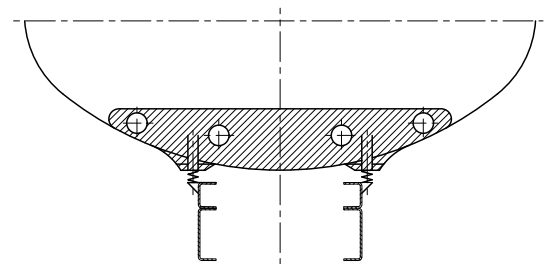


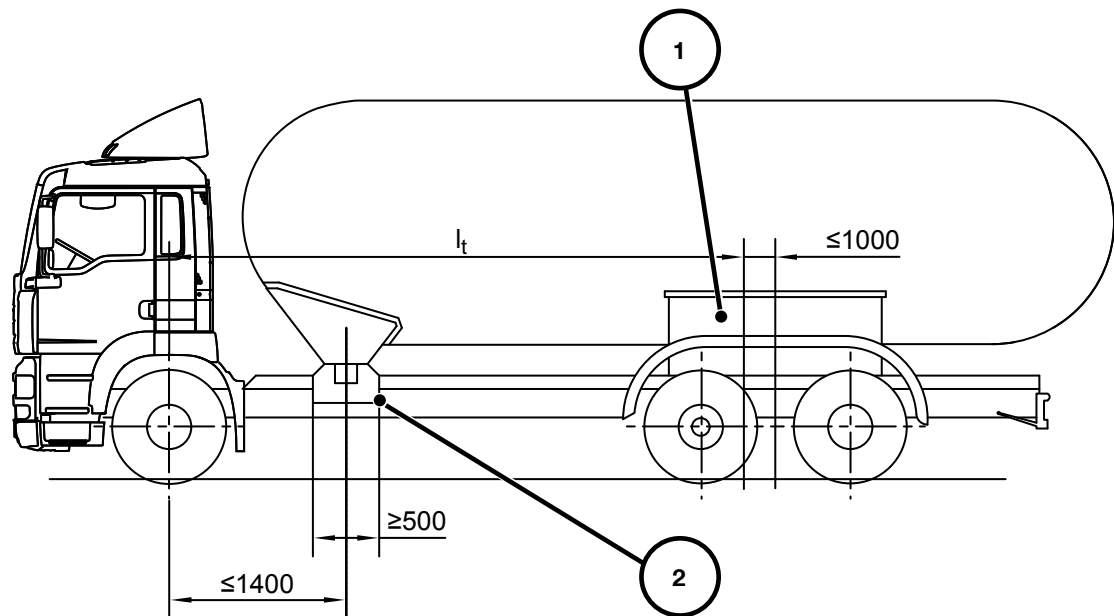
Fig. 35-IV: Front elastic mounting



T_995_000004_0001_G

The front mounting point should extend as close as possible to the front-axle centerline. A laterally rigid body support must be provided in the area of the theoretical rear-axle centerline (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1). At this point also ensure an adequately scaled joint with the frame. The distance between the theoretical rear-axle centerline and the middle of the support must be $\leq 1,000$ mm (see Fig. 36-IV. Pos. 1). The connection behind the cab must be realised in such a manner that frame torsion is impaired as little as possible (see Fig. 36-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 36-IV: Arrangement of tank and bulk container mounting



T_995_000005_0001_G

Tank and container bodies without auxiliary frame

The general requirements for bodies with no auxiliary frame as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.3 must be observed.

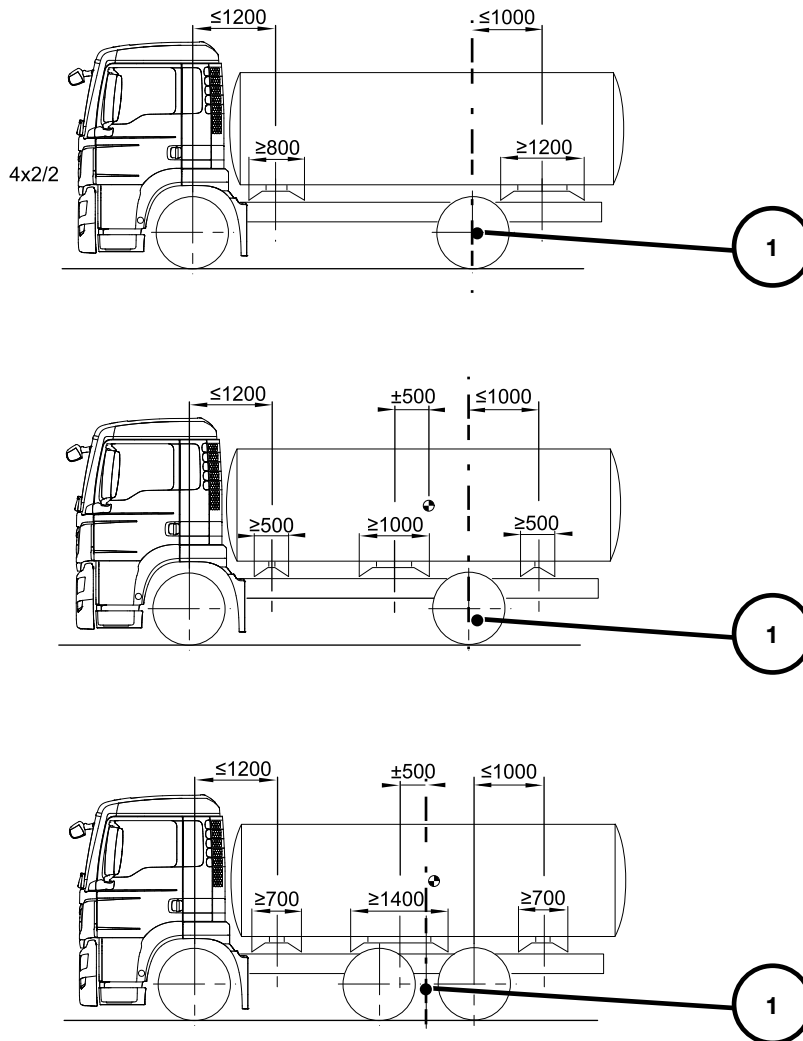
Tank and container bodies without auxiliary frames are permitted for the chassis listed in Table 07-IV.

In addition, it is mandatory to adhere to the number of mounting points and the dimensions shown in Fig. 37-IV. The dimensions for locating the tank mountings refer to the centerline of the first axle or the theoretical rear-axle centerline (see Fig. 37-IV– Pos. 1).

Table 07-IV: Chassis for tank bodies without auxiliary frame using the corresponding number of mounting points

Model	Variant designation	2 mounting points	3 mounting points	> 3 mounting points
N08	TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BB	Permissible	Permissible	Permissible
N18	TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BL	Permissible	Permissible	Permissible
N44	TGM 26. xxx 6x2-4 LL	Not permitted	Permissible	Permissible
N46	TGM 26. xxx 6x2-4 BL	Not permitted	Permissible	Permissible

Fig. 37-IV: Tank mounting requirements for construction without an auxiliary frame



T_410_000008_0002_G

Should these dimensions be exceeded the frame may exhibit impermissibly high deflection and a continuous auxiliary frame can become necessary.

The stated conditions for bodies without an auxiliary frame apply exclusively to vehicles operated on paved roads.

After the body has been fitted, a check for vibration and other negative handling characteristics must be carried out. Vibration can be corrected by subframe design and arrangement of the tank mounting.

3.6 Refuse-collector body

Refuse-collector bodies can be realised as rear-loaders, side-loaders or front-loaders. In every case, the requirements to be met by chassis and body as well as the applicable standards and Directives (e.g. EN 1501) must be adhered to right from the concept phase.

3.6.1 Chassis and equipment

When certain conditions are met, rear-loader and side-loader bodies can be fitted on chassis in the TGL and TGM model range. However, it is mandatory to obtain approval from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

Front-loader bodies on TGL and TGM chassis are not permitted. They can be realised on TGS chassis.

Refuse-collector bodies on N44 and N46 chassis are possible only for operation on paved roads.

An MAN final cross member at the rear of the frame is mandatory for this type of body. If the frame overhang subsequently has to be shortened, Chapter III, Section 2.3.2 must be observed. The use of any other cross member at the end of the frame is not permitted.

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

3.6.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For refuse-collector bodies, continuous auxiliary frames are recommended. Bodies on multi-part auxiliary frames are possible.

Refuse-collector bodies with emptying systems (e.g. rear-loaders) require auxiliary frames with sufficient torsional and shear rigidity. This can be achieved by equipping the auxiliary frame with appropriate cross members, for example. In addition, the connection to the chassis frame at the rear is to be implemented over a large area, for example by means of thrust plates.

If further bodies such as loading cranes, for example, are added to the refuse-collector body, the relevant chapters in the guidelines must also be observed.

Refuse-collector vehicles are usually designed for operation on paved roads. This must be taken into account when selecting a chassis for applications on unpaved roads and reinforcement measures must be carried out.

3.7 Tippers

3.7.1 Chassis and equipment

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

Table 08-IV: Tipper bodies are permitted in conjunction with the following chassis

Type number	Series	Number of axles	Suspension	Production
N02, N03, N04, N05	TGL	2	Leaf-leaf suspension	
N12, N13, N14, N15	TGL	2	Leaf-air suspension	With effect from production in April 2010
N08, N37, N38, N62, N64	TGM	2	Leaf-leaf suspension	
N18, N36, N63	TGM	2	Leaf-air suspension	
N48*	TGM	3	Leaf-leaf suspension	

*TGM 6x4 type N48 tipper chassis are optimised for rear tipper bodies. This can be identified in the sales documentation from the suffix "HK" (German "Hinterkipper" = rear tipper). For fitting other bodies (e.g. loading crane, three-way tipper), approval from MAN is required (for address see "Publisher" above).

For operating chassis in the TGM model range with model no. N16 as tippers, the "Shock absorber reinforced for front axle" equipment (Sales Code 366CA) is required.

To improve stability on vehicles with air suspension it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered before commencing the tipping operation. Lowering can either be done manually via the ECAS control unit or it can be automatic using special equipment Sales Code 311PH (input of the ECAS parameters for air suspension lowering to 20 mm above the buffers).

Special equipment 311PH automatically lowers the vehicle to the defined level above the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. To ensure that the function provided by Sales Code 311PH is properly activated it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message "No ride height" appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.

If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

If tipper bodies are fitted to chassis not intended for tipper bodies ex works, these chassis must be equipped for operation as tippers. This may result in the replacement of leaf springs or stabilisers, for example. In such cases, approval must be obtained from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

3.7.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Tipper bodies require a chassis designed for their special purpose. MAN has corresponding chassis in its range, which can be found at MANTED (www.manted.de).

Factory-built tipper chassis require no additional work if it is ensured that the following points are observed.

- The permissible gross weight
- The permissible axle loads
- The standard tipper body length
- The standard frame overhang
- The standard vehicle overhang
- The maximum tipping angle of $\leq 50^\circ$ to the rear or side

All tipper bodies requires a continuous auxiliary frame made from steel (see Chapter IV, Section 2.2).

Tipping operations may lead to increased torsional loads on the chassis frame and the auxiliary frame. Because of these loads, the auxiliary frame must be implemented with sufficient torsional stiffness. The torsional stiffness of an auxiliary frame can be increased by fitting a diagonal strut, for example, (see Chapter IV, Section 3.9.3).

Tipper rams and tipper mountings must be incorporated into the auxiliary frame.

The following design parameters must be observed.

- Tipping angle to the rear or side $\leq 50^\circ$
- During tipping to the rear, the center of gravity of the tipper body with payload may only move behind the centerline of the rearmost axle when the stability of the vehicle is ensured (see Fig. 38-IV – Pos. 1).
- The center of gravity (see Fig. 38-IV – Pos. 2) of the cargo has a great influence on the stability of the vehicle during tipping. A high center of gravity can have adverse effects on stability even when the vehicle is only slightly tilted. When checking the stability of the vehicle, the bodybuilder must therefore pay attention to the possible center of gravity of the cargo during tipping. Special attention must be paid to heavy bulk goods, for example.

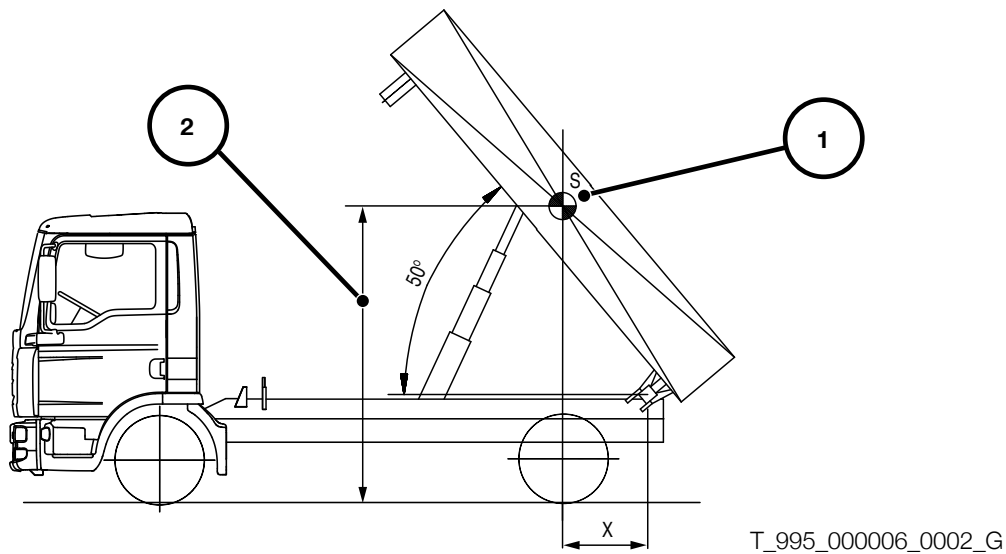
We recommend the following:

- The rear tipper mounting is to be located as close as possible to the rearmost axle (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.1) - Dimension "x" (see Table 09-IV and Fig. 38-IV).

Table 09-IV: Tipper: Maximum tipper-mounting distance

Chassis	Dimension x [mm]
Two axles	≤ 1200
Three-axle (Type N48)	≤ 800

Fig. 38-IV: Tipper: Recommended dimension for tipper bodies

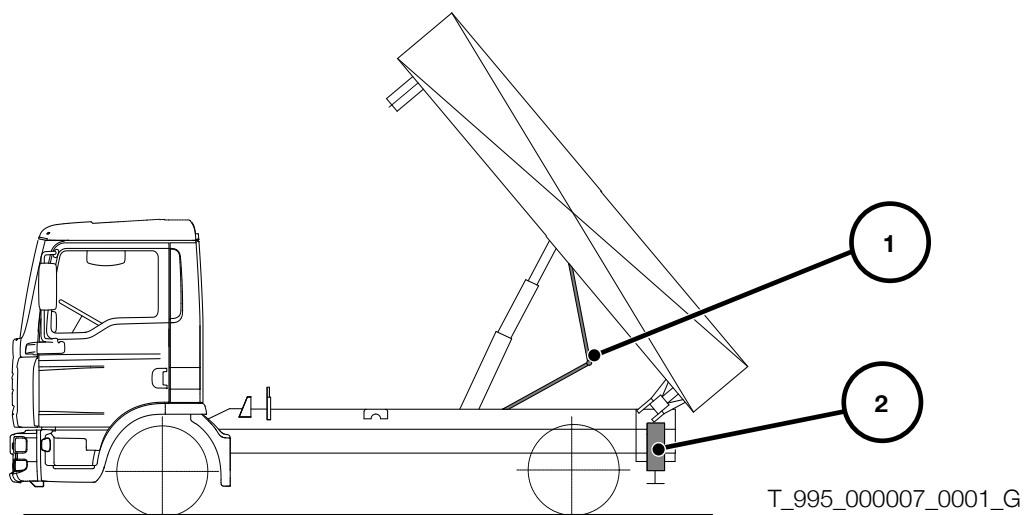


- 1) Center of gravity of tipper body
- 2) Height of center of gravity

For reasons of operating safety or operating conditions or in cases where the stated values are exceeded, supplementary measures may be required. For example, the use of hydraulic outriggers to improve stability or the relocation of certain units may be necessary. However, it is assumed that the bodybuilder itself will recognise the necessity for and take such measures.

Under certain circumstances, so-called “scissors” (see Fig. 39-IV – Pos. 1) fitted to rear dumpers for stabilisation of the tipper body in order to enhance stability and operational safety and/or a support at the end of the frame may be necessary (see Fig. 39-IV – Pos. 2).

Fig. 39-IV: Rear dumper with scissors and support



Important notice

Vehicles complying with the Euro 6 emission standard must be fitted with spacers on the vehicle side of the exhaust silencer. There would otherwise be a collision with components on the exhaust silencer when opening the drop-side panels.

Bodybuilders must provide supports for bodies capable of tipping in order to protect workers in the event of repairs having to be carried out beneath the tipped body.

3.8 Set-down and roll-off skip loaders

Chassis and equipment

As a basic principle, chassis with model numbers N01 and N11 may not be used as set-down and roll-off skip loaders (see Chapter II, Section 2.2 for explanation).

Chassis with model numbers N44 and N46 (see Chapter II, Section 2.2 for explanation) may only be used as set-down or roll-off skip loaders with approval from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

Due to the high position of centre of gravity exhibited by transported containers, we recommend equipping chassis with the stabilisation packages available ex works for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity. These packages for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3..

MAN retaining brackets are designed for fastening loading platforms and box bodies. For this reason, they are not suitable for fastening set-down and roll-off skip loaders.

To improve stability on vehicles with air suspension it must be ensured that the air suspension is lowered before commencing the tipping operation. Lowering can either be done manually via the ECAS control unit or it can be automatic using special equipment Sales Code 311PH (input of the ECAS parameters for air suspension lowering to 20 mm above the buffers).

Special equipment 311PH automatically lowers the vehicle to the defined level above the buffers if the power take-off is engaged when the vehicle is at a standstill. To ensure that the function provided by Sales Code 311PH is properly activated it is imperative that the correct order of operations is observed when engaging the power take-off (see operating instructions). A check must also be carried out to ensure that the message "No ride height" appears on the display and that the vehicle has actually lowered.

If an automatic lowering system is not fitted then the user/driver must be informed of the requirement to manually lower the air suspension.

Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

For these types of body, the design often means that the auxiliary frames cannot follow the contour of the main frame and special connections to the main frame must therefore be provided. Information regarding proven fasteners together with their design and fitting is available in the manufacturers' installation instructions on bodies.

Because of the low substructure heights, the freedom of movement of all moving parts attached to the chassis (e.g. brake cylinders, transmission shift components, axle location components, etc.) and the body (e.g. hydraulic cylinders, pipes, tipper frame, etc.) must be checked and ensured. If necessary a reinforcing frame must be fitted.

Modifications to the driving height or restrictions to the spring travel are not permitted.

When loading and unloading, outriggers are required at the end of the vehicle if:

- The rear-axle load is more than twice the technically permissible rear-axle load. Here, the tyre and rim load capacity must also be taken into account.
- The front axle loses contact with the ground. For safety reasons, lifting of this kind is strictly forbidden!
- The stability of the vehicle is not ensured. This can result from a high center of gravity, an impermissible side tilt when suspension compression occurs on one side, if the vehicle sinks into soft ground on one side, etc.

3.9 Loading crane

Loading cranes on truck chassis are usually fitted behind the cab or at the rear end of the vehicle. In addition, truck chassis are also employed as carrier vehicles for jib cranes.

Crane bodies place great demands on truck chassis and thus necessitate meticulous coordination of body and chassis.

Information

Approval of body

Approval for a crane body will be required if the framework set by these body guidelines is exceeded.

This applies to:

- Body specifications do not permit compliance with the requirements of body and auxiliary-frame design (see Chapter IV, Sections 2.0 and 3.9.3).
- The given maximum total crane moment as per Fig. 42-IV resp. Fig. 43-IV is exceeded (see Chapter IV, Sections 3.9.3).
- Four outriggers
- Special outriggers are fitted.

Acceptance of cranes

A crane body and its working are to be examined before the crane first goes into use in line with national specifications by a crane specialist or another person authorized to examine crane structures.

Warning notice

Responsibility for ensuring stability lies with the bodybuilder.

3.9.1 Chassis and equipment

If the vehicle is deployed with higher body or load centres of gravity, it is possible to select the vehicle equipment accordingly. The equipment options for bodies/loads with high centres of gravity are listed and outlined in Chapter III Section 7.3.

As a basic principle, chassis with model numbers N01 and N11 (see Chapter II, Section 2.2 for explanation) may not be fitted with loading cranes.

For fitting a loading crane behind the cab on chassis in the TGM model range with model no. N16, the "Shock absorber reinforced for front axle" equipment (Sales Code 366CA) is required.

Reinforced axle equipment

Depending on the size of the crane (weight and centre of gravity) and its position (behind the cab or at the rear), vehicles must be fitted with reinforced springs where available. These measures will prevent the chassis from adopting a lopsided position (such as due to reduced compression of the reinforced springs). Nevertheless, it is not always possible to avoid some lopsidedness on a crane body because of the shift in a vehicle's centre of gravity.

Important notice

The body retaining brackets delivered ex works are not suitable for crane bodies.

If no final cross member is fitted to the chassis (as is the case on the TGL/TGM when no trailer coupling is ordered) one must be retrofitted before a rear loading crane is installed.

Supporting vehicles

Chapter IV, Section 1.6 must in addition be observed with regard to vehicles with outriggers.

Prepared loading crane tippers

At MAN, it is possible to order tippers with a preparation for subsequent loading crane installation ex-works.

The preparation includes:

- Vehicle equipment for tippers
- Relocation of exhaust silencer to rear (space for support legs)
- Continuous auxiliary frame for crane and tipper
- Clearance for loading crane behind cab

The dimensions for the crane installation space and the maximum permitted gross crane torque (see Chapter IV. 3.9.3 Requirements for the auxiliary frame for loading crane bodies) are therefore already predefined.

The body manufacturer must check whether the crane meets the specified conditions.

If the maximum permitted gross crane torque is exceeded, the body manufacturer must take suitable measures to reinforce the auxiliary frame.

The body manufacturer must also ensure that the permitted axle loads are observed with crane and load.

In the case of loading crane tippers based on a TGL vehicle, it is recommended to always select a permitted front axle load of four tonnes.

Table 10-IV:

Type	Vehicle	Order code	Tipper body	Clearance for loading crane*	Maximum permitted gross crane torque
N02 / N03 / N12 / N13	8.XXX 4x2 BB / BL 3600 C cab	485QA	3800 x 2350 x 400	820 mm	70 kNm
N08 / N18	18.XXX 4x2 BB/ BL 3875 C cab	485DE	4000 x 2420 x 600	1020 mm	140 kNm
N36	15.XXX 4x4 BL 3650 C cab	485QC	4000 x 2350 x 600	970 mm	120 kNm
N38	18.XXX 4x4 BB 3900 C cab	485DE	4000 x 2420 x 600	1120 mm	140 kNm

*Area kept free for loading crane between cab and tipper body. Dimension applies only above the auxiliary frame.

3.9.2 Requirements to be met by the body

General

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The empty weight and total moment of a loading crane must be matched to the chassis on which it will be fitted.

Axle loads

The maximum permissible axle load during crane operation (with the vehicle stationary) must not be more than twice the technically permissible axle load. The impact coefficient provided by the crane manufacturer must be factored in.

The pivoting range of the crane must be limited if this is required to maintain the permissible axle loads or to ensure stability.

Asymmetric installation of a crane is not permissible if uneven wheel loads arise as a result (see Chapter III, Section 2.2.6). The bodybuilder must ensure adequate compensation.

Support and stability

Amongst other characteristics, the torsional stiffness of the entire frame connection is responsible for stability. Note here that high torsional stiffness of the frame structure reduces the driving comfort and offroad capability of the vehicle.

The number of outriggers and their positions and distance apart is to be determined by the crane manufacturer on the basis of the stability calculation and vehicle load. For technical reasons MAN may require four outriggers. During operation of the crane the outriggers must always be extended level with the ground. They must be repositioned appropriately for loading and unloading. The crane producer must also detail any ballast required to ensure stability.

Projection of auxiliary frame beyond spring bearing

It is not possible to install a crane body behind the cab if the auxiliary frame does not extend to beyond the rearmost spring hanger of the front axle. This normally only affects chassis fitted with the L, LX or double cab. Here the body of each vehicle must be individually inspected to ensure that permissible material stresses are not exceeded.

Particularities concerning detachable rear loading cranes

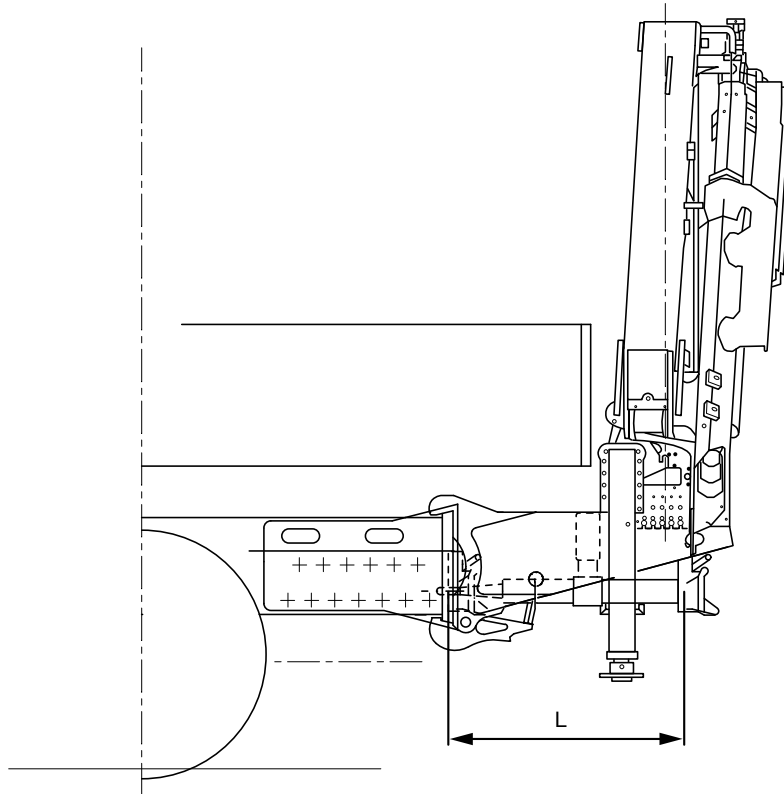
With the crane coupled while working without a trailer, the coupling device must be fitted with underride protection and the statutorily required lighting equipment.

A second trailer coupling is to be installed on the retaining brackets for detachable rear loading cranes if the vehicle is to be operated with a trailer. This trailer coupling is connected to the one fitted on the vehicle by means of a towing eye (Fig. 40-IV). The instructions in the "Coupling devices TG" booklet are to be observed.

The coupling device and the body must be able to properly absorb the forces created when working with a trailer.

In trailer operation, the overall length is increased by the distance between the two trailer couplings (dimension L, see Fig. 40-IV).

Fig. 40-IV: Coupling device for rear loading crane



T_995_000008_0001_G

The extra overhang length caused by the coupling device must be considered.

The centre of gravity of the payload shifts depending on whether a crane is coupled or not. To achieve the largest possible payload without exceeding permissible axle loads, we recommend clearly marking the centre of gravity of the payload, with and without a crane, on the body.

3.9.3 Requirements to be met by auxiliary frames for loading cranes

General

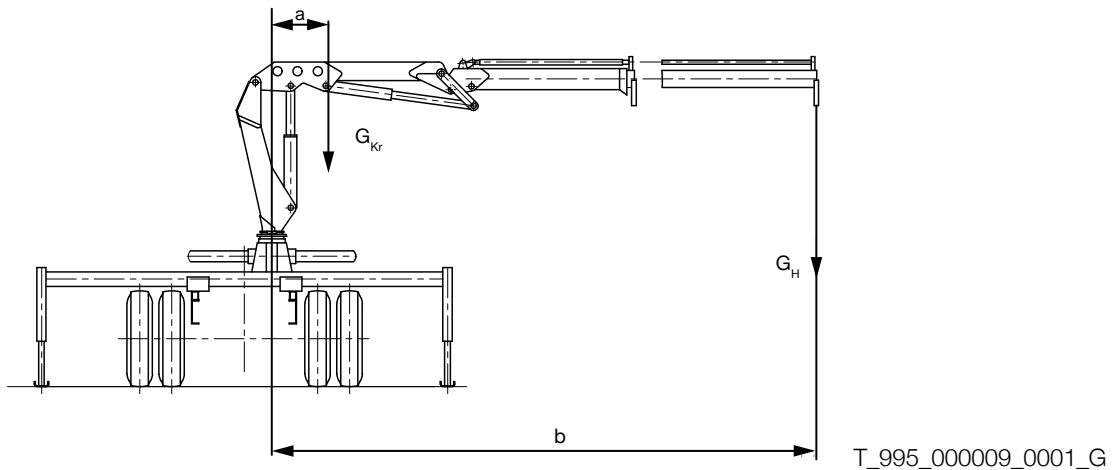
The body or crane manufacturer must provide a sufficiently robust mounting for crane and auxiliary frame. Operating forces including safety coefficients must be supported reliably.

For crane bodies, an auxiliary frame side member with a second moment of area of at least 175 cm⁴ must be used.

Crane total moment

Calculation is based on the maximum total moment and not the lifting moment. The total moment results from the empty weight and the lifting force of the loading crane with the crane arm extended. Calculation of the total crane moment, see Formula 02-IV below.

Fig. 41-IV: Moments on loading crane



Formula 02-IV: Total moment of loading crane

$$M_{Kr} = \frac{g \cdot s \cdot (G_{Kr} \cdot a + G_H \cdot b)}{1000}$$

Where:

- a = distance of crane center of gravity from center of crane pillar [m], crane arm extended to maximum length
- b = distance of maximum lifting load from center of crane pillar [m], crane arm extended to maximum length
- G_H = lifting load of the loading crane in [kg]
- G_{Kr} = weight of the loading crane in [kg]
- M_{Kr} = total moment in [kNm]
- s = impact coefficient acc. to crane producer (dependent on crane control), always ≥ 1
- g = acceleration due to gravity 9.81 [m/s²]

Auxiliary frame installation

Loading crane bodies are only permitted with a continuous auxiliary frame.

When installing the loading crane behind the cab, the auxiliary frame must be closed at least in the crane area to the box.

If the loading crane is installed at the rear, a closed profile must be used from the end of the frame to at least a point forward of the front-most rear axle guide member. In addition, to increase the torsional stiffness of the auxiliary frame, a cross strut or an equivalent structure must be fitted (see also Chapter IV Section 2.2).

Loading cranes are frequently installed with various types of body, for which an auxiliary frame is also required (e.g. on tippers). In such cases, the auxiliary frame is usually divided into several auxiliary-frame regions. Variations in rigidity in the transitions from one region to another are to be avoided. If a continuous auxiliary-frame profile is to be used, the auxiliary frame with the greater strength and rigidity must be used for the entire body structure.

To ensure stability while a crane is operating the subframe in the region between the two outrigger members must exhibit adequate torsional stiffness. For strength reasons, lifting the vehicle on the outriggers is permissible only if the auxiliary-frame structure absorbs all the forces resulting from the operation of the crane and provided its connection to the chassis frame is not rigid (e.g. truck cranes).

To protect the auxiliary frame we recommend fitting an additional upper flange (anti-wear plate) to prevent the base of the crane from wearing into the auxiliary frame. This additional top flange should be 8-10 mm thick depending on the size of the crane.

Simplified auxiliary-frame design

The method and correlation between crane total moment and geometrical moment of inertia - dependent on the chassis frame - applies to crane structures behind the cab and to crane structures on the frame end with two outriggers. Safety coefficients have already been taken into account. The crane total moment M_{kr} must be factored in along with the impact coefficient supplied by the crane manufacturer (see Formula 02-IV).

The necessary planar moments of inertia relate only to a subframe longitudinal member.

The freedom of movement of all moving parts is not taken into consideration here; it must therefore be re-checked when the dimensions have been selected.

To determine the necessary geometrical moment of inertia of the auxiliary frame for a given crane total moment for the TGL, Fig. 42-IV, applies. For the TGM, Fig. 43-IV applies.

Example of how to use the graphs in Fig. 42-IV to Fig. 46-IV:

an auxiliary frame is to be specified for a TGM 18.xxx 4x2 BB, model N08 vehicle, frame-profile no. 39 (see Chapter III; Section 4.3). The vehicle is to be fitted with a crane with a total moment of 150 kNm.

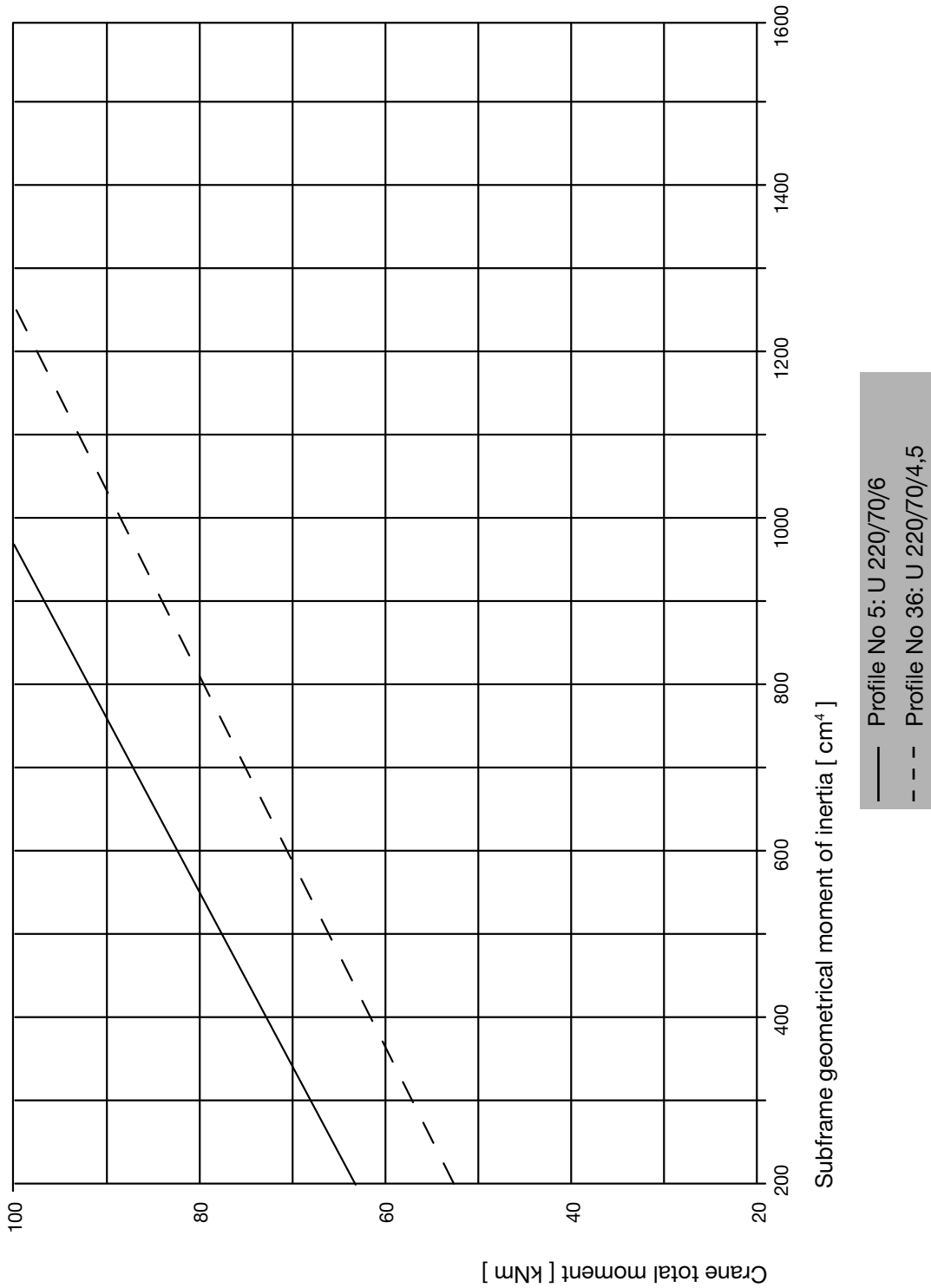
Solution: A minimum geometrical moment of inertia of approx. 1.750 cm^4 is derived from Fig. 43-IV.

If one U-profile with a width of 80 mm and a thickness of 8 mm is closed to form a box with an 8-mm thick profile, a profile height of at least 190 mm is required, see diagram in Fig. 45-IV.

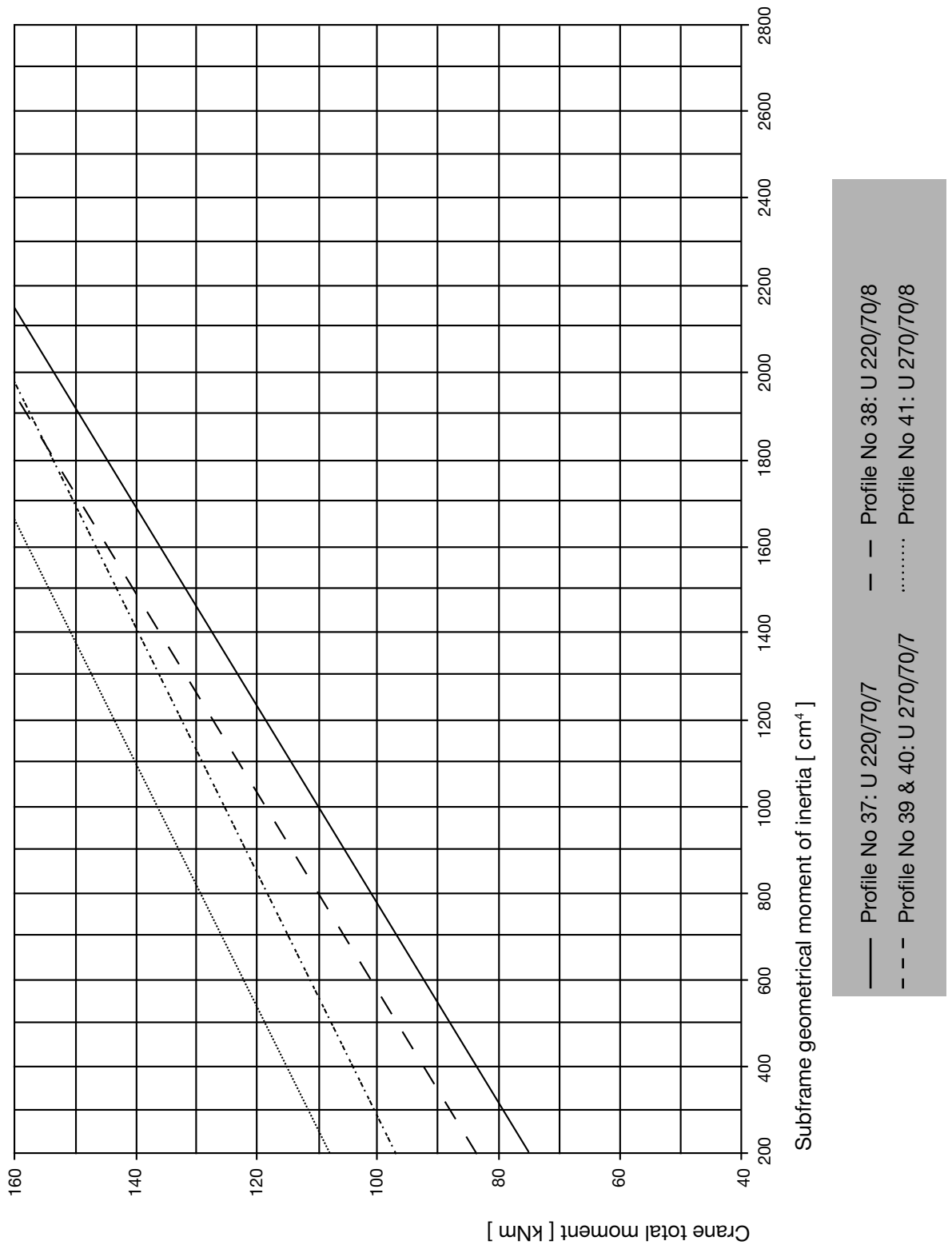
If two U-profiles of width/thickness = 80/8 are nested to form a box, the minimum height is reduced to approx. 160 mm, see Fig. 46-IV. If, when the values are read off, the profile size in question is not available, round up to the next available size. Rounding down is not permitted.

An open U-profile as in Fig. 44-IV must not be used in the vicinity of the crane. It is only shown here because the diagram can also be used for other bodies.

Fig. 42-IV: Total crane moment and geometrical moment of inertia for TGL

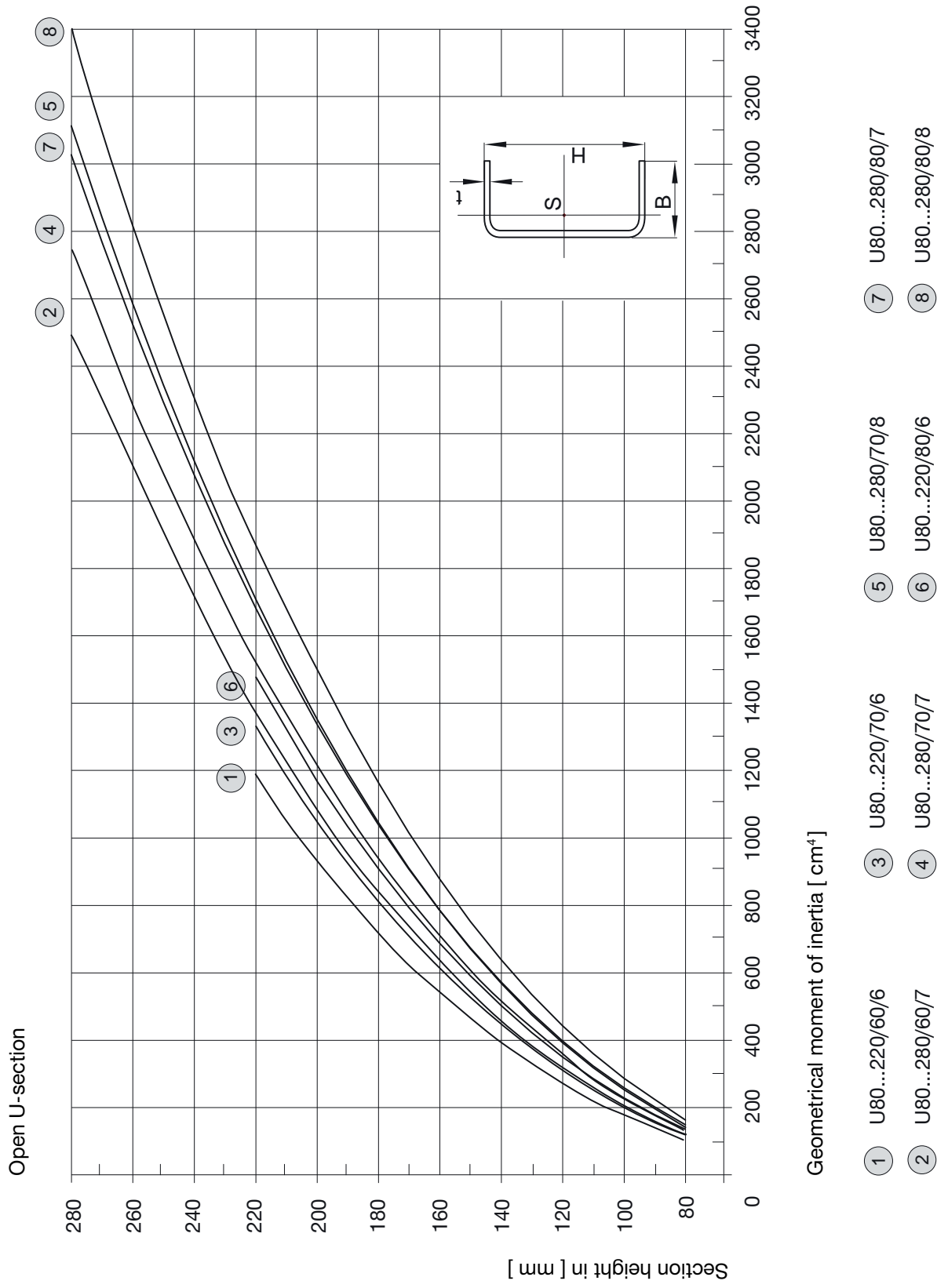


T_993_000011_0001_D

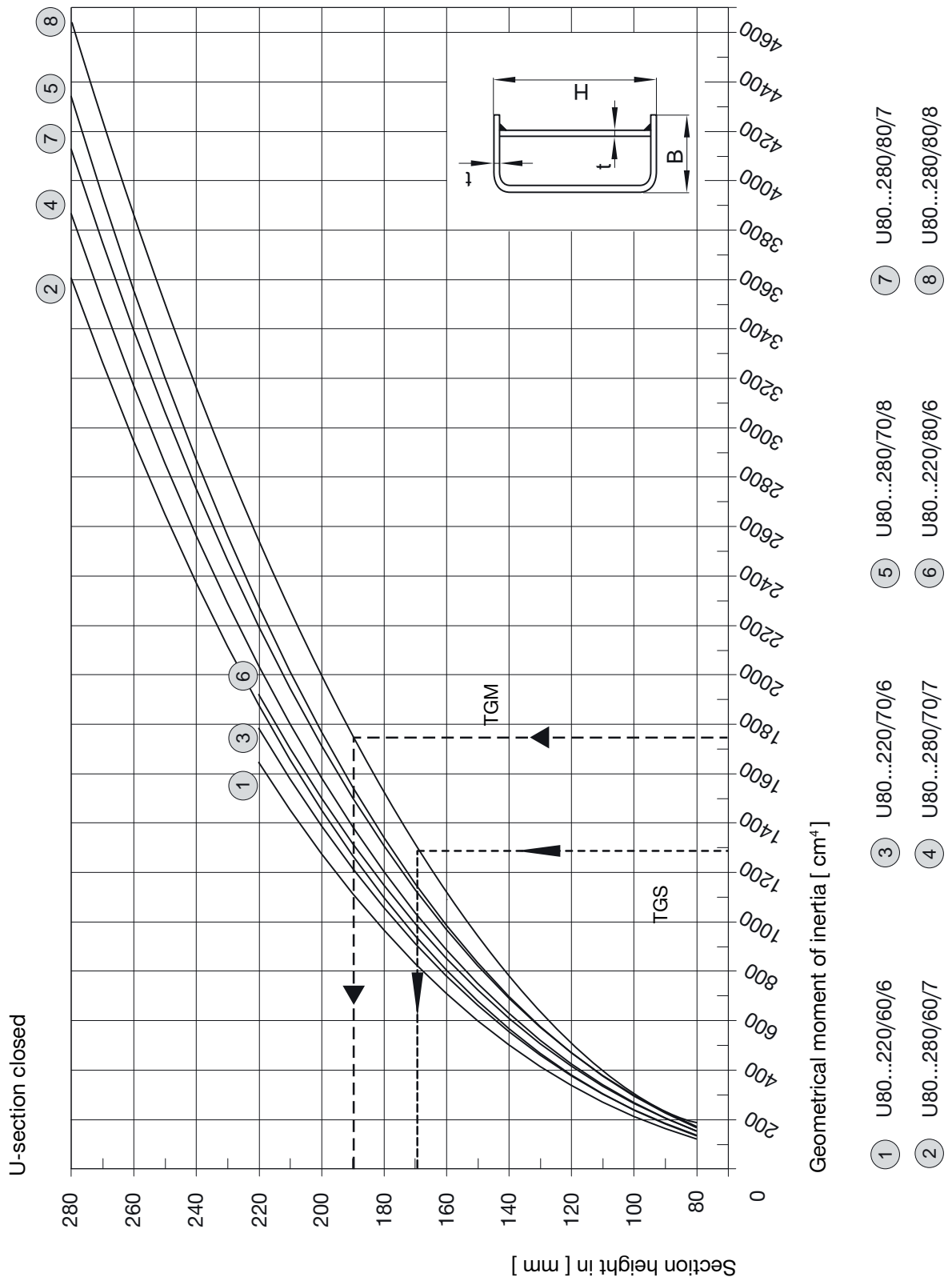
Fig. 43-IV: Total crane moment and geometrical moment of inertia for TGM


T_993_000012_0001_D

Fig. 44-IV: Planar moment of inertia of U-profiles

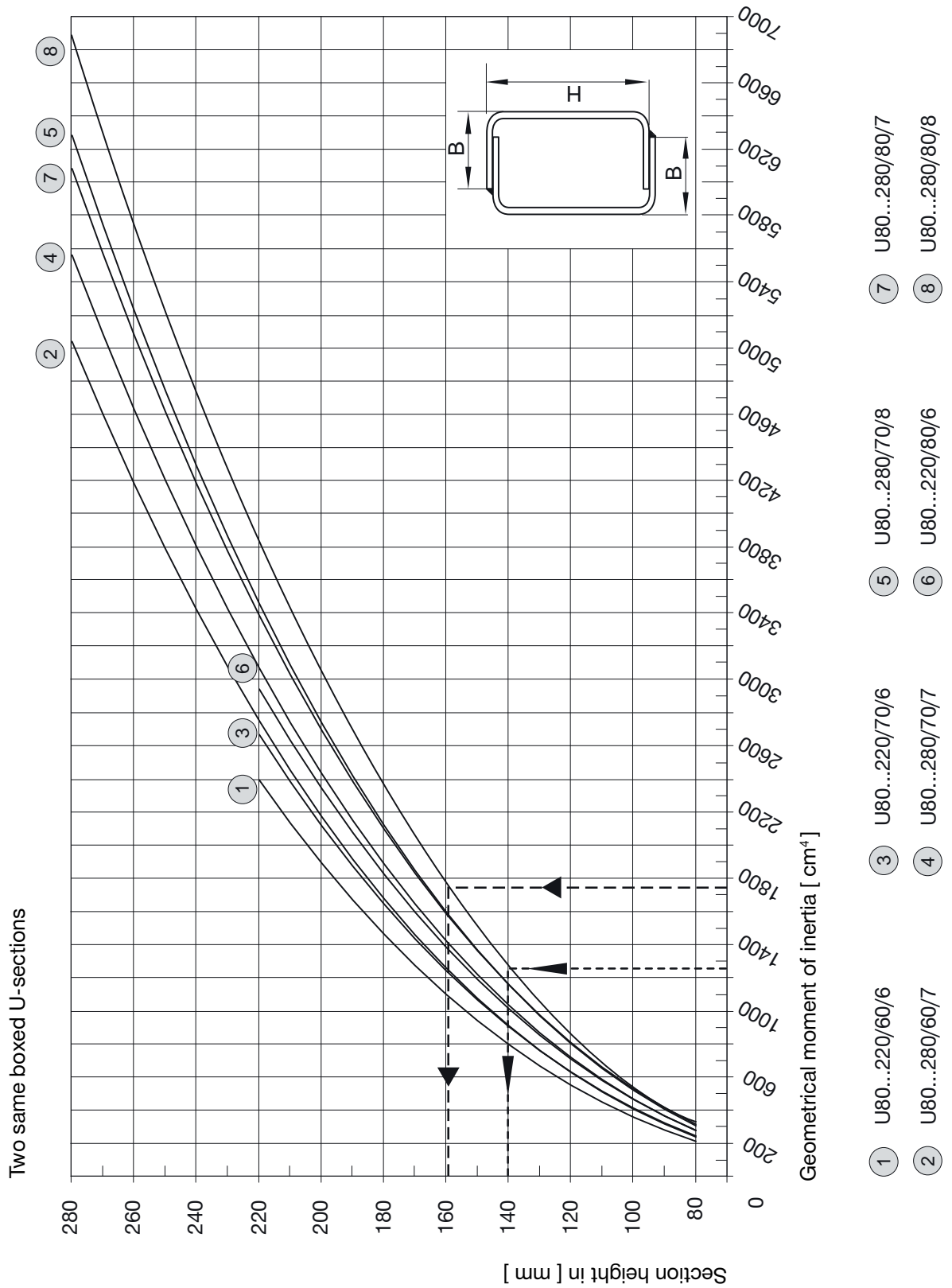


T_993_000013_0001_D

Fig. 45-IV: Geometrical moments of inertia of closed U-profiles


T_993_000014_0001_D

Fig. 46-IV: Geometrical moments of inertia of nested U-profiles



T_993_000015_0001_D

3.10 Transport mixers

3.10.1 Chassis and equipment

The MAN range includes chassis that are suitable for mounting a transport mixer body. These chassis can be recognised by the suffix “**TM**” for “Transport Mixer” in the sales documentation.

The requirements with regard to running gear and the thrust plates are then included in the scope of delivery. In order to reduce the tendency to roll, transport mixer chassis must be fitted with stabilisers on both rear axles and must be equipped with springs that are specifically tuned for the application.

Table 11-IV: Transport mixer chassis available ex works

Type number	Variant designation
N48	TGM 26.xxx 6X4 BB

Mixer bodies on TGL or TGM chassis not listed in Table 11-IV must be submitted to MAN (for address see “Publisher” above) together with the usual documentation for checking.

The concrete mixer is generally driven by the flywheel-side power take-off (SSNA) on the engine. Further information on power take-offs can be found in the separate booklet entitled “Power take-offs”.

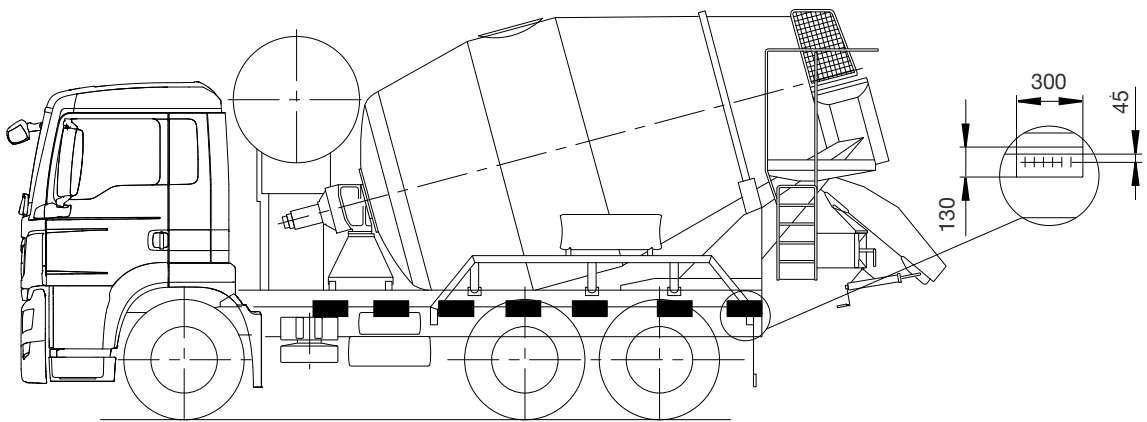
3.10.2 Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

Fig. 47-IV shows an example of thrust-plate arrangement on a transport mixer chassis. The body is rigid along virtually its entire length, the only exception being at the front end of the auxiliary frame ahead of the drum mounting. The first two thrust plates must be positioned in the area of the front retaining brackets for the drum.

For more detailed explanations on auxiliary frame fastenings, see Chapter IV, Section 2.4 "Auxiliary frame and body fastenings". The strength of the thrust plate should be 8 mm and at least match the material quality of S355J2G3 (St52-3).

Fig. 47-IV: Transport mixer body



T_995_000010_0001_G

If a different chassis (e.g. a tipper chassis) is to be used for fitting a transport mixer it is assumed that the spring and stabiliser equipment of the axles and the arrangement of the thrust plates are equivalent to those of a comparable transport mixer body.

Important notice

The thrust plate arrangement of tipper chassis and the retaining brackets for loading platforms are not suitable for mounting transport mixer bodies.

Concrete conveyor belts or concrete pumps cannot easily be fitted together with mixer bodies onto standard transport mixer chassis. In some circumstances, a different auxiliary frame structure from that of the normal mixer auxiliary frame or a cross connection on the frame end is required (similar to rear loading crane bodies, see Chapter IV, Section 3.9.3 "Auxiliary frame for loading cranes").

Approval from MAN (for address see "Publisher" above) and from the transport mixer manufacturer is essential.

3.11 Cable winch

Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The following must be considered when installing a cable winch:

- Tractive force
- Installation position:
 - Front installation
 - Central installation
 - Rear installation
 - Side installation
- Type drive:
 - Mechanical
 - Hydraulic
 - Electrical
 - Electromechanical
 - Electrohydraulic.

Vehicle components such as axles, springs and frames may under no circumstances be overloaded by the operation of the cable winch. This is particularly important if the direction of the winch pulling force differs from the longitudinal axis of the vehicle. Automatic limiting of the pulling force may be necessary as a function of the direction of the pulling force.

In every case it is important to ensure clear and proper guidance and running of the cable. The cable should feed through as few guide pulleys as possible. At the same time no part of the vehicle may be degraded in its working.

When a winch is installed at the front, its maximum tractive force is limited by the technically permissible front-axle load. The technically permissible front-axle load is found on the factory plate of the vehicle and in the vehicle documentation. A winch design that has tractive forces above the technically permissible front-axle load is permissible only after prior consultation with MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

A hydraulic winch drive is preferable because of the better possibilities for control and installation. The efficiency of the hydraulic pump and motor is to be taken into account (see also Chapter V "Calculations").

Examine whether existing hydraulic pumps, e.g. of a loading crane or tipper, can be shared. This can sometimes avoid the need for installing several power take-offs.

For the worm gears of mechanical winches it is necessary to observe the admissible input speed (usually < 2000/min). Select the ratio of the power take-off accordingly. Take the low efficiency of the worm gear into consideration when calculating the minimum torque at the power take-off.

Refer to Chapter III, Section 8.0 "Electrical and electronic systems" with regard to electromechanically or electrohydraulically driven winches. The capacities of the alternator and battery must be taken into consideration.

Information

Every time a winch is installed, the installation instructions of the winch manufacturer together with any applicable official safety regulations must be observed.

3.12 Single-pivot body

Requirements to be met by the body

The general requirements to be met by body design as set down in Chapter IV, Section 2.0 are to be observed.

The single-pivot body, comparable to a fifth-wheel coupling, always requires a subframe.

Positioning of the pivot point for the single-pivot body behind the theoretical rear-axle centerline must be approved with regard to axle load distribution and handling. In this case approval must be granted by MAN (for address see "Publisher" above).

NOTICE



NOTICE

V. Calculations

1.0 General

Unless stated otherwise, dimensions are in millimetres (mm) and weights in kilograms (kg). “Weight” or “load” means the mass of a vehicle or parts of a vehicle in a stationary (steady) state.

Further general explanations can be found at www.manted.de in the “Documentation/help” section. Registration is required.

1.1 Speed

The following generally applies for the calculation of the road speed on the basis of engine speed, tyre size and overall ratio:

Formula 01-V: Speed

$$v = \frac{0,06 \cdot n_{\text{Mot}} \cdot U}{i_{\text{G}} \cdot i_{\text{v}} \cdot i_{\text{A}}}$$

To determine theoretical top speed (or design top speed), the calculation uses an engine speed increased by 4% (constant factor of 0.0624).

The formula is therefore as follows:

Formula 02-V: Theoretical top speed

$$v = \frac{0,0624 \cdot n_{\text{Mot}} \cdot U}{i_{\text{G}} \cdot i_{\text{v}} \cdot i_{\text{A}}}$$

Where:

v	Road speed [km/h]
n_{Mot}	Engine speed [rpm]
U	Tyre rolling circumference [m]
i_{G}	Gearbox ratio
i_{v}	Transfer-case ratio
i_{A}	Ratio of drive axle(s)
0,06	Constant conversion factor m/min in km/h
0,0624	Constant conversion factor with 4% increase of engine speed m/min in km/h

Note:

On vehicles with a speed limiter in accordance with 92/24/EEC, the design top speed is generally 90 km/h.

Important:

This calculation serves only to determine the theoretical top speed reached as a result of engine speeds and transmission ratios. The formula does not take into account that the actual top speed will be lower when driving resistances act on the driving forces. An estimate of the actual achievable speeds using a driving performance calculation in which air, rolling and climbing resistance on the one side and propulsive force on the other offset each other, can be found in Section 1.8, “Driving resistances”.

Example: Calculation of speedsGiven:

Tyre size:	315/80R 22.5
Rolling circumference:	3.280 m
Gearbox:	ZF 16S2522TO
Transmission ratio in lowest gear:	13.80
Transmission ratio in highest gear:	0.84
Minimum engine speed at maximum engine torque:	1,000 rpm
Maximum engine speed:	1,900 rpm
Transfer case ratio G 172 on-road:	1.007
Transfer case ratio G 172 off-road:	1.652
Axle ratio:	4,00

Wanted:

1. Minimum speed off-road at maximum torque
2. Theoretical top speed without speed limiter

Answer 1:

$$v = \frac{0,06 \cdot 1000 \cdot 3,280}{13,8 \cdot 1,652 \cdot 4,00}$$
$$v = 2,16 \text{ km/h}$$

Answer 2:

$$v = \frac{0,0624 \cdot 1900 \cdot 3,280}{0,84 \cdot 1,007 \cdot 4,00}$$
$$v = 115 \text{ km/h}$$

115 km/h theoretically possible but restricted to 90 km/h by speed limiter (electronic speed limiter 89 km/h + 1 km/h tolerance).

1.2 Efficiency

Efficiency is the ratio of the power output to the power input.

The power output is always smaller than the power input, so the efficiency η is always < 1 or $< 100\%$.

Formula 03-V: Degree of efficiency

$$\eta = \frac{P_{ab}}{P_{zu}}$$

Where:

P_{zu}	Power input [kW]
P_{ab}	Power output [kW]
η	Efficiency

Note:

The individual efficiencies multiply when several subassemblies are connected in series.

Example: Single efficiency

Given:

Efficiency of a hydraulic pump

$$\eta = 0,7$$

Required power

$$P_{ab} = 20 \text{ kW}$$

Wanted:

How high is the input power P_{zu} ?

Solution:

$$P_{zu} = \frac{P_{ab}}{\eta}$$

$$P_{zu} = \frac{20}{0,7}$$

$$P_{zu} = 28,6 \text{ kW}$$

V. Calculations

Example: Several efficiencies

Given:

A pump drives a hydraulic motor via a jointed shaft system with two joints.

Output power P_{ab} is 20 kW.

Single efficiencies

Hydraulic pump:	η_1	=	0,7
Jointed shaft joint a:	η_2	=	0,95
Jointed shaft joint b:	η_3	=	0,95
Hydraulic motor:	η_4	=	0,8

Wanted:

How high is the input power P_{zu} ?

Solution:

Total efficiency:

$$\begin{aligned}\eta_{ges} &= \eta_1 \cdot \eta_2 \cdot \eta_3 \cdot \eta_4 \\ \eta_{ges} &= 0,7 \cdot 0,95 \cdot 0,95 \cdot 0,8 \\ \eta_{ges} &= 0,51\end{aligned}$$

Input power:

$$\begin{aligned}P_{zu} &= \frac{20}{0,51} \\ P_{zu} &= 39,2 \text{ kW}\end{aligned}$$

1.3 Tractive force

The tractive force is dependent on:

- engine torque
- Overall ratio (including wheels)
- Efficiency of power transmission

Formula 04-V: Tractive force

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

Where:

F_z	Tractive force [N]
M_{Mot}	Engine torque [Nm]
η	Total efficiency in driveline (for guideline values, see Table 02-V, Chapter V, Section 1.4.3)
i_G	Gearbox ratio
i_V	Transfer-case ratio
i_A	Ratio of drive axle(s)
U	Tyre rolling circumference [m]

For an example of tractive force, see Chapter IV; Section 1.4.3 “Calculating gradeability”.

1.4 Gradeability

1.4.1 Distance travelled on uphill or downhill gradients

The gradeability of a vehicle is expressed in %. For example, the figure 25% means that for a horizontal length of $l = 100$ m, a height of $h = 25$ m can be overcome. The same applies correspondingly to downhill gradients.

The actual distance travelled c is calculated as follows:

Formula 05-V: Distance travelled on uphill or downhill gradient

$$c = \sqrt{l^2 + h^2} = l \cdot \sqrt{1 + \left[\frac{p}{100}\right]^2}$$

Where:

c	Distance [m]
l	Horizontal length of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
h	Vertical height of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
p	Uphill/downhill gradient [%]

Example:

Given:

Gradient $p = 25$ %.

Wanted:

What is the distance travelled for a length of 200 m?

Solution:

$$c = \sqrt{l^2 + h^2} = 200 \cdot \sqrt{1 + \left[\frac{25}{100}\right]^2}$$

$$c = 206 \text{ m}$$

1.4.2 Angle of uphill or downhill gradient

The angle of uphill or downhill gradient α is calculated by the following formula:

Formula 06-V: Angle of uphill or downhill gradient

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{p}{100}, \alpha = \arctan \frac{p}{100}, \sin \alpha = \frac{h}{c}, \alpha = \arcsin \frac{h}{c}$$

Where:

α	Angle of uphill gradient [°]
p	Uphill/downhill gradient [%]
h	Vertical height of uphill or downhill gradient [m]
c	Distance [m]

Example: Calculating the angle of uphill gradient

Given:

Gradient p is 25%.

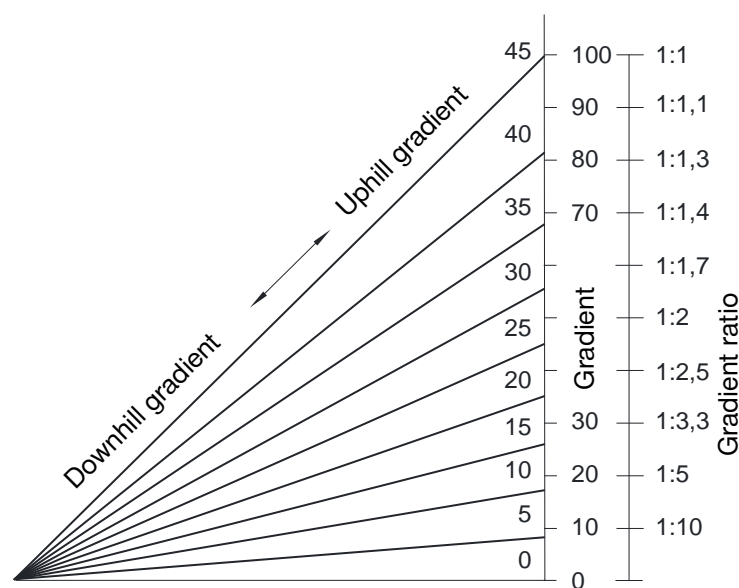
Wanted:

What is the angle of the gradient?

Solution:

$$\begin{aligned} \tan \alpha &= \frac{p}{100} = \frac{25}{100} \\ \alpha &= \arctan 0,25 \\ \alpha &= 14^\circ \end{aligned}$$

Fig. 01-V: Gradient ratio, gradient, angle of gradient



T_997_000001_0001_G

1.4.3 Calculating the gradeability

Gradeability is dependent on:

- Tractive force (see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3)
- Total combined mass including total mass of trailer or semi-trailer
- Rolling resistance
- Adhesion (friction)

Gradeability (without taking adhesion between the tyres and the road surface into account) is calculated by the following formula:

Formula 07-V: Gradeability without taking adhesion between the tyres and the road surface into account

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{F_z}{9,81 \cdot G_z} - f_R \right]$$

Where:

p	=	Gradeability [%]
F_z	=	Tractive force in [N]
G_z	=	Overall combined mass, in [kg]
f_R	=	Coefficient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V

Formula 07-V calculates the vehicle's gradeability based on its characteristics of

- Engine torque
- Transmission, transfer case, axle drive and tyre ratio
- Total combined mass

All that is taken into account here is the ability of the vehicle, based on the above-mentioned characteristics, to deal with a certain gradient. This does not consider the actual adhesion between wheels and road which in poor conditions (e.g. wet roads) can reduce traction so that hill-climbing performance is far below the value calculated here.

Calculation of the actual conditions based on given adhesion is addressed in the formula below.

Formula 08-V: Gradeability in relation to road/tyre adhesion

$$p_R = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{\mu \cdot G_{an}}{G_z} - f_R \right]$$

Where:

p_R	Gradeability allowing for friction [%]
μ	Coefficient of adhesion between tyres/road surface, see Table 03-V
f_R	Coefficient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V
G_{an}	Sum of the axle loads of the drive axles as mass [kg]
G_z	Gross train mass [kg]

Important:

The above formulae can be applied for resulting gradeability values of up to 30%. Results with values of more than 30% cannot be considered realistic.

Table 01-V: Coefficients of rolling resistance f_R

Road surface	Coefficient f_R
Good asphalt	0,007
Wet asphalt	0,015
Good concrete	0,008
Rough concrete	0,011
Block paving	0,017
poor-quality, rough road	0,032
Dirt track	0,15...0,94
Loose sand	0,15...0,30

Table 02-V: Total efficiency in driveline η

Number of driven axles	η
One driven axle	0,95
Two driven axles	0,9
Three driven axles	0,85
Four driven axles	0,8

Table 03-V: Coefficient of adhesion μ between tyres/road surface (guideline values)

Road surface	dry	wet
Concrete, granite paving	0,7	0,6
Tarmacadam	0,6	0,5
Asphalt	0,6	0,5
Blue basalt stone	0,55	0,3
Snow (compacted)	0,2	0,1
Sheet ice	0,1	0,01 ... 0,1

Example: Calculation of gradeability not taking into account adhesion between tyres/road surface

Given:

Vehicle	TGS 33.430 6x6 BB	
Maximum engine torque	M_{Mot}	= 2100 Nm
Efficiency with three driven axles	η_{ges}	= 0,85
Transmission ratio in lowest gear	i_G	= 13,80
Transfer-case ratio in on-road gear	i_V	= 1,007
Transfer-case ratio in off-road gear	i_V	= 1,652
Drive-axle ratio	i_A	= 4,00
Tyres 315/80 R 22.5 with rolling circumference	U	= 3,280 m
Gross train weight	G_z	= 100000 kg
Coefficient of rolling resistance	f_R	
- smooth asphalt		= 0,007
- poor, rough road		= 0,032

Wanted:

Maximum gradeability p in on-road and off-road gear.

Solution:

1. Maximum tractive force (for definition see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3) in on-road gear:

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{Mot} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot 2100 \cdot 0,85 \cdot 13,8 \cdot 1,007 \cdot 4,00}{3,280}$$

$$F_z = 190070 \text{ N} = 190,07 \text{ kN}$$

2. Maximum tractive force (for definition see Formula 04-V, Chapter V, Section 1.3) in off-road gear:

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot M_{\text{Mot}} \cdot \eta \cdot i_G \cdot i_V \cdot i_A}{U}$$

$$F_z = \frac{2\pi \cdot 2100 \cdot 0,85 \cdot 13,8 \cdot 1,652 \cdot 4,00}{3,280}$$

$$F_z = 311812 \text{ N} = 311,8 \text{ kN}$$

3. Maximum gradeability in on-road gear on good asphalt road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{F_z}{9,81 \cdot G_z} - f_R \right]$$

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{190070}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,007 \right]$$

$$p = 18,68 \%$$

4. Maximum gradeability in on-road gear on poor-quality rough road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{190070}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,032 \right]$$

$$p = 16,18 \%$$

5. Maximum gradeability in off-road gear on good asphalt road:

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{311812}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,007 \right]$$

$$p = 31,09 \%$$

6. Maximum gradeability in off-road gear on poor-quality rough road

$$p = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{311812}{9,81 \cdot 100000} - 0,032 \right]$$

$$p = 28,58 \%$$

Please note that:

The examples do not consider whether adhesion between road and driven wheels (friction) will allow transmission of the tractive force required for climbing a gradient. The following example shows the calculation where adhesion between the tyres and the road surface is taken into consideration. Formula 08-V is applied.

Example: Calculation of gradeability taking into account grip between road and tyres (front axle not activated)

Given:

Coefficient of friction on wet asphalt road	μ	=	0,5
Coefficient of rolling resistance on wet asphalt road	f_R	=	0,015
Total combined mass	G_z	=	100000 kg
Sum of axle loads of all driven axles	G_{an}	=	26000 kg

Wanted:

Gradeability allowing for friction [%]

$$p_R = 100 \cdot \left[\frac{0,5 \cdot 26000}{100000} - 0,015 \right]$$

Solution:

$$p_R = 11,5\%$$

1.5 Torque

Torque can be calculated using various different formulae, depending on the givens.

If force and effective distance are known:

Formula 09-V: Torque with force and effective distance

$$M = F \cdot l$$

If power and rotational speed are known:

Formula 10-V: Torque with power and rotational speed

$$M = \frac{9550 \cdot P}{n \cdot \eta}$$

If in hydraulics delivery rate (volumetric flow), pressure and rotational speed are known:

Formula 11-V: Torque with delivery rate, pressure and rotational speed

$$M = \frac{15,9 \cdot Q \cdot p}{n \cdot \eta}$$

Where:

M	Torque [Nm]
F	Force [N]
l	Effective distance of force from center of rotation [m]
P	Power [kW]
n	Rotational speed [rpm]
η	Efficiency
Q	Volumetric flow rate [l/minute]
p	Pressure [bar]

Example: Force and effective distance are known

Given:

A cable winch with a pulling force $F = 50,000$ N has a drum diameter $d = 0.3$ m.

Wanted:

Without taking efficiency into account, what is the torque?

Solution:

$$M = F \cdot l = F \cdot 0,5d \text{ (the radius of the drum is the lever arm)}$$

$$M = 50000 \text{ N} \cdot 0,5 \cdot 0,3 \text{ m}$$

$$M = 7500 \text{ Nm}$$

Example: Power and rotational speed are known

Given:

A power take-off is to transmit a power P of 100 kW at $n = 1,500$ rpm.

Wanted:

What torque must the power take-off be able to transmit without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$M = \frac{9550 \cdot 100}{1500}$$

$$M = 637 \text{ Nm}$$

Example: Delivery rate (volumetric flow rate), pressure and rotational speed are known for a hydraulic pump

Given:

A hydraulic pump delivers a volumetric flow rate of $Q = 80$ l/minute at a pressure $p = 170$ bar and a pump rotational speed $n = 1,000$ rpm.

Wanted:

Without taking efficiency into account, what torque is necessary?

Solution:

$$M = \frac{15,9 \cdot 80 \cdot 170}{1000}$$

$$M = 216 \text{ Nm}$$

If efficiency is to be taken into account, the torques calculated in each case must be divided by the overall efficiency (see also Section 1.2, "Efficiency").

1.6 Power output

Power can be calculated using various different formulae, depending on the givens.

For planar motion:

Formula 12-V: Power for planar motion

$$P = \frac{F \cdot v}{1000} = \frac{9,81 \cdot m \cdot v}{1000}$$

For rotating motion:

Formula 13-V: Power for rotating motion

$$P = \frac{M \cdot n}{9550 \eta}$$

In hydraulics:

Formula 14-V: Power in hydraulics

$$P = \frac{Q \cdot p}{600 \cdot \eta}$$

Where:

P	Power [kW]
m	Mass [kg]
v	Velocity [m/s]
η	Efficiency
F	Force [N]
M	Torque [Nm]
n	Rotational speed [rpm]
Q	Delivery rate (volumetric flow rate) [l/minute]
p	Pressure [bar]
1000	Constant conversion factor of [W] to [kW]
9550	Constant conversion factor of [Nm] and [rpm] to [kW]
600	Constant conversion factor of [rpm] and [bar] to [kW]

Example: Lifting motion

Given:

Liftgate payload including own weight is $m = 2,600$ kg

Lifting velocity $v = 0.2$ m/s

Wanted:

How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{9,81 \cdot 2600 \cdot 0,2}{1000}$$

$$P = 5,1 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Planar motion

Given:

Cable winch $F = 100000 \text{ N}$

Cable velocity $v = 0,15 \text{ m/s}$

Wanted:

How much power is needed without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{100000 \cdot 0,15}{1000}$$

$$P = 15 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Rotational movement

Given:

PTO rotational speed $n = 1800 \text{ rpm}$

Permissible torque $M = 600 \text{ Nm}$

Wanted:

How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{600 \cdot 1800}{9550}$$

$$P = 113 \text{ kW}$$

Example: Hydraulic system

Given:

Volumetric flow rate of pump $Q = 60 \text{ l/min}$

Pressure $p = 170 \text{ bar}$

Wanted:

How high is the power without considering efficiency?

Solution:

$$P = \frac{60 \cdot 170}{600}$$

$$P = 17 \text{ kW}$$

1.7 Rotational speeds for power take-offs on the transfer case

If the PTO on the transfer case is operating and its operation is distance-dependent, its rotational speed n_N is given in revolutions per metre of distance covered.

It is calculated from the following:

Formula 15-V: Revolutions per meter, power take-off on transfer case

$$n_N = \frac{i_A \cdot i_V}{U}$$

The distance s in metres covered per revolution of the PTO (reciprocal value of n_N) is calculated by:

Formula 16-V: Distance per revolution, power take-off on transfer case

$$s = \frac{U}{i_A \cdot i_V}$$

Where:

n_N	Rotational speed of PTO [1/m]
i_A	Drive-axle ratio
i_V	Transfer-case ratio
U	Rolling circumference of tyres [m]
s	Distance covered [m]

Example:

Given:

315/80R22.5 tyres with rolling circumference

Drive axle ratio

Transfer-case G 172 ratio in on-road gear

Off-road

$$U = 3,280 \text{ m}$$

$$i_A = 5,33$$

$$i_V = 1,007$$

$$i_V = 1,652$$

Wanted:

The rotational speeds of the PTO in on-road and off-road gear and the associated distance per revolution.

Solution:

PTO rotational speed in on-road gear

$$n_N = \frac{5,33 \cdot 1,007}{3,280}$$

$$n_N = 1,636 \text{ /m}$$

This corresponds to a distance of

$$s = \frac{3,280}{5,33 \cdot 1,007}$$
$$s = 0,611 \text{ m}$$

PTO rotational speed in off-road gear

$$n_N = \frac{5,33 \cdot 1,652}{3,280}$$
$$n_N = 2,684 /\text{m}$$

This corresponds to a distance of

$$s = \frac{3,280}{5,33 \cdot 1,652}$$
$$s = 0,372 \text{ m}$$

1.8 Driving resistances

The major driving resistances are:

- Rolling resistance
- Climbing resistance
- Air resistance (drag)

A vehicle can only move if the sum of all resistances is overcome. Resistances are forces that either balance out the driving force (uniform movement) or are smaller than the driving force (accelerated movement).

Formula 17-V: Rolling resistance force

$$F_R = 9,81 \cdot f_R \cdot G_z \cdot \cos \alpha$$

Formula 18-V: Climbing resistance force

$$F_S = 9,81 \cdot G_z \cdot \sin \alpha$$

Angle of uphill gradient (for the formula, see Chapter V, Section 1.4.2)

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{p}{100}, \alpha = \arctan \frac{p}{100}$$

Formula 19-V: Air resistance force

$$F_L = 0,6 \cdot c_w \cdot A \cdot v^2$$

Where:

F_R	Rolling resistance force [N]
f_R	Coefficient of rolling resistance, see Table 01-V
G_Z	Gross train mass [kg]
α	Angle of uphill gradient [°]
F_S	Climbing resistance force [N]
p	Uphill gradient [%]
F_L	Air resistance force [N]
c_W	Drag coefficient
A	Vehicle frontal area [m ²]
v	Velocity [m/s]

Example:

Given:

Semi-trailer tractor	G_Z	40000 kg
Speed	v	80 km/h
Uphill gradient	p	3 %
Vehicle front	A	7 m ²
Coefficient of rolling resistance for good asphalt road	f_R	0,007

The difference is to be determined:

- with spoiler, $c_{W1} = 0,6$
- without spoiler, $c_{W2} = 1,0$

Wanted:

The values: rolling resistance, climbing resistance, air resistance with/without spoiler and the power requirement in each case.

Solution:

Auxiliary calculation 1

Conversion of driving speed from km/h to m/s:

$$v = \frac{80}{3,6}$$

$$v = 22,22 \text{ m/s}$$

Auxiliary calculation 2

Conversion of gradeability from percent to degrees:

$$\alpha = \arctan \frac{3}{100} = \arctan 0,03$$

$$\alpha = 1,72^\circ$$

1. Calculation of rolling resistance:

$$F_R = 9,81 \cdot 0,007 \cdot 40000 \cdot \cos 1,72^\circ$$

$$F_R = 2746 \text{ N}$$

2. Calculation of climbing resistance:

$$F_S = 9,81 \cdot 40000 \cdot \sin 1,72^\circ$$

$$F_S = 11778 \text{ N}$$

3. Calculation of air resistance F_{L1} with spoiler:

$$F_{L1} = 0,6 \cdot 0,6 \cdot 7 \cdot 22,22^2$$

$$F_{L1} = 1244 \text{ N}$$

4. Calculation of air resistance F_{L2} without spoiler:

$$F_{L2} = 0,6 \cdot 1 \cdot 7 \cdot 22,22^2$$

$$F_{L2} = 2074 \text{ N}$$

5. Total resistance F_{ges1} with spoiler:

$$F_{ges1} = F_R + F_S + F_{L1}$$

$$F_{ges1} = 2746 + 11778 + 1244$$

$$F_{ges1} = 15768 \text{ N}$$

6. Total resistance F_{ges2} without spoiler:

$$F_{ges2} = F_R + F_S + F_{L2}$$

$$F_{ges2} = 2746 + 11778 + 2074$$

$$F_{ges2} = 16598 \text{ N}$$

7. Power requirement P_1 with spoiler without considering efficiency:

(power after Formula 12-V: power for planar motion)

$$P_1 = \frac{F_{ges1} \cdot v}{1000}$$

$$P_1 = \frac{15768 \cdot 22,22}{1000}$$

$$P_1 = 350 \text{ kW (476 PS)}$$

8. Power requirement P_2 without spoiler without considering efficiency:

$$P_2 = \frac{F_{ges2} \cdot v}{1000}$$

$$P_2 = \frac{16598 \cdot 22,22}{1000}$$

$$P_2 = 369 \text{ kW (502 PS)}$$

9. Power requirement P_1 with spoiler with total driveline efficiency $\eta = 0,95$:

$$P_1 = \frac{P_{1'}}{\eta} = \frac{350}{0,95}$$

$$P_1 = 368 \text{ kW (501 PS)}$$

10. Power requirement P_2 without spoiler with total driveline efficiency $\eta = 0,95$:

$$P_2 = \frac{P_{2'}}{\eta} = \frac{369}{0,95}$$

$$P_2 = 388 \text{ kW (528 PS)}$$

1.9 Turning circle

When a vehicle circles each wheel describes a turning circle. The outer turning circle, or its radius, is the main subject of interest.

The calculation is only an approximation because when a vehicle is cornering the perpendiculars through the centers of all wheels do not intersect at the curve center point (Ackermann condition). Moreover, when a vehicle is in motion dynamic forces influencing cornering arise but are not taken into account in the formulae.

Nevertheless, the following formulae can be used for estimating purposes:

Formula 20-V: Distance between steering axes

$$j = s - 2r_0$$

Formula 21-V: Theoretical outer steering angle

$$\cot \beta_{ao} = \cot \beta_i + \frac{j}{l_{kt}}$$

Formula 22-V: Steering deviation

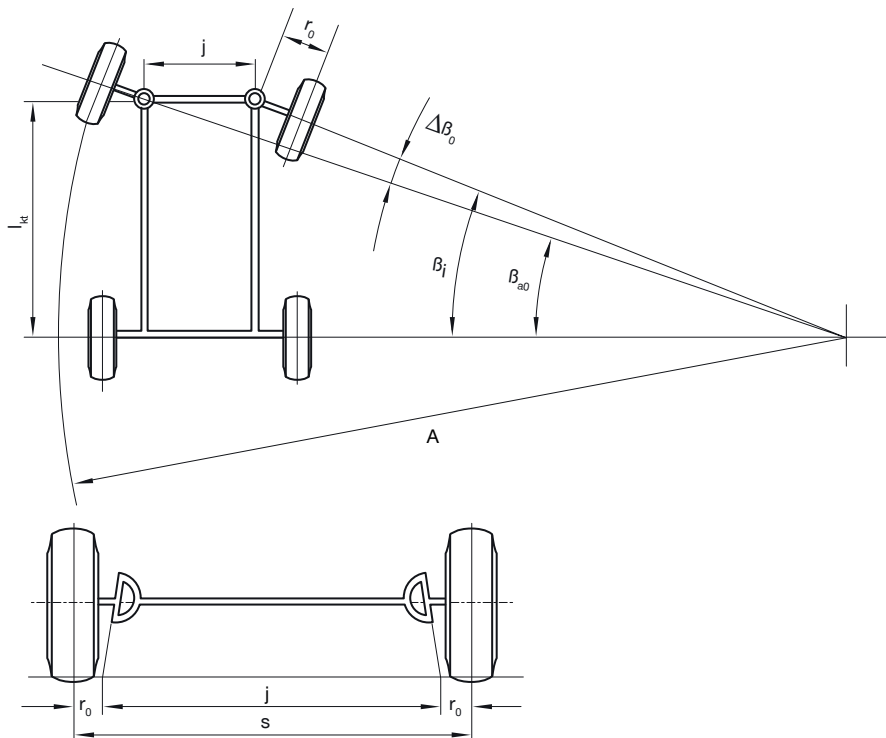
$$\beta_F = \beta_a - \beta_{ao}$$

Formula 23-V: Turning circle radius

$$r_s = \frac{l_{kt}}{\sin \beta_{ao}} + r_0 - 50 \cdot \beta_F$$

Where:

j	Distance between steering axes [mm]
s	Track width [mm]
l_{kt}	Wheelbase [mm]
r_0	Scrub radius [mm]
β_{a0}	Outer steering angle [°]
β_i	Inner steering angle [°]
β_F	Steering deviation [°]
A	Outer track circle

Fig. 02-V: Kinematic relationships of calculating turning circle


T_460_000001_0002_G

Example:
Given:

Wheelbase	l_{kt}	3900 mm
Front axle		Typ VOK-09
Tyres		315/80 R 22.5
Rims		22.5 x 9.00
Track width	s	2048 mm
Scrub radius	r_0	49 mm
Inner steering angle	β_i	49,0°
Outer steering angle	β_{a0}	32°45' = 32,75°

V. Calculations

Wanted:

The distance between steering axes, the theoretical outer steering angle, the steering deviation and the radius of the turning circle.

Solution:

1. Distance between steering axes

$$\begin{aligned}j &= s - 2 \cdot r_0 = 2048 - 2 \cdot 49 \\j &= 1950\end{aligned}$$

2. Theoretical outer steering angle

$$\begin{aligned}\cot\beta_{ao} &= \cot\beta_i + \frac{j}{l_{kt}} = 0,8693 + \frac{1950}{3900} \\ \cot\beta_{ao} &= 1,369 \\ \beta_{ao} &= 36,14^\circ\end{aligned}$$

3. Steering deviation

$$\beta_F = \beta_a - \beta_{ao} = 32,75^\circ - 36,14^\circ = -3,39^\circ$$

4. Turning circle radius

$$\begin{aligned}r_s &= \frac{3900}{\sin 36,14^\circ} + 49 - 50 \cdot (-3,39^\circ) \\ r_s &= 6831 \text{ mm}\end{aligned}$$

1.10 Axle-load calculation

An axle load calculation is essential for optimizing a vehicle and correctly designing a body. A body can be matched properly to a vehicle only if the vehicle is weighed before any bodymaking commences. The weights obtained in the weighing process are to be included in the axle-load calculation.

The following sub-sections explain axle-load calculation.

1.10.1 Performing an axle-load calculation

The moment theorem is used to distribute the weight of the equipment to the front and rear axles. All distances are referred to the theoretical front axle centre. For ease of understanding, „weight“ is not used in the sense of weight force (in N) in the following formulae but in the sense of mass (in kg).

The following formulae are required in order to calculate axle load:

Formula 24-V: Rear-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{\Delta G \cdot a}{l_t}$$

Formula 25-V: Front-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_V = \Delta G - \Delta G_H$$

Where:

ΔG_H	Rear-axle weight difference [kg]
ΔG_V	Front-axle weight difference [kg]
ΔG	Component weight difference [kg]
a	Distance between theoretical front-axle centerline and component's center of gravity [mm]
l_t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]

Note:

Rounding up or down to whole kilograms is quite sufficient in practice. Ensure the correct mathematical symbol.

For this reason, the following rule applies:

- Dimensions:
 - all distances/clearances that are **IN FRONT OF** the theoretical front-axle centerline have a MINUS sign (-)
 - all distances that are **BEHIND** the theoretical front-axle centerline have a PLUS sign (+)
- Weights:
 - all weights that are **ADDED TO** the vehicle have a PLUS sign (+)
 - all equipment weights that are **REMOVED FROM** the vehicle have a MINUS sign (-)

V. Calculations

Example:

Given:

Instead of a tank weighing 140 kg, a tank weighing 400 kg is installed. The vehicle has a theoretical wheelbase of $l_t = 4,500$ mm. The distance between the tank and the theoretical front-axle centerline is 1,600 mm (see Fig. 03-V).

Wanted:

A calculation of the weight distribution to the front and rear axle is required.

Solution:

Weight difference

$$\Delta G = 400 - 140 = 260 \text{ kg}$$

Rear-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{260 \cdot 1600}{4500}$$

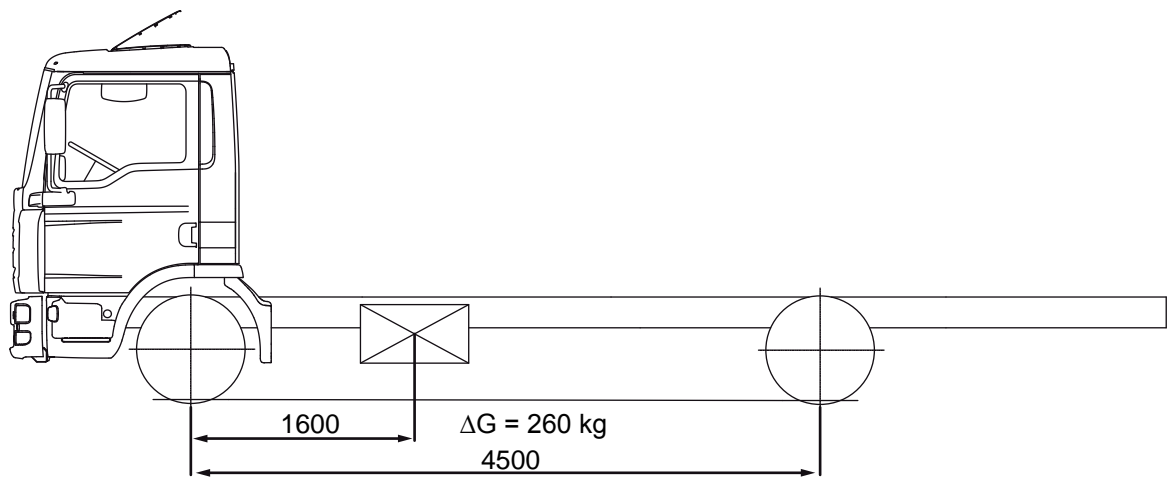
$$\Delta G_H = 92 \text{ kg}$$

Front-axle weight difference

$$\Delta G_V = 260 - 92$$

$$\Delta G_V = 168 \text{ kg}$$

Fig. 03-V: Axle-load calculation: Tank layout



T_996_000002_0001_G

Example: Snowplough plateGiven:

Weight difference	ΔG	=	120 kg
Distance from first axle centerline	a	=	-1600 mm
Theoretical wheelbase	l_t	=	4500 mm

Wanted:

A calculation of the weight distribution to the front and rear axle is required.

Solution:

Rear axle

$$\Delta G_H = \frac{\Delta G \cdot a}{l_t} = \frac{120 \cdot (-1600)}{4500}$$

$$\Delta G_H = -43 \text{ kg, the load on the rear axle is decreased.}$$

Front axle

$$\Delta G_V = \Delta G - \Delta G_H = 120 - (-43)$$

$$\Delta G_V = 163 \text{ kg, the load on the front axle is increased.}$$

The following tables show a complete axle-load calculation. Two variants compared in order to illustrate the resulting difference in axle load (Variant 1 with loading crane arm folded, see Table 04-V; Variant 2 with loading crane arm extended, see Table 06-V).

Table 04-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 1

AXLE LOAD CALCULATION				
Version name:	TGL 8.220 4x2 BB	Basic veh. no.:	LN03NC02	
Wheelbase:	3600	VehType:	KL	
Technical wheelbase:	3600	Cab:	C	
Standard overhang:	1275			
Technical overhang:	1275			
Chassis drawing number:	81.99126.0186			
Designation	Distance from technical centre point of front axle	Weight distribution on		
		Front axle	Rear axle	Total
Vehicle weight, standard version, with driver, tools		2620	865	3485
Fuel, spare wheel, without trailer equipment				
Trailer coupling	4.875	-12	47	35
Upswept exhaust pipe, left	480	30	5	35
Fuel tank steel, 150 ltr. (standard 100 ltr.)	2.200	27	43	70
Ball-head coupling with attachment	4.925	-4	14	10
Plastic mudguards, rear axle	3.600	0	26	26
Air reservoir, trailer operation (tipper)	2.905	4	16	20
PTO and pump	1.500	9	6	15
Tyres, rear axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	3.600	0	10	10
Tyres, front axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	0	5	0	5
Final cross member for trailer coupling	4.875	-11	41	30
Oil reservoir	1,559	60	45	105
Crane in transport position (arm folded)	1,020	631	249	880
Reinforcement in crane area	1,100	31	14	45
Auxiliary frame and tipper body	3,250	90	840	930
Miscellaneous	1,280	29	16	45
Chassis – empty weight		3545	2266	5811
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490

Table 05-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant - continuation

Designation		Weight distribution on		
		Front axle	Rear axle	Total
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, FA X1= offloaded	333	155	1524	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, RA X2= offloaded	-3548	-1655	3334	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, extended X3=	250	117	1562	1679
Axle overload		-39	-1771	
Payload loss caused by axle overloading				
If uniformly laden, this leaves		117	1562	1679
Payload		0	0	
Vehicle loaded		3661	3829	7490
Axle or vehicle loading		99,0 %	68,4 %	100,0 %
Axle load distribution		48,9 %	51,1 %	100,0 %
Vehicle empty		3545	2266	5811
Axle or vehicle loading		95,8 %	40,5 %	77,6 %
Axle load distribution		61,0 %	39,0 %	100,0 %
Observe weight tolerances of +/- 5% in accordance with DIN 70020! Errors and omissions excepted				

Table 06-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 2

AXLE LOAD CALCULATION				
Version name:	TGL 8.220 4x2 BB	Basic veh. no.:	LN03NC02	
Wheelbase:	3600	VehType:	KL	
Technical wheelbase:	3600	Cab:	C	
Standard overhang:	1275			
Technical overhang:	1275			
Chassis drawing number:	81.99126.0186			
Designation	Distance from technical centre point of front axle	Weight distribution on		
		Front axle	Rear axle	Total
Vehicle weight, standard version, with driver, tools		2620	865	3485
Fuel, spare wheel, without trailer equipment				0
Trailer coupling	4.875	-12	47	35
Upswept exhaust pipe, left	480	30	5	35
Comfort seat for driver	-300	16	-1	15
Fuel tank steel, 150 ltr. (standard 100 ltr.)	2.200	27	43	70
Ball-head coupling with attachment	4.925	-4	14	10
Plastic mudguards, rear axle	3.600	0	26	26
Air reservoir, trailer operation (tipper)	2.905	4	16	20
PTO and pump	1.500	9	6	15
Tyres, rear axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	3.600	0	10	10
Tyres, front axle, 225/75 R 17,5 (weight difference to standard equipment)	0	5	0	5
Final cross member for trailer coupling	4.875	-11	41	30
Miscellaneous	1.280	29	16	45
Oil reservoir	1.559	60	45	105
Crane in transport position (arm above tipper body)	1.770	447	433	880
Reinforcement in crane area	1.100	31	14	45
Auxiliary frame and tipper body	3.250	90	840	930
Chassis – empty weight		3361	2450	5811
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490

Table 07-V: Example of an axle-load calculation, Variant 2 - continuation

Chassis – empty weight		3361	2450	5811
Permitted loads		3700	5600	7490
Difference between unladen weight and permitted loads		339	3150	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, FA offloaded X1=	726	339	1340	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, RA offloaded X2=	-3155	-1471	3150	1679
Centre of gravity for payload in relation to technical centre of RA, extended X3=	250	117	1562	1679
Axle overload		-222	-1588	
Payload loss caused by axle overloading		0	0	0
If uniformly laden, this leaves		117	1562	1679
Payload		0	0	0
Vehicle loaded		3478	4012	7490
Axle or vehicle loading		94,0 %	71,6 %	100,0 %
Axle load distribution		46,4 %	53,6 %	100,0 %
Vehicle empty		3545	2266	5811
Axle or vehicle loading		90,8 %	43,7 %	77,6 %
Axle load distribution		57,8 %	42,2 %	100,0 %
Observe weight tolerances of +/- 5% in accordance with DIN 70020! Errors and omissions excepted				

1.10.2 Calculation of weight with trailing axle lifted

The weights given for trailing-axle vehicles in the MANTED system (www.manted.de) and other technical documents were calculated with the trailing axle lowered. Distribution of the axle loads to the front and drive axle after the trailing axle has been lifted can easily be determined with the following calculation.

Weight on the second axle (drive axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

Formula 26-V: Weight on the second axle when the third axle is lifted

$$G_{2an} = \frac{G_{23} \cdot l_t}{l_{12}}$$

Weight on the front axle when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

Formula 27-V: Weight on the first axle when the third axle is lifted

$$G_{1an} = G - G_{2an}$$

Where:

G	Unladen weight of vehicle [kg]
G _{1an}	Unladen weight on the first axle when the trailing axle is lifted [kg]
G _{2an}	Unladen weight on the second axle when the third axle is lifted [kg]
G ₂₃	Unladen weight on the second and third axle [kg]
l ₁₂	Wheelbase from first to second axle [mm]
l _t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]

Example:

Given:

Wheelbase	4800 + 1350
Frame overhang	2600
Cab	XXL-cabs

Unladen weights with the trailing axle lowered:

Front axle	G _{1ab}	=	5100 kg
Drive axle with trailing axle	G _{23ab}	=	3505 kg
Unladen weight	G	=	8605 kg

Permissible axle loads:

G ₁	=	7500 kg
G ₂	=	11500 kg
G ₃	=	7500 kg

Wanted:

The theoretical wheelbase and the unladen weights on the axles.

Solution:

1. Determination of the theoretical wheelbase (see the chapter entitled "General"):

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_3 \cdot l_{23}}{G_2 + G_3}$$
$$l_t = 4800 + \frac{7500 \cdot 1350}{11500 + 7500}$$
$$l_t = 5333 \text{ mm}$$

2. Determination of the unladen weight on the second axle (=drive axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

$$G_{2an} = \frac{G_{23} \cdot l_t}{l_{12}} = \frac{3505 \cdot 5333}{4800}$$
$$G_{2an} = 3894,2 \text{ kg}$$

3. Determination of the unladen weight on the first axle (=front axle) when the third axle (trailing axle) is lifted:

$$G_{1an} = G - G_{2an}$$
$$G_{1an} = 8605 - 3894,2$$
$$G_{1an} = 4710,8 \text{ kg}$$

1.11 Support length for body without auxiliary frame

Calculation of the necessary support length in the following example does not consider all influencing factors. However, it does show one option and provides some good reference values for practical applications. The support length is calculated by:

Formula 28-V: Support length without subframe

$$l = \frac{0,175 \cdot F \cdot E (r_R + r_A)}{\sigma_{0,2}^2 \cdot r_R \cdot r_A}$$

If frame and support are of different materials, then:

Formula 29-V: Modulus of elasticity in the case of different materials

$$E = \frac{2E_R \cdot E_A}{E_R + E_A}$$

Where:

l	Support length for each support [mm]
F	Force per support [N]
E	Modulus of elasticity [N/mm ²]
r _R	Outer radius of frame side member [mm]
r _A	Outer radius of support profile [mm]
σ _{0,2}	Yield point of lower quality material [N/mm ²]
E _R	Modulus of elasticity of frame side member [N/mm ²]
E _A	Modulus of elasticity of support profile [N/mm ²]

Example:

Given:

Chassis for swap body
 Wheelbase 4,500 + 1,350
 large cab
 Perm. gross vehicle weight 26,000 kg
 Weight of unladen chassis 8,915 kg

Wanted:

Support length without auxiliary frame

Solution:

Payload	26000 kg - 8915 kg = 17085 kg
Weight distribution per support with six	17085: 6 = 2847 kg
Force	F 2847 kg • 9,81 kg • m/s ² = 27933 N
Outer radius of frame profile	r _R 18 mm
Outer radius of support profile	r _A 16 mm
Modulus of elasticity for steel	E 210000 N/mm ²
Yield point for both materials	σ _{0,2} 420 N/mm ²

Formula 28-V can then be used to roughly determine the minimum length for each support:

$$l = \frac{0,175 \cdot 27.933 \cdot 210.000 \cdot (18+16)}{420^2 \cdot 18 \cdot 16}$$

$$l = 687 \text{ mm}$$

1.12 Coupling devices

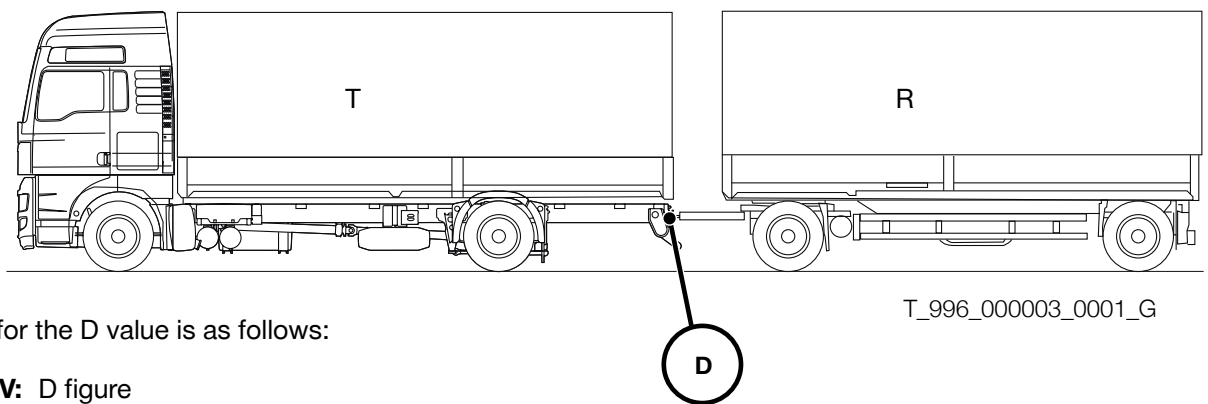
Coupling devices are designed to create a tractive and steering linkage between the tractor vehicle and the trailer.

1.12.1 Trailer coupling for steerable drawbar trailer (D value)

The so-called „D value“ was defined in order to determine the loading capacity of trailer couplings. The D value is stamped on the trailer coupling's model plate.

It is possible to calculate the D value on the basis of the permissible gross weights of vehicle and trailer. The formulae for the D value and formulae converted according to the variables can be found below.

Fig. 04-V: Articulated train with steerable drawbar trailer



The formula for the D value is as follows:

Formula 30-V: D figure

$$D = \frac{9,81 \cdot T \cdot R}{T + R}$$

$$T = \frac{R \cdot D}{(9,81 \cdot R) - D}$$

$$R = \frac{T \cdot D}{(9,81 \cdot T) - D}$$

Where:

D	D value [kN]
T	Permissible gross weight of tractor vehicle [t]
R	Permissible gross weight of trailer / permissible trailer load [t]

Example:

Given:
 Permissible gross weight of tractor 18000 kg = T = 18 t
 Permissible trailer load 26000 kg = R = 26 t

Wanted:
 D figure

Solution:

$$D = \frac{9,81 \cdot 18 \cdot 26}{18 + 26}$$

$$D = 104 \text{ kN}$$

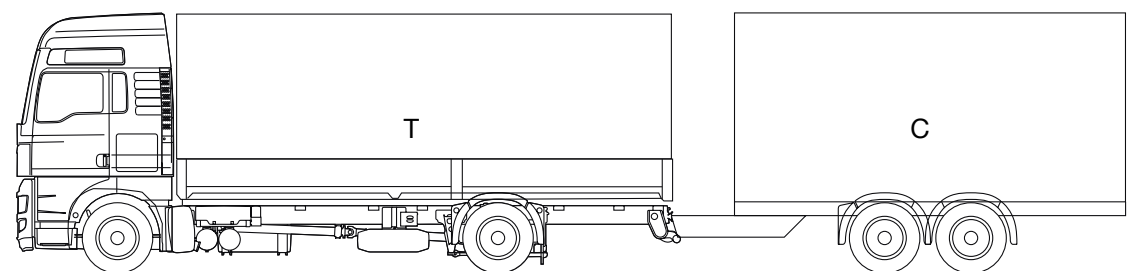
1.12.2 Trailer coupling for rigid drawbar trailer/ center-axle trailer (D_c value, V value)

Other conditions apply for the rigid drawbar and center-axle trailers in addition to the D value. Trailer couplings and final cross members have lower trailer loads because in this case the nose weight acting on the trailer coupling and the final cross member has to be taken into account.

In order to harmonise the regulations within the European Union, the terms D_c value and V value were introduced with Directive 94/20/EC.

The V value is a characteristic value for operation of these trailers. It restricts their operation in dependence on tractor-vehicle and trailer data and specifies the maximum vertical force permitted to act on the coupling.

Fig. 05-V: Articulated train with center-axle trailer



T_996_000004_0001_G

The following formulae apply:

Formula 31-V: D_c value formula for rigid drawbar and center-axle trailer

$$D_c = \frac{9,81 \cdot T \cdot C}{T + C}$$

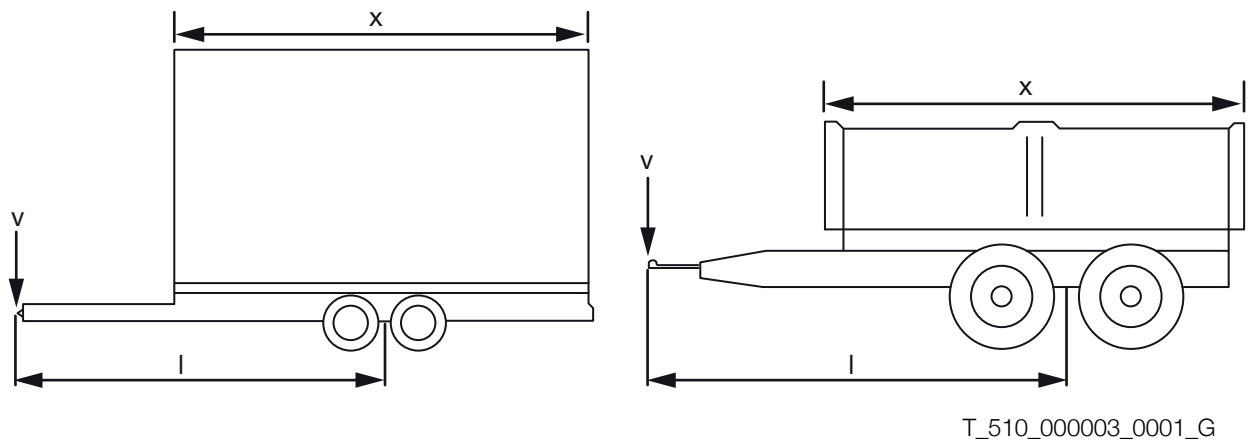
Formula 32-V: V value formula for center-axle and rigid drawbar trailers with a permissible nose weight of < 10% of the trailer mass and not more than 1,000 kg

$$V = a \cdot \frac{x^2}{l_2} \cdot C$$

If the values for x^2/l_2 < have been calculated as < 1, a value of 1.0 is to be used.

Where:

D_c	Reduced D value when operating with center-axle trailer [kN]
T	Permissible gross weight of the tractor vehicle [t]
C	Sum of the permissible axle loads of center-axle trailer without nose weight S [t]
V	V value [kN]
a	Reference acceleration in coupling point [m/s^2] 1.8 m/s^2 for air suspension on tractor vehicle or 2.4 m/s^2 for all other suspensions
x	Length of trailer body, see Fig. 06-V
l	Theoretical drawbar length, see Fig. 06-V
S	Nose weight of drawbar on coupling point [kg]

Fig. 06-V: Length of trailer body and theoretical drawbar length

Example:
Given:

Permissible gross weight of tractor vehicle	T	7490 kg = 7,49 t
Sum of trailer axle loads	C	11000 kg = 11 t
Nose weight	S	700 kg = 0,7 t
Length of body	x	6,2 m
Theoretical drawbar length	l	5,2 m

Wanted:

Can both vehicles be used in combination as a road train if the reinforced final cross member and the Ringfeder 864 trailer coupling are fitted to the truck?

Solution:

D_c value

$$D_c = \frac{9,81 \cdot T \cdot C}{T + C} = \frac{9,81 \cdot 7,49 \cdot 11}{7,49 + 11}$$

$$D_c = 43,7 \text{ kN}$$

D_c value of final cross member: = 64 kN (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, supplementary booklet entitled „Coupling devices TG“).

V. Calculations

V value

$$\frac{x^2}{l^2} = \frac{6,2^2}{5,2^2} = 1,42$$

$$V = a \frac{x^2}{l^2} \cdot C = 1,8 \cdot 1,42 \cdot 11$$

$$V = 28,12 \text{ kN} \quad (1.8 \text{ when the rear axle of the truck is equipped with air suspension})$$

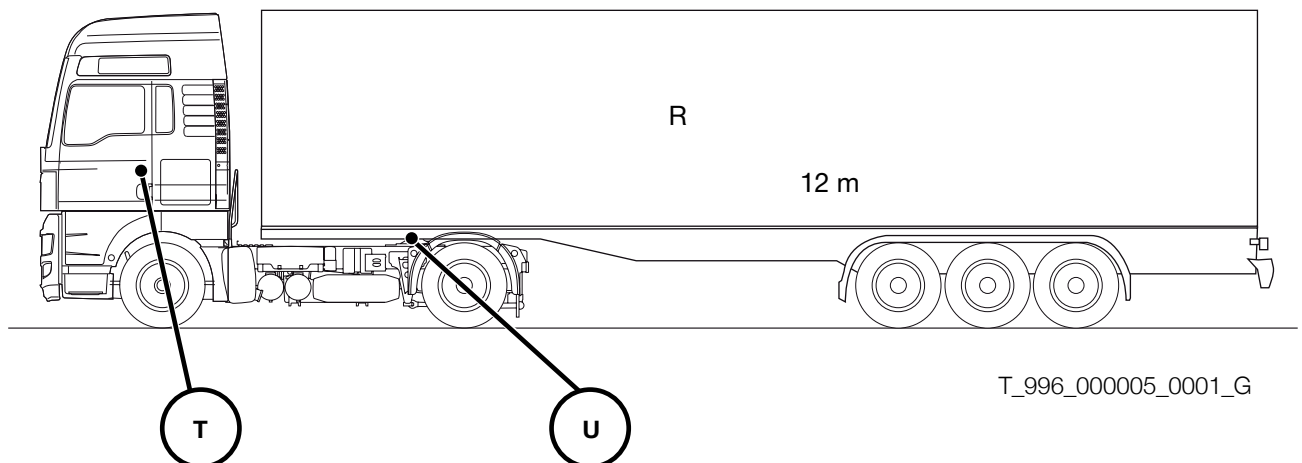
V value of final cross member = 35 kN (see MAN guidelines to fitting bodies, supplementary booklet entitled "Coupling devices TG")

Both vehicles can form a road train. However, the minimum front-axle load (including nose weight) as per the respectively applicable guidelines to fitting bodies must be adhered to. An unladen truck may only tow an unladen centre axle trailer.

1.12.3 Trailer coupling for semi-trailer (D value)

The so-called "D value" was defined in order to determine the loading capacity of trailer couplings. The D value is stamped on the trailer coupling's model plate. The required fifth-wheel coupling size is determined by the D value.

Fig. 07-V: Semitrailer tractor



The formula for the D value is as follows:

Formula 33-V: D figure for fifth-wheel coupling

$$D = \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot T \cdot R}{T + R - U}$$
$$R = \frac{D \cdot (T - U)}{(0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot T) - D}$$
$$T = \frac{D \cdot (R - U)}{(0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot R) - D}$$
$$U = T + R - \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot T \cdot R}{D}$$

Where:

D	D value [kN]
T	Permissible gross weight of semitrailer tractor including fifth-wheel load [t]
R	Permissible gross weight of semitrailer including fifth-wheel load [t]
U	Fifth-wheel load [t]

Example: Semitrailer tractor

Given:

Permissible gross weight of semitrailer tractor:	18000 kg = T = 18 t
Permissible gross weight of semitrailer:	32000 kg = R = 32 t
Fifth-wheel load acc. to trailer type plate:	10750 kg = U = 10,75 t

Wanted:

D value for the tractor and semitrailer combination described.

Solution:

$$D = \frac{0,6 \cdot 9,81 \cdot 18 \cdot 32}{18 + 32 - 10,75}$$
$$D = 86,38 \text{ kN}$$

Note:

The D value calculated must be lower than the D value stamped on the fifth-wheel coupling model plate (e.g. D value 152 kN).

1.13 Theoretical wheelbase and permissible overhang length

This section contains formulae and examples of calculations concerning the theoretical wheelbase and permissible overhang length.

Formula 34-V: Theoretical wheelbase, two axles

$$l_t = l_{12}$$

Formula 35-V: Theoretical wheelbase, three axles with two rear axles and same rear axle loads

$$l_t = l_{12} + 0,5 \cdot l_{23}$$

Formula 36-V: Theoretical wheelbase, three axles with two rear axles and different rear axle loads

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_{zul3} \cdot l_{23}}{G_{zul2} + G_{zul3}}$$

Formula 37-V: Theoretical wheelbase, four axles with two front and two rear axles (random axle load distribution)

$$l_t = l_{23} + \frac{G_{zul1} \cdot l_{12}}{G_{zul1} + G_{zul2}} + \frac{G_{zul4} \cdot l_{34}}{G_{zul3} + G_{zul4}}$$

Formula 38-V: Permissible overhang length for a two-axle vehicle

$$U_t \leq 0,65 \cdot l_t$$

Formula 39-V: Permissible overhang length for vehicles with three or more axles

$$U_t \leq 0,70 \cdot l_t$$

Where:

l_t	Theoretical wheelbase [mm]
l_{12}	Wheelbase between first and second axle [mm]
l_{23}	Wheelbase between second and third axle [mm]
l_{34}	Wheelbase between third and fourth axle [mm]
G_{zul1}	Permissible axle load, axle 1 [kg]
G_{zul2}	Permissible axle load, axle 2 [kg]
G_{zul3}	Permissible axle load, axle 3 [kg]
G_{zul4}	Permissible axle load, axle 4 [kg]
U_t	Permissible overhang length [mm]

Example 1: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a two-axle vehicle

Given:

Vehicle MAN TGL 12.250 4x2 BB

Wheelbase $l_{12} = 3,900$ mm

Wanted:

Theoretical wheelbase l_t , permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{12} = 3900 \text{ mm}$$

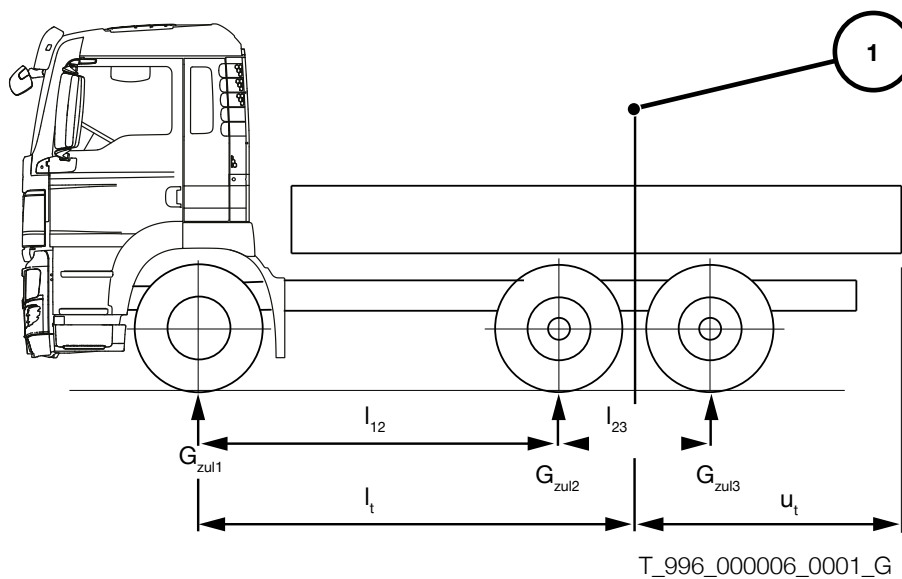
$$U_t \leq 0,65 \cdot 3900 \leq 2535 \text{ mm}$$

Example 2: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a three-axle vehicle with identical rear-axle loads

Given:

Vehicle		TGM 26.340 6x4 BB
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	3875 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	1400 mm
Permissible axle load, axle 2	=	9500 kg
Permissible axle load, axle 3	=	9500 kg

Fig. 08-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and identical rear-axle loads



1) theoretical rear centreline

V. Calculations

Wanted:

Theoretical wheelbase l_t , permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{12} + 0,5 \cdot l_{23} = 3875 + 0,5 \cdot 1400 = 4575 \text{ mm}$$

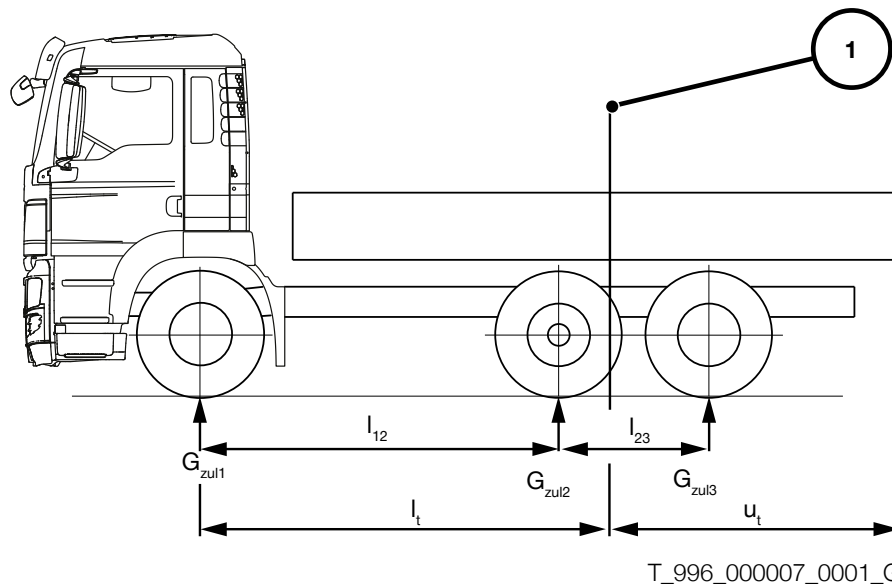
$$U_t \leq 0,70 \cdot l_t \leq 0,70 \cdot 4575 = 3202 \text{ mm}$$

Example 3: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a three-axle vehicle with different rear-axle loads

Given:

Vehicle		TGS 28.480 6x2-2 BL
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	5500 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	1350 mm
Axle load, axle 2	=	13000 kg
Axle load, axle 3	=	10000 kg

Fig. 09-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a three-axle vehicle with two rear axles and different rear-axle loads



1) theoretical rear centreline

Wanted:

Theoretical wheelbase l_t , permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{12} + \frac{G_{zul3} \cdot l_{23}}{G_{zul2} + G_{zul3}}$$

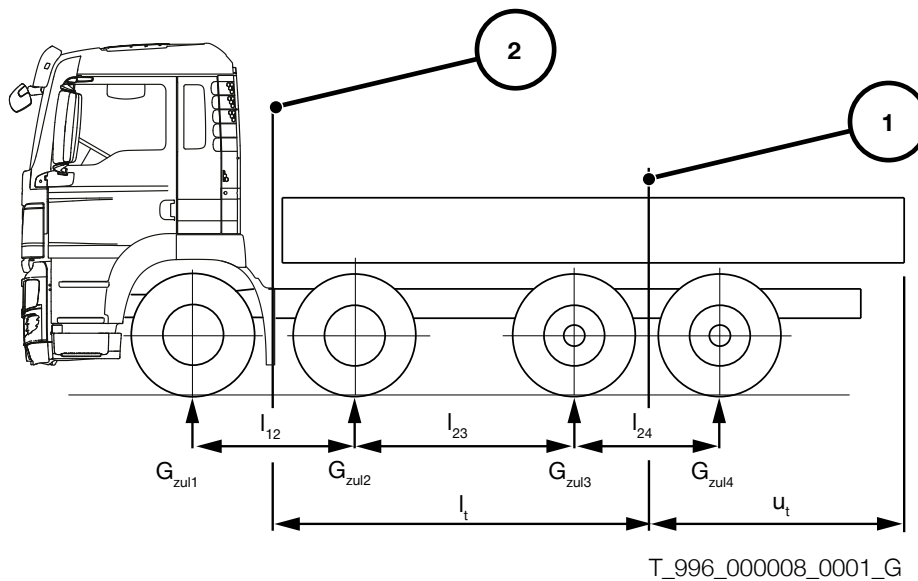
$$l_t = 5500 + \frac{10000 \cdot 1350}{13000 + 10000}$$

Example 4: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang length for a four-axle vehicle

Given:

Vehicle	=	TGS 32.480 8x4 BB
Wheelbase l_{12}	=	1795 mm
Wheelbase l_{23}	=	3205 mm
Wheelbase l_{34}	=	1400 mm
Axle load, axle 1	=	7100 kg
Axle load, axle 2	=	7100 kg
Axle load, axle 3	=	9500 kg
Axle load, axle 4	=	9500 kg

Fig. 10-V: Theoretical wheelbase and overhang for a four-axle vehicle with two front and two rear axles (random axle-load distribution)



- 1) theoretical rear centreline
- 2) theoretical front centreline

Wanted:

Theoretical wheelbase l_t , permissible overhang length U_t

Solution:

$$l_t = l_{23} + \frac{G_{zul1} \cdot l_{12}}{G_{zul1} + G_{zul2}} + \frac{G_{zul4} \cdot l_{34}}{G_{zul3} + G_{zul4}}$$

$$l_t = 3205 + \frac{7100 \cdot 1795}{7100 + 7100} + \frac{9500 \cdot 1400}{9500 + 9500}$$

$$l_t = 4802 \text{ mm}$$

$$U_t \leq 0,70 \cdot l_t \leq 0,70 \cdot 4802 = 3361 \text{ mm}$$



NOTICE

MAN Truck & Bus AG

Engineering Vehicle Truck

Application Engineering

Dachauer Straße 667

80995 Munich

E-Mail: info.manted@man.eu

www.manted.de

www.man.eu

We reserve the right to make changes in the course of technical development.

MAN Truck & Bus – a member of the MAN Group